

## SECTION 230529 - COMMON WORK RESULTS FOR HVAC

## PART 1 -

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. These basic Mechanical Requirements apply to all Division 23 Sections.
- B. The work of this Section consists of providing of all materials, labor and equipment and the like necessary and/or required for the complete execution of all HVAC and related work for this project, as required by the contract documents.

## 1.2 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.3 PRODUCTS FURNISHED BUT NOT INSTALLED UNDER RESPECTIVE SECTIONS OF THIS DIVISION

- A. Motor starters shall be furnished under this Division. Refer to Specification Section 230513 Common motor requirements for HVAC equipment" for technical information.

## 1.4 REFERENCES

- A. ASHRAE - American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air Conditioning Engineers Guides and Standards, latest editions.
- B. SMACNA - Sheet Metal and Air Conditioning Contractors National Association.
- C. ASME - American Society of Mechanical Engineers.
- D. UL - Underwriters Laboratory.
- E. NFPA - National Fire Protection Association.

## 1.5 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

- A. Conform to 2020 New York State Building Codes and Energy Code as well as all local codes.
- B. Plumbing: Conform to New York State U.F.P.B.C.
- C. Obtain permits, and request inspections from authority having jurisdiction.

## 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. The Contractor shall have the work indicated on the drawings and/or specified in each section performed by vendors or mechanics experienced and skilled in its implantation or by a "Specialist", "Specialty Contractor" or "Specialty Subcontractor" under contractual agreement with the Contractor. These terms mean an individual or firm of established reputation, or, if newly organized, whose personnel have previously established a reputation in the same field, which is regularly engaged in, and which maintains a regular force of workmen skilled in either manufacturing or fabricating items required by the Contract, installing items required by the Contract, or otherwise performing work required by the Contract.
- B. Where the Contract Specifications require installation by a "Specialist," that term shall also be deemed to mean either the manufacturer of the item, an individual or firm licensed by the manufacturer, or an individual or firm who will perform such work under the manufacturer's direct supervision.

## 1.7 PROJECT/SITE CONDITIONS

- A. Install Work in locations shown on Drawings, unless prevented by Project conditions.
- B. Prepare drawings showing proposed arrangement of Work to meet Project conditions, including changes to Work specified in other Sections.

## 1.8 SCOPE OF WORK

- A. This Contractor shall be responsible for coordinating his work with all other trades.
- B. The Contractor shall provide all materials, labor, equipment, tools, appliances, services, hoisting, scaffolding, supervision and overhead for the furnishing and installing of all mechanical work and related work including but not limited to the following:
  - 1. Boilers.
  - 2. Hot water pumps.
  - 3. Air Handlers
  - 4. Energy Recovery Ventilators
  - 5. Fans
  - 6. DX split systems
  - 7. Expansion tanks.
  - 8. Hot water coils.
  - 9. Hydronic piping, valves, fittings, and specialties.
  - 10. Ductwork and specialties.
  - 11. Pipe and duct insulation.
  - 12. VAV boxes
  - 13. Hot Water Unit Heaters
  - 14. Equipment Supports
  - 15. Automatic temperature controls.
  - 16. Grilles, registers, louvers, and diffusers.
  - 17. Vibration isolation.
  - 18. Motor starters and disconnects.

19. Protection.
20. Identification.
21. Coordination.
22. Rigging.
23. Testing and Balancing Reports Air and Water.
24. Shop Drawings.
25. As-Built Drawings and Maintenance Manuals.
26. Warranties.
27. Commissioning

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS – NOT USED

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 GENERAL

- A. Construct all apparatus of materials and pressure ratings suitable for the conditions encountered during continuous operation.
- B. Where corrosion can occur, appropriate corrosion resistant materials and assembly methods must be used including isolation of dissimilar metals against galvanic interaction. Resistance to corrosion must be achieved by the use of the appropriate base materials. Coatings shall be restored to only when specifically permitted by the Specification.
- C. Construct all equipment in accordance with requirements of all applicable codes. All pressure vessels and safety devices that fall within the scope of the ASME Code shall conform to the Code and bear the ASME label or stamp.
- D. Match and balance all system components to achieve compatibility of equipment or satisfactory operation and performance throughout the entire operating temperature and control ranges. All installations shall be in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.
- E. Provide all controls, wiring, piping, valves, accessories and other components necessary to make all systems complete and operable.
- F. The contractor shall warranty all work, including labor and materials, and equipment furnished and installed as part of this contract for a minimum period of a year from the date of acceptance by the owner, in writing. Certain equipment, such as underground fuel tanks, may have longer warranties as indicated in the specifications. In such cases the longer of the two warranties shall prevail.

### 3.2 SHOP DRAWINGS AND SUBMITTALS (COORDINATE WITH DIVISION 1)

- A. Shop drawings and samples shall be prepared and submitted in accordance with the requirements established in the contract and shall consist of the all items listed in the following paragraphs.

- B. Manufacturer's data or shop drawings giving full information as to dimensions, materials, and all information pertinent to the adequacy of the submitted equipment shall be submitted for review. Shop drawings shall include, but not be limited to the following:
- C. Submit all Mechanical equipment noted and scheduled on plans including but not limited to the following:
1. Automatic Temperature Controls, Operation Sequences & Wiring Diagrams, and Control Diagrams hardware and software
  2. Motor Starters and Controllers
  3. Hot water, and piping, valves and specialties
  4. Expansion, and Water Treatment Equipment Tanks
  5. Air handling units
  6. Energy Recovery Ventilators
  7. Exhaust, return and spill fans
  8. Boilers
  9. Pumps and bases
  10. Unit heaters
  11. Vibration isolation
  12. Hangers and Inserts
  13. Equipment Supports and Vibration Eliminators
  14. Sheet Metal Construction Standards
  15. Piping Layout (1/4 scale)
  16. Ductwork Layout (1/4 scale)
  17. Insulation (piping and ductwork)
  18. Piping, Valves, fittings, and Specialties
  19. Filters
  20. Fan Curves and Sound Rating
  21. Coils
  22. Fire dampers, Motorized Dampers, Smoke dampers
  23. Diffusers Registers and Grilles
  24. Balancing Reports, Air and Water
  25. Coordinated Composite Drawings on Mylar with Piping, Ductwork, Conduits, Lights, registers Grilles and Smoke Detectors, etc.
- D. The contractor shall, upon award, submit a schedule for the engineer's review indicating when each of the above shop drawings shall be submitted. Submittals shall be made in a timely manner as the project progresses in accordance with the Construction manager or General contractor's work schedules. The contractor shall allow sufficient time for the engineers to perform his review. A minimum of 10 business days shall be required. Untimely submittals shall be cause for the owner to make a delay against the contractor.
- E. Demolition, purchase and or installation shall not begin until shop drawings pertaining to the equipment associated with any related portion of the work have been submitted.
- F. Sheet metal shop drawings shall indicate all existing and/or new lights, walls, piping, structural elements, existing work, etc. and dimension locations of ductwork including elevations in relation to these items.
- G. Where shop drawings have been reviewed by the Engineer, such review shall not be considered as a guarantee of measurements or building conditions. Where drawings have been reviewed, said review does not mean that drawings have been checked in detail; said review does not

substantiate any quantities and in any way relieve the Contractor from his responsibility nor the necessity of furnishing materials or performing work required by the Contract Drawings and Specifications. It does not relieve the contractor of the responsibility to perform all work to accepted industry standards and in a code compliant manor. Approval of shop drawings containing errors does not relieve the contractor from making corrections at his expense.

- H. Where substitutions are submitted for approval the review shall be for general performance comparison to the specified product. Products shall not be reviewed for size, clearance or coordination with other trades. Coordination with other trades shall be the responsibility of the contractor. And changes to existing conditions or changes required to the work of other trades such as a result of substituted material or equipment approved or not shall be the responsibility of this contractor.
- I. Approval of shop drawings
  - 1. The Contractor shall be specifically responsible for checking equipment dimensions and clearances and confirming that equipment will fit into the designated space and connect properly to adjoining equipment and/or materials.
  - 2. Submittals marked "Make Corrections Noted" give authority to proceed in accordance with the notes. However, if drawings are also marked "Amend and Resubmit", corrected drawings must be resubmitted for final review.
  - 3. Submittals marked "Rejected" do not give authority to proceed with any portion of the work shown there-on. Drawings must be resubmitted.
  - 4. Submittals marked "Rejected" or "Amend and Resubmit" shall include a specific written response to the engineer's comments. Resubmission of a submittal without a written response to the engineer's comments will be considered incomplete and shall be returned un-reviewed.

### 3.3 CHARTS AND TAGS

- A. The Contractor shall provide three sets of charts and diagrams of all piping systems indicating the number and location of valves, controls, etc.
- B. All valves, dampers, and controls shall be designated with brass tags. Refer to section 23 05 23 Identification for HVAC Piping and equipment

### 3.4 GENERAL AND SUPPLEMENTARY CONDITIONS and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section

### 3.5 FEES & PERMITS

- A. The Contractor shall obtain all permits and pay all fees required related to this scope of work

### 3.6 PAINTING

- A. All motors, fans and all other factory manufactured and assembled apparatus shall be factory coated with one coat of primer and one coat of machinery enamel standard color at the factory and after installation, all finishes shall be cleaned and touched up to repair any damage incurred during construction.
- B. All piping shall be painted in colors conforming with OSHA Standards. All new and existing exposed iron and supplementary dunnage steel shall be finished according to specifications.
- C. All supports, nuts, bolts and hanger fasteners located outside shall be galvanized or nickel plated.

### 3.7 RIGGING

- A. Furnish all labor, materials and equipment required to rig equipment and materials.
- B. The rigger shall secure any necessary permits and comply with all applicable Federal, State and local safety regulations. A copy of permits to be kept at both the project site and Engineer's Office.
- C. The rigger shall have a minimum of five (5) years of practical experience and hold a master riggers license if required.
- D. The procedure for rigging shall be submitted to the Engineer for review. All possible precautions should be taken to prevent damage to the structure, streets, sidewalks, curbs, lawns, etc.

### 3.8 CUTTING AND PATCHING

- A. All cutting and patching required for piping, ductwork, control conduits, etc., passing through walls, floors, and roof shall be provided by the this Contractor under this contract unless otherwise noted. This Contractor shall be responsible for any damage done to the structure due to his negligence.
- B. Patching materials and application shall match existing construction.
- C. Where applicable, new holes for piping installation shall be core drilled.
- D. Pipe Sleeves & Fire-stopping:
  - 1. Provide for all pipes, conduits ducts, and other elements passing through floors, walls, partitions and structural elements, sleeves as specified. Sleeves shall be of adequate diameter to allow for a minimum of 3/4 inches clear all around sleeve and pipe. When pipe, conduit ducts or other such element penetrates other than fire rated assembly and is insulated, insulation shall pass continuously through sleeves with 1/2 inch clearance between insulation and sleeve.

2. Where pipes, conduits and other such elements penetrate fire rated assemblies, or where holes or voids are created to extend mechanical systems through fire rated assemblies (walls, floors, ceilings, structure, etc.); sleeves and fire-stopping systems shall be installed.
- E. Furnish access doors, to the General Contractor for installation where required in finished walls, partitions and the like for access to junction boxes, controls, valves, etc, concealed behind finished construction.
- F. Submit location drawings and sizes for review prior to installation.

### 3.9 PROTECTION-COORDINATE WITH DIVISION 1

- A. Special protection is required for installation of a Derrick or other device for rigging purposes. This Contractor shall coordinate with the rigger to facilitate rigging work.
- B. Recommendations and Provisions of ANSI Bulletin A10.2 and OSHA shall be complied with in-so-far as applicable to the work.
- C. The Contractor shall provide temporary partitions or tarpaulins to protect adjacent spaces and/or equipment. He shall be responsible for any damage or injury to person or property of any character resulting from any act, omission, neglect or misconduct in his manner or method of executing his work.
- D. The Contractor shall restore at his own expense such property to a condition similar or equal to that existing before such damage or injury in an acceptable manner.
- E. The Contractor, furthermore, shall conduct his operations in such a manner as to prevent dust and debris from transferring on to adjoining property or into existing spaces.
- F. All openings cut in walls, floors, roof or ceilings of the building, for conduit, pipe, ductwork, etc., shall be closed off with box-type temporary protective enclosures of 1/4" tempered hardboard, except when mechanics are actually working at the particular opening. Enclosures shall be constructed of fireproof 2x4 frame, four (4) sides covered and made completely dust and water tight.
- G. All finished floor areas through which the contractor must pass with materials or equipment shall be protected with a layer of 1/4" hardboard, "Masonite", laid with joints taped together

### 3.10 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

- A. Provide supplementary steel dunnage, curbs, angle iron stands, etc., to properly set and install all equipment, including supports necessary to properly pitch piping.

### 3.11 WELDING

- A. Welding and equipment shall conform to the American Welding Society's Code for Welding in Building Construction, latest edition as well as state and local laws and ordinances.

- B. The handling and storage of all welding materials, acetylene and oxygen tanks, burners, and other equipment required for the execution of welding and cutting work shall be subject at all times to the approval of the Owner and/or Architect. All welding materials and gas tanks shall be promptly removed from the premises upon completion of each day's work or stored in a manner satisfactory to the owner. Welding and equipment shall conform to the American Welding Society's Code for Welding in Building Construction, latest edition as well as state and local laws and ordinances.
- C. Provide all temporary ventilation, and ventilation air systems required during welding operations as required by OSHA.

### 3.12 AS-BUILT DRAWINGS

- A. The Contractor shall provide a complete set of As-Built drawings showing actual installation and locations of all new and existing equipment, piping, and ductwork in the entire building. Schedules shall be revised to indicate actual equipment installed.
- B. As-Built drawings shall be submitted as per contract requirements in accordance with Division 1 and shall be submitted in paper format for review. Accepted as built shall then be submitted in AutoCAD format on hard disc.

### 3.13 CONDITIONS

- A. Inspection: Prior to all work of this Section, carefully inspect the installed work of all other trades and verify that all such work is complete to the point where this installation may properly commence. Verify that the work of this Section may be completed in strict accordance with all pertinent codes and regulations, the approved Shop Drawings, and the Manufacturers' recommendations.
- B. Discrepancies: In the event of discrepancy, immediately notify the Engineer. Do not proceed in areas of discrepancy until all such discrepancies have been fully resolved.

### 3.14 INSTALLATION OF EQUIPMENT

- A. Locations: Install all equipment in the locations shown on the approved Shop Drawings except where specifically otherwise approved on the job by the Owner and/or Engineer.
- B. Interferences: Avoid interference with structure, and with work of other trades, preserving adequate headroom and clearing all doors and passageways to the approval of the Engineer.
- C. Inspection: Check each piece of equipment in the system for defects, verifying that all parts are properly furnished and installed, and that all items function properly, and that all adjustments have been made.

### 3.15 CLOSING-IN OF UNINSPECTED WORK

- A. General: Do not allow or cause any of the work to be covered up or enclosed until it has been inspected, tested, and accepted by the Engineer and by all other authorities having jurisdiction.

- B. Uncovering: Should any of the work of this Section be covered up or enclosed before it has been completely inspected, tested, and approved, do all things necessary to uncover all such work. After the work has been completely inspected, tested, and approved, provide all materials and labor necessary and make all repairs necessary to restore the work to its original and proper condition at no additional cost to the owner.

### 3.16 BUILDING ACCESS

- A. The Contractor shall inform himself fully regarding peculiarities and limitations of space available for the passage and installation of all equipment and materials under the Contract.
- B. Verify and coordinate removal of existing construction and/or knock-down of equipment to suit conditions. Special attention should be given to equipment installation. Provide all labor and material to facilitate installation.

### 3.17 COOPERATION WITH OTHER TRADES PHASING

- A. Cooperate with other trades in order that all systems in the work may be installed in the best arrangements.
- B. Coordinate as required with all other trades to share space in common areas and to provide the maximum of access to each system.
- C. This Contractor shall submit fully coordinated shop drawings showing all piping, ductwork and equipment, as well as relevant work of all other trades such as light, conduits, structural and steel, which may impact the final size or placement of piping, ductwork, equipment, diffusers and grilles.
- D. The work shall be scheduled and phased in accordance with the requirements of the contract and the client. Prior to the commencement of work the HVAC contractor shall submit a schedule in writing to the Architect and owner for approval. There shall be no shut downs of any systems without prior written approval from the owner. The contractor shall include in his bid all costs associated with providing temporarily piping controls, ductwork and fans and air conditioning units to maintain operations in the phase II area while work is being performed on the Phase I area. It shall also be noted that ductwork, piping and controls will have to be extended through the phase II work areas in order to reach the area(s) under construction in phase I as part of this work. The contractor shall include in his bid all provisions to perform such phasing work

### 3.18 CLEANING

- A. It is the intent of the contract documents that all work, including the inside of equipment be left in a clean condition. All construction dirt shall be removed from material and equipment.
- B. All removed items shall be taken off the premises and discarded in a manner satisfactory to the Owner.

### 3.19 COMPLETENESS

- A. It is the intent of the contract documents to provide complete systems. Completeness shall mean not only that all material and equipment has been installed properly, but that all material and equipment is installed, adjusted, and operating as per the design intent in the opinion of the Engineer and in accordance with generally accepted industry good practice.
- B. Upon completion of all phases of work or before there is any danger from freezing the contractor fill the heating and cooling systems with a 35% glycol solution. Furnish 15 extra gallons in a steel drum for storage on site and future use by the owner.

### 3.20 FIRE PREVENTION DURING HOT WORK

- A. Before starting operations, the Contractor shall furnish trained personnel to provide fire watches for locations where hot work is to be performed. One fire watcher may observe several locations in a relatively small contiguous area. Contractor shall furnish suitable type, fully-charged, operable portable fire extinguisher to each fire watcher.
- B. The Contractor shall provide fire watchers who know how to operate the fire extinguisher, how to turn on a fire alarm and how to summon the fire department.
- C. Before starting operations, take suitable precautions to minimize the hazard of a fire communicating to the opposite side of walls, floors, ceilings and roofs from the operations.

### 3.21 SAFETY MEASURES

- A. Hot work shall not be done in or near rooms or areas where flammable liquids or explosive vapors are present or thought to be present. A combustible gas indicator (explosimeter) test shall be conducted to assure that each area is safe. The Contractor is responsible for arranging and paying for each test.
- B. Insofar as possible, the Contractor shall remove and keep the area free from all combustibles, including rubbish, paper and waste within a radius of 25 feet from hot operations.
- C. If combustible material cannot be removed, the Contractor shall furnish fireproof blankets to cover such materials. At the direction of the owner floors, walls, and ceilings of combustible material shall be wetted thoroughly with water before, during, and after operations sufficiently to afford adequate protection.
- D. Where possible, the Contractor shall furnish and use baffles of metal or gypsum board to prevent the spraying of sparks, hot slag and other hot particles into surrounding combustible material.
- E. The Contractor shall prevent the spread of sparks and particles of hot metal through open windows, doors, and holes and cracks in floors, walls, ceilings and roofs.
- F. Cylinders of gas used in hot work shall be placed a safe distance from the work. The Contractor shall provide hoses and equipment free of deterioration, malfunction and leaks. Suitable

supports shall be provided to prevent accidental overturning of cylinders. All cylinder control valves shall be shut off while in use with the gas pressure regulator set at 15 psi or less.

- G. When hot work operations are completed or ended for the day, each location of the days work shall be inspected by the Contractor 30 to 60 minutes after completion of operations to detect for hidden or smoldering fires and to ensure that proper housekeeping is maintained. Contractor shall cleanup the area of work at the end of each shift or workday.
- H. Where sprinkler protection exists, the sprinkler system shall be maintained without interruption while operations are being performed. If operations are performed close to automatic sprinkler heads, gypsum board sheets or damp cloth guards may be used to shield the individual heads temporarily. The heads shall be inspected by the Contractor immediately after hot work operations cease, to ensure all materials have been removed from the heads and that the heads have not been damaged.
- I. Suitable type, fully-charged, operable portable fire extinguisher shall be available at all times during hot work operations.
- J. If any of the above safeguards are not employed, or are violated, the Contracting owners Representative may, by written notice, stop the work until compliance is obtained. Such stoppage shall not relieve the Contractor from performing his work within the Contract period for the Contract price.

### 3.22 USE OF OWNERS EQUIPMENT

- A. The contractor shall not use any the owner's HVAC system or equipment, new or existing, for any purpose. The contractor shall provide temporary HVAC equipment, ductwork, power, and controls for use during construction for the purpose of ventilation, or heating during the construction process. All such equipment, ductwork, power, and controls shall be removed and the completion of work.

END OF SECTION

## SECTION 230513 - COMMON MOTOR REQUIREMENTS FOR HVAC EQUIPMENT

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- B. Division 24 - Equipment Wiring Systems: Electrical characteristics and wiring connections.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes general requirements for single-phase and polyphase, general-purpose, horizontal, small and medium, squirrel-cage induction motors for use on alternating-current power systems up to 600 V and installed at equipment manufacturer's factory or shipped separately by equipment manufacturer for field installation.

#### 1.3 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate features of motors, installed units, and accessory devices to be compatible with the following:
  - 1. Motor controllers.
  - 2. Torque, speed, and horsepower requirements of the load.
  - 3. Ratings and characteristics of supply circuit and required control sequence.
  - 4. Ambient and environmental conditions of installation location.

#### 1.4 REFERENCES

- A. AFBMA 9 - Load Ratings and Fatigue Life for Ball Bearings.
- B. AFBMA 11 - Load Ratings and Fatigue Life for Roller Bearings.
- C. NEMA MG 1 - Motors and Generators.
- D. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code.

#### 1.5 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

- A. Conform to UL Component Recognition for appropriate sizes.
- B. Conform to NFPA 70 applicable electrical code, Underwriters Laboratories, Inc., and NEMA
- C. Conform to New York State energy code.

## 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND PROTECTION

- A. Protect motors stored on site from weather and moisture by maintaining factory covers and suitable weatherproof covering. For extended outdoor storage, remove motors from equipment and store separately.

## 1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Provide five year manufacturer warranty for all motors larger than ½ horsepower.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### MANUFACTURERS

- A. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

- 1. Gould.
- 2. Century.
- 3. General Electric.
- 4. Square D

## 2.2 GENERAL MOTOR REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with NEMA MG 1 unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Comply with IEEE 841 for severe-duty motors.
- C. All electric motors of sizes and types as specified for driving mechanical equipment shall be provided under this section.
- D. Electrical Service: All motors shall be 60 Hertz unless otherwise noted. Refer to Electrical Specifications for required electrical characteristics.
- E. Motors: Design for continuous operation in 40° C environment, and for temperature rise in accordance with ANSI/NEMA MG limits for insulation class, Service Factor, and motor enclosure type. Motors shall be of sufficient size for duty to be performed.
- F. Visible Nameplate: Indicating manufacturer's name and model number, motor horsepower, RPM, frame size, voltage, phase, cycles, full load amps, insulation system class, service factor, maximum ambient temperature, temperature rise at rated horsepower, minimum efficiency, power factor.
- G. Electrical Connection: Conduit connection boxes, threaded for conduit. For fractional horsepower motors where connection is made directly, provide screwed conduit connection in

end frame. Size motor boxes to receive motor feeders and ground cable indicated on electrical drawing schedules.

- H. Duty: Continuous duty at ambient temperature of 40 deg C and at altitude of **3300 feet** above sea level.
- I. Capacity and Torque Characteristics: Sufficient to start, accelerate, and operate connected loads at designated speeds, at installed altitude and environment, with indicated operating sequence, and without exceeding nameplate ratings or considering service factor.

## 2.3 MOTOR EFFICIENCY

- A. Electric motors shall meet the minimum efficiency requirement of the following tables in accordance with International Energy conservation code when tested in accordance with DOE CFR 431. Performance data shall be certified by approved testing agency.
- B. Subtype I motors – NEMA premium efficiency as per table NEMA MG 1 table 12-12 and International Energy Conservation code table 405.8(1). This shall apply to general purpose, T-frame, single speed, squirrel cage, induction type; 230/460-V, NEMA Designs A or B, continuous rated, 60 Hz, from 1 to 200 hp, 2-, 4- and 6-pole (3600-, 1800- and 1200-rpm), open and enclosed. Subtype I motors 250 hp to 500 hp motor efficiency shall be able NEMA MG 1 table 12-11 and International Energy Conservation Code table 405.8(1).
- C. Subtype II motors – NEMA efficiency as per table NEMA MG 1 table 12-11 and International Energy Conservation code table 405.8(2). This shall apply to general purpose motors but can configured as U-frame motors; NEMA Design C motors; close-coupled pump motors; footless motors; vertical solid shaft normal thrust motors (as tested in a horizontal position); eight-pole (900 rpm) motors, and polyphase motors with a voltage of not more than 600 V (other than 230 or 460 V).
- D. Minimum average full load efficiency of polyphase small electric motors up to 3 hp shall be in accordance with Table C405.8(3) of the International Energy Conservation Code
- E. Minimum average full load efficiency for capacitor-start, capacitor-run and capacitor-start induction-run small electric motors up to 3 hp shall be in accordance with Table C405.8(4) of the International Energy Conservation Code.

## 2.4 POLYPHASE MOTORS

- A. Description: NEMA MG 1, Design B, medium induction motor.
- B. Service Factor: 1.15.
- C. Multispeed Motors: Variable torque.
  - 1. For motors with 2:1 speed ratio, consequent pole, single winding.
  - 2. For motors with other than 2:1 speed ratio, separate winding for each speed.
- D. Multispeed Motors: Separate winding for each speed.

- E. Rotor: Random-wound, squirrel cage.
- F. Bearings: Regreasable, shielded, antifriction ball bearings suitable for radial and thrust loading. Grease lubricated anti-friction ball bearings with housings equipped with plugged provision for relubrication, rated for minimum AFBMA 9, L-10 life of 200,000 hours. Calculate bearing load with NEMA minimum V-belt pulley with belt centre line at end of NEMA standard shaft extension. Stamp bearing sizes on nameplate.
- G. Thermistor System (Motor Frame Sizes 254T and Larger): Three PTC thermistors embedded in motor windings and epoxy encapsulated solid state control relay with wiring to terminal box.
- H. Sound Power Levels: To NEMA MG 1.
- I. Temperature Rise: Match insulation rating.
- J. Insulation: Class B or better.
- K. Code Letter Designation:
  - 1. Motors [15] HP and Larger: NEMA starting Code F or Code G.
  - 2. Motors Smaller Than 15 HP: Manufacturer's standard starting characteristic.
- L. Enclosure Material: Cast iron for motor frame sizes 324T and larger; rolled steel for motor frame sizes smaller than 324T.

## 2.5 ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS FOR POLYPHASE MOTORS

- A. Motors Used with Reduced-Voltage and Multispeed Controllers: Match wiring connection requirements for controller with required motor leads. Provide terminals in motor terminal box, suited to control method.
- B. Use part winding Start above 254T Frame Size: Use part of winding to reduce locked rotor starting current to approximately 60 percent of full winding locked rotor current while providing approximately 50 percent of full winding locked rotor torque.
- C. **Motors Used with Variable-Frequency Controllers: Ratings, characteristics, and features coordinated with and approved by controller manufacturer.**
  - 1. **Windings: Copper magnet wire with moisture-resistant insulation varnish, designed and tested to resist transient spikes, high frequencies, and short time rise pulses produced by pulse-width-modulated inverters.**
  - 2. **Premium-Efficient Motors: Class B temperature rise; Class F insulation.**
  - 3. **Inverter-Duty Motors: Class F temperature rise; Class H insulation.**
  - 4. **Thermal Protection: Comply with NEMA MG 1 requirements for thermally protected motors.**
- D. Severe-Duty Motors: Comply with IEEE 841, with 1.15 minimum service factor.

## 2.6 SINGLE-PHASE MOTORS

- A. Motors larger than 1/20 hp shall be one of the following, to suit starting torque and requirements of specific motor application:
  - 1. Permanent-split capacitor.
  - 2. Split phase.
  - 3. Capacitor start, inductor run.
  - 4. Capacitor start, capacitor run.
- B. Multispeed Motors: Variable-torque, permanent-split-capacitor type.
- C. Bearings: Prelubricated, antifriction ball bearings or sleeve bearings suitable for radial and thrust loading.
- D. Motors 1/20 HP and Smaller: Shaded-pole type.
- E. Thermal Protection: Internal protection to automatically open power supply circuit to motor when winding temperature exceeds a safe value calibrated to temperature rating of motor insulation. Thermal-protection device shall automatically reset when motor temperature returns to normal range.
- F. Drip-proof Enclosure: Class A (50 degrees C temperature rise) insulation, NEMA Service Factor, pre-lubricated sleeve ball bearings.

## 2.7 POWER FACTOR CORRECTION

- A. Provide a capacitor for each three phase, single speed motor rated 3 HP or larger shall be provided to correct the full load power factor to 95%. The capacitor shall be mounted at the motor for connection across the motor terminals by Electrical Contractor
- B. Capacitors;
  - 1. Capacitors shall be totally enclosed, fused and with discharge resistors.
  - 2. Capacitors based on nominal motor RPM shall be provided in accordance with the following table to correct power factor to 95% and verify sizes with motor manufacturer.

Motor HP	Capacitor KVAR 3600 RPM Motor	Capacitor KVAR 1800 RPM Motor
3	1.5	1.5
5	2	2
7.5	2.5	2.5
10	3	3
15	4	4
20	5	5
25	6	6
30	7	7
40	9	9
50	12	12
60	14	14

## 2.8 STARTERS

## A. GENERAL

1. See specification Section 16485 and Division 1 for additional information.
2. Starters for motors operating at 120 volts shall be manual starters unless otherwise indicated. Starters for motors operating at other than 120 volts shall be magnetic starters.
3. All starters shall be enclosed. Enclosures shall be surface mounted NEMA 1 unless otherwise indicated.
4. Where weatherproof starters are required, the enclosure shall be NEMA 4.
5. It shall be verified that the correct overload heaters have been installed in the starter before energizing any motor. Sizing shall be based on motor nameplate current and taking into account any reduction in current due to power factor correction.
6. Alternate Manufacturers –
  - a. Allen-Bradley
  - b. Crouse-Hinds Co.
  - c. Cutler-Hammer, Inc.
  - d. General Electric Co.
  - e. Square D Co.
  - f. Westinghouse Electric Corp.

## B. MANUAL STARTERS

1. Two-pole, toggle operated, thermal overload device in each phase leg, handle guard for padlocking toggle handle and with indicated control and signal devices.
2. Where a motor is controlled automatically by an interlock or pilot device, a “HAND-OFF-AUTO” switch shall be provided in the starter cover. Where the rating of the interlock or pilot device is inadequate to control the motor currents directly, a properly rated contactor shall be provided between the controlling device and the motor.
3. An “ON” pilot light shall be provided in the starter cover.

## C. MAGNETIC STARTERS

1. Starters shall be sized in accordance with NEMA standards and the following table except that starters shall not be smaller than NEMA size 0. Starters shall be provided with one N.O. electrical holding interlock, under voltage protection and two additional auxiliary contacts within the same enclosure. NEMA size starters shall be provided as follows

STARTER SIZE	MAX HP AT 460 VOLTS
0	5
1	10
2	25

2. All starters shall be combination type with the starter and disconnect in the same enclosure. All starters shall be Type 2 coordination protected. Fuses shall be Bussman “Low Peak” type or equal sized at 125% of motor nameplate rating. Verify and coordinate requirements for fused disconnect switches with the Electrical Contractor prior to ordering starters.

3. Provide S.S.P.B. or H-O-A switches and pilot light in covers as required to facilitate control operation sequences.

D. CRITICAL FAULT

1. Where starters are not integral to equipment and are furnished and installed separately from equipment by the contractor, provide a 3 phase line voltage monitor by ICM Controls model 450 or approved equal. Unit shall be installed in the motor starter or in a separate enclosure with the same rating as the starter. It shall be arranged to monitor critical faults including phase loss or reversal, and when detected, de-energize the load. It shall monitor non-critical faults including high/low voltage, voltage unbalance and when detected, after a time delay de-energize the load.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

- A. Suitable starting and controlling equipment and devices shall be furnished and installed as specified hereinafter and as shown on the Drawings. The starting equipment shall be arranged, generally, in control groups, or in certain cases, as isolated combination starters as specified or indicated. The Heating Ventilating and Air Conditioning Sequences of Operation, drawings and specifications shall be referred to for the manner of control, operation and monitoring of motors and the electrically operated equipment.
- B. A starter and disconnect switch or combination motor starter disconnect shall be provided for every motor and each and every electrically operated piece of equipment by this contractor except where complete starters and controls are furnished by the manufacturer of the motor or piece of equipment. Starters shall be internally wired to provide the required control operation and monitoring. All control devices such as push buttons, break-glass stations, alternators, relays, pilot lights, etc., shall be provided as required for operation of mechanical equipment. All roof top and remotely located equipment shall have remote starters as located on plan and shall have local disconnect switches. All equipment located in equipment rooms can use combination starters/disconnects located within line of site of controlled equipment. All starters and disconnect switches shall be in enclosures suitable for the environment in which they are installed. Starters and disconnect switches located in machine rooms shall use NEMA 1. Starters and disconnect switches located outdoors shall use NEMA 4x. Starters and disconnect switches located in machine rooms which are subject to potential water damage shall use NEMA 2
- C. Starting equipment and devices specified in this section (and section 23 29 13 Variable Frequency Controllers), shall be furnished by the mechanical subcontractor and shall be installed by the Electrical subcontractor. In general, the mechanical subcontractor shall furnish all motor starters and disconnect switches except where they are an integral part of a motor control center, in this case starters and disconnects shall be provided, (furnished and installed), by the electrical contractor. The Electrical subcontractor shall also provide all wiring necessary to supply power to the electric motors specified under this section, including connections from the starters to the motors. Starters and disconnects shall also include variable frequency drives.
- D. The mechanical Contractor shall furnish and install all wiring between control devices and controlled equipment furnished under this Section, including interlock control wiring between

motor starters, and all automatic temperature control wiring. All wiring shall be installed in conformance with applicable codes and the requirements of the Electrical Division of the Specifications.

- E. The Electrical Contractor shall furnish a 120 volt power source to temperature control panels and equipment requiring a separate 120 volt control power source. Power for control circuits for all devices connecting to motor starters shall be obtained from 120-volt control transformers provided in each starter operating at other than 120 volts. Provide transformers for all low voltage control systems as required.
- F. Furnish detailed composite wiring diagrams and such other information necessary to assure the proper connection, operation and control of motorized equipment, including interlocks, automatic controls, safety controls and all auxiliary circuits.
- G. All control units shall be furnished with a nameplate indicating which device or equipment it controls, the voltage. Additional nameplates on each push button, selector switch and pilot light indicating their functions shall be provided. Nameplates shall be laminated phenolic with white letters on black background, minimum 2" high.
- H. All motors supplied either with equipment or installed separately that are to be used in conjunction with variable frequency drive shall be inverter duty motors.

END OF SECTION 230513

## SECTION 230517 - SLEEVES AND ESCUTCHEONS FOR HVAC PIPING

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Sleeves.
2. Stack-sleeve fittings.
3. Sleeve-seal systems.
4. Sleeve-seal fittings.
5. Grout.
6. Escutcheons.
7. Floor plates.

## 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Sustainable Design Submittals:
  1. [Product Data](#): For sealants, indicating VOC content.
  2. Laboratory Test Reports: For sealants, indicating compliance with requirements for low-emitting materials.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 SLEEVES

- A. Cast-Iron Wall Pipes: Cast or fabricated of cast or ductile iron and equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Galvanized-Steel Wall Pipes: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Schedule 40, with plain ends and welded steel collar; zinc coated.
- C. Galvanized-Steel-Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, zinc coated, with plain ends.
- D. PVC-Pipe Sleeves: ASTM D 1785, Schedule 40.

- E. Galvanized-Steel-Sheet Sleeves: 0.0239-inch minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint.
- F. Molded-PE or -PP Sleeves: Removable, tapered-cup shaped, and smooth outer surface with nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.
- G. Molded-PVC Sleeves: With nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.

## 2.2 STACK-SLEEVE FITTINGS

- A. Description: Manufactured, cast-iron sleeve with integral clamping flange. Include clamping ring, bolts, and nuts for membrane flashing.
  - 1. Underdeck Clamp: Clamping ring with setscrews.

## 2.3 SLEEVE-SEAL SYSTEMS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. [Advance Products & Systems, Inc.](#)
  - 2. [Airex Manufacturing.](#)
  - 3. [CALPICO, Inc.](#)
  - 4. [Metraflex Company \(The\).](#)
  - 5. Link Seal
- B. Description: Modular sealing-element unit, designed for field assembly, for filling annular space between piping and sleeve.
  - 1. Sealing Elements: EPDM-rubber interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe.
  - 2. Pressure Plates: Carbon steel or Stainless steel.
  - 3. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel, with corrosion-resistant coating, or Stainless steel of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements.

## 2.4 SLEEVE-SEAL FITTINGS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. [Advance Products & Systems, Inc.](#)
  - 2. [GPT; an EnPro Industries company.](#)
  - 3. [Metraflex Company \(The\).](#)
  - 4. [Proco Products, Inc.](#)
  - 5. Fernco
- B. Description: Manufactured heavy rubber or EPDM, sleeve-to-pipe water stop assembly. Unit has rubber water stop collar with center opening to match piping OD. Connected with stainless

steel hose clamps. Made for copper or plastic carrier pipes. Size up to 4" sleeve and 3" carrier pipe.

## 2.5 GROUT

- A. Standard: ASTM C 1107/C 1107M, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.
- B. Characteristics: Nonshrink; recommended for interior and exterior applications.
- C. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.
- D. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

## 2.6 ESCUTCHEONS

- A. One-Piece, Deep-Pattern Type: Deep-drawn, box-shaped brass with chrome-plated finish and spring-clip fasteners.
- B. One-Piece, Stamped-Steel Type: With chrome-plated finish and spring-clip fasteners.
- C. Split-Casting Brass Type: With polished, chrome-plated finish and with concealed hinge and setscrew.
- D. Split-Plate, Stamped-Steel Type: With chrome-plated finish, concealed hinge, and spring-clip fasteners.

## 2.7 FLOOR PLATES

- A. One-Piece Floor Plates: Cast-iron flange with holes for fasteners.
- B. Split-Casting Floor Plates: Cast brass with concealed hinge.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 SLEEVE INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeves for piping passing through penetrations in floors, partitions, roofs, and walls.
- B. For sleeves that will have sleeve-seal system installed, select sleeves of size large enough to provide 1-inch annular clear space between piping and concrete slabs and walls.
  - 1. Sleeves are not required for core-drilled holes.
- C. Install sleeves in concrete floors, concrete roof slabs, and concrete walls as new slabs and walls are constructed.

1. Permanent sleeves are not required for holes in slabs formed by molded-PE or -PP sleeves.
  2. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
    - a. Exception: Extend sleeves installed in floors of mechanical equipment areas or other wet areas 2 inches above finished floor level.
  3. Using grout, seal the space outside of sleeves in slabs and walls without sleeve-seal system.
- D. Install sleeves for pipes passing through interior partitions.
1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
  2. Install sleeves that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation.
  3. Seal annular space between sleeve and piping or piping insulation; use joint sealants appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Comply with requirements for sealants specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."
- E. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials. Comply with requirements for firestopping specified in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

### 3.2 STACK-SLEEVE-FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Install stack-sleeve fittings in new slabs as slabs are constructed.
1. Install fittings that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation.
  2. Secure flashing between clamping flanges for pipes penetrating floors with membrane waterproofing. Comply with requirements for flashing specified in Section 076200 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim."
  3. Install section of cast-iron soil pipe to extend sleeve to 2 inches above finished floor level.
  4. Extend cast-iron sleeve fittings below floor slab as required to secure clamping ring if ring is specified.
  5. Using grout, seal the space around outside of stack-sleeve fittings.
- B. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials. Comply with requirements for firestopping specified in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

### 3.3 SLEEVE-SEAL-SYSTEM INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeve-seal systems in sleeves in exterior concrete walls and slabs-on-grade at service piping entries into building.
- B. Select type, size, and number of sealing elements required for piping material and size and for sleeve ID or hole size. Position piping in center of sleeve. Center piping in penetration,

assemble sleeve-seal system components, and install in annular space between piping and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make a watertight seal.

- C. Coordinate the minimum size of sleeves with the pipe. Sleeves for plumbing piping shall be 2x the diameter of the service pipe.

### 3.4 SLEEVE-SEAL-FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeve-seal fittings in new walls and slabs as they are constructed.
- B. Assemble fitting components of length to be flush with both surfaces of concrete slabs and walls. Position water stop flange to be centered in concrete slab or wall.
- C. Secure nailing flanges to concrete forms.
- D. Using grout, seal the space around outside of sleeve-seal fittings.

### 3.5 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE-SEAL SCHEDULE

- A. Use sleeves and sleeve seals for the following piping-penetration applications:
  - 1. Exterior Concrete Walls above Grade:
    - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Galvanized-steel wall sleeves Sleeve-seal fittings.
    - b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Galvanized-steel wall sleeves.
  - 2. Exterior Concrete Walls below Grade:
    - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Galvanized-steel wall sleeves with sleeve-seal system Sleeve-seal fittings.
      - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
    - b. Piping and Larger: Galvanized-steel wall sleeves with sleeve-seal system.
      - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
  - 3. Concrete Slabs-on-Grade:
    - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Galvanized-steel wall sleeves with sleeve-seal system.
      - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
    - b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Galvanized-steel wall sleeves with sleeve-seal system.

- 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
4. Concrete Slabs above Grade:
  - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Galvanized-steel-pipe sleeves or Stack-sleeve fittings with Sleeve-seal fittings.
  - b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Galvanized-steel-pipe sleeves or Stack-sleeve fittings.
5. Interior Partitions:
  - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Galvanized-steel-pipe sleeves.
  - b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Galvanized-steel-sheet sleeves

### 3.6 ESCUTCHEON INSTALLATION

- A. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and finished floors.
- B. Install escutcheons with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of piping and with OD that completely covers opening.
  1. Escutcheons for New Piping:
    - a. Piping with Fitting or Sleeve Protruding from Wall: One-piece, deep-pattern type.
    - b. Chrome-Plated Piping: One-piece, cast-brass or split-casting brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
    - c. Insulated Piping: One-piece, stamped-steel type or split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge.
    - d. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, stamped-steel type or split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge.
    - e. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, stamped-steel type or split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge.
    - f. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: One-piece, stamped-steel type or split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge.
    - g. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: One-piece, stamped-steel type or split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge or split-plate, stamped-steel type with exposed-rivet hinge.
- C. Install floor plates for piping penetrations of equipment-room floors.
- D. Install floor plates with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of piping and with OD that completely covers opening.
  1. New Piping: One-piece, floor-plate type.
  2. Existing Piping: Split-casting, floor-plate type.

### 3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Replace broken and damaged escutcheons and floor plates using new materials.

END OF SECTION 230517.5

## SECTION 230519 - METERS AND GAGES FOR HVAC PIPING

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

## A. Section Includes:

1. Bimetallic-actuated thermometers.
2. Filled-system thermometers.
3. Liquid-in-glass thermometers.
4. Light-activated thermometers.
5. Thermowells.
6. Dial-type pressure gages.
7. Gage attachments.
8. Test plugs.
9. Test-plug kits.
10. Sight flow indicators.
11. Orifice flow Meters

## B. Related Sections:

1. Section 221123 "Facility Natural-Gas Piping" for gas meters.

## 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.

## 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Certificates: For each type of meter and gage, from manufacturer.

## 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For meters and gages to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 Thermometer Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Trelice, H. O. Co.
2. Watts; a Watts Water Technologies company.
3. Weiss Instruments, Inc.
4. Weksler Glass Thermometer Corp.

### 2.2 BIMETALLIC-ACTUATED THERMOMETERS

- A. Standard: ASME B40.200.
- B. Case: Liquid-filled and sealed type(s); stainless steel with 5-inch nominal diameter.
- C. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings and scales in deg F and deg C.
- D. Connector Type(s): Union joint, adjustable angle, with unified-inch screw threads.
- E. Connector Size: 1/2 inch, with ASME B1.1 screw thread.
- F. Stem: 0.25 or 0.375 inch in diameter; stainless steel.
- G. Window: Plain glass.
- H. Ring: Stainless steel.
- I. Element: Bimetal coil.
- J. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
- K. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range.

### 2.3 FILLED-SYSTEM THERMOMETERS

- A. Direct-Mounted, Metal-Case, Vapor-Actuated Thermometers:
  1. Standard: ASME B40.200.
  2. Case: Sealed type, cast aluminum or drawn steel; 5-inch nominal diameter.
  3. Element: Bourdon tube or other type of pressure element.
  4. Movement: Mechanical, dampening type, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
  5. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in deg F and deg C.
  6. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
  7. Window: Glass.
  8. Ring: Stainless steel.

9. Connector Type(s): Union joint, adjustable, 180 degrees in vertical plane, 360 degrees in horizontal plane, with locking device; with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
  10. Thermal System: Liquid-filled bulb in copper-plated steel, aluminum, or brass stem and of length to suit installation.
    - a. Design for Air-Duct Installation: With ventilated shroud.
    - b. Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.
  11. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range.
- B. Remote-Mounted, Metal-Case, Vapor-Actuated Thermometers:
1. Standard: ASME B40.200.
  2. Case: Sealed type, cast aluminum or drawn steel; 4-1/2-inch nominal diameter with back or front flange and holes for panel mounting.
  3. Element: Bourdon tube or other type of pressure element.
  4. Movement: Mechanical, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
  5. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in deg F and deg C.
  6. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
  7. Window: Glass.
  8. Ring: Stainless steel.
  9. Connector Type(s): Union joint, back or bottom; with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
  10. Thermal System: Liquid-filled bulb in copper-plated steel, aluminum, or brass stem and of length to suit installation.
    - a. Design for Air-Duct Installation: With ventilated shroud.
    - b. Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.
  11. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range.

## 2.4 LIQUID-IN-GLASS THERMOMETERS

- A. Metal-Case, Compact-Style, Liquid-in-Glass Thermometers:
1. Standard: ASME B40.200.
  2. Case: Cast aluminum; 6-inch nominal size.
  3. Case Form: Back angle unless otherwise indicated.
  4. Tube: Glass with magnifying lens and blue or red organic liquid.
  5. Tube Background: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in deg F and deg C.
  6. Window: Glass or plastic.
  7. Stem: Aluminum or brass and of length to suit installation.
    - a. Design for Air-Duct Installation: With ventilated shroud.
    - b. Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.
  8. Connector: 3/4 inch, with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
  9. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range or one scale division, to a maximum of 1.5 percent of scale range.
- B. Metal-Case, Industrial-Style, Liquid-in-Glass Thermometers:

1. Standard: ASME B40.200.
2. Case: Cast aluminum; 9-inch nominal size unless otherwise indicated.
3. Case Form: Adjustable angle Back angle unless otherwise indicated.
4. Tube: Glass with magnifying lens and blue or red organic liquid.
5. Tube Background: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in deg F and deg C.
6. Window: Glass.
7. Stem: Aluminum and of length to suit installation.
  - a. Design for Air-Duct Installation: With ventilated shroud.
  - b. Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.
8. Connector: 1-1/4 inches, with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
9. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range or one scale division, to a maximum of 1.5 percent of scale range.

## 2.5 DUCT-THERMOMETER MOUNTING BRACKETS

- A. Description: Flanged bracket with screw holes, for attachment to air duct and made to hold thermometer stem.

## 2.6 THERMOWELLS

- A. Thermowells:

1. Standard: ASME B40.200.
2. Description: Pressure-tight, socket-type fitting made for insertion into piping tee fitting.
3. Material for Use with Copper Tubing: CNR or CUNI.
4. Material for Use with Steel Piping: CRES CSA.
5. Type: Stepped shank unless straight or tapered shank is indicated.
6. External Threads: NPS 1/2, NPS 3/4, or NPS 1, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads.
7. Internal Threads: 1/2, 3/4, and 1 inch, with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
8. Bore: Diameter required to match thermometer bulb or stem.
9. Insertion Length: Length required to match thermometer bulb or stem.
10. Lagging Extension: Include on thermowells for insulated piping and tubing.
11. Bushings: For converting size of thermowell's internal screw thread to size of thermometer connection.

- B. Heat-Transfer Medium: Mixture of graphite and glycerin.

## 2.7 PRESSURE GAGES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Treice, H. O. Co.
  - b. Watts; a Watts Water Technologies company.
  - c. Weiss Instruments, Inc.

d. Weksler Glass Thermometer Corp.

B. Direct-Mounted, Metal-Case, Dial-Type Pressure Gages:

1. Standard: ASME B40.100.
2. Case: Liquid-filled Sealed Solid-front, pressure relief type(s); cast aluminum or drawn steel; 4-1/2-inch nominal diameter.
3. Pressure-Element Assembly: Bourdon tube unless otherwise indicated.
4. Pressure Connection: Brass, with NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads and bottom-outlet type unless back-outlet type is indicated.
5. Movement: Mechanical, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
6. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in psi and kPa.
7. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
8. Window: Glass.
9. Ring: Metal.
10. Accuracy: Grade A, plus or minus 1 percent of middle half of scale range.

C. Remote-Mounted, Metal-Case, Dial-Type Pressure Gages:

1. Standard: ASME B40.100.
2. Case: Liquid-filled Sealed type; cast aluminum or drawn steel; 4-1/2-inch nominal diameter with back flange and holes for panel mounting.
3. Pressure-Element Assembly: Bourdon tube unless otherwise indicated.
4. Pressure Connection: Brass, with NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads and bottom-outlet type unless back-outlet type is indicated.
5. Movement: Mechanical, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
6. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in psi and kPa.
7. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
8. Window: Glass.
9. Ring: Metal.
10. Accuracy: Grade A, plus or minus 1 percent of middle half of scale range.

## 2.8 GAGE ATTACHMENTS

- A. Snubbers: ASME B40.100, brass; with NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads and piston-type surge-dampening device. Include extension for use on insulated piping.
- B. Siphons: Loop-shaped section of brass or stainless-steel pipe with NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2 pipe threads.
- C. Valves: Brass or stainless-steel needle, with NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads.

## 2.9 TEST PLUGS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. [Trerice, H. O. Co.](#)
2. [Watts; a Watts Water Technologies company.](#)
3. [Weiss Instruments, Inc.](#)
4. [Weksler Glass Thermometer Corp.](#)

- B. Description: Test-station fitting made for insertion into piping tee fitting.
- C. Body: Brass or stainless steel with core inserts and gasketed and threaded cap. Include extended stem on units to be installed in insulated piping.
- D. Thread Size: NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2, ASME B1.20.1 pipe thread.
- E. Minimum Pressure and Temperature Rating: 500 psig at 200 deg F.
- F. Core Inserts: EPDM self-sealing rubber.

## 2.10 TEST-PLUG KITS

- A. [Manufacturers:](#) Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. [Sisco Manufacturing Company, Inc.](#)
  2. [Trerice, H. O. Co.](#)
  3. [Watts; a Watts Water Technologies company.](#)
  4. [Weiss Instruments, Inc.](#)
- B. Furnish one test-plug kit(s) containing two thermometer(s), one pressure gage and adapter, and carrying case. Thermometer sensing elements, pressure gage, and adapter probes shall be of diameter to fit test plugs and of length to project into piping.
- C. Low-Range Thermometer: Small, bimetallic insertion type with 1- to 2-inch- diameter dial and tapered-end sensing element. Dial range shall be at least 25 to 125 deg F.
- D. High-Range Thermometer: Small, bimetallic insertion type with 1- to 2-inch- diameter dial and tapered-end sensing element. Dial range shall be at least 0 to 220 deg F.
- E. Pressure Gage: Small, Bourdon-tube insertion type with 2- to 3-inch- diameter dial and probe. Dial range shall be at least 0 to 200 psig.
- F. Carrying Case: Metal or plastic, with formed instrument padding.

## 2.11 FLOWMETERS

- A. Turbine Flowmeters:
1. [Manufacturers:](#) Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. [Advantage Controls.](#)
    - b. [EMCO Flow Systems.](#)

- c. [ERDCO Engineering Corp.](#)
  - d. [Hoffer Flow Controls, Inc.](#)
  - e. [ONICON Incorporated.](#)
2. Description: Flowmeter with sensor and indicator. Construction shall meet all sections of AWWA standard C-708.
3. Flow Range: Sensor and indicator shall cover operating range of equipment or system served.
4. Sensor: Impeller turbine; for inserting into pipefitting or for installing in piping and measuring flow directly in gallons per minute.
  - a. Design: Device or pipe fitting with inline turbine and integral direct-reading scale for water.
  - b. Construction: Bronze or stainless-steel body, with plastic turbine or impeller.
  - c. Minimum Pressure Rating: 150 psig.
  - d. Minimum Temperature Rating: 40 deg F.
5. Indicator: Hand-held meter; either an integral part of sensor or a separate meter.
6. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1-1/2 percent.
7. Display: Shows rate of flow, with register to indicate total volume in gallons.
8. Operating Instructions: Include complete instructions with each flowmeter.

## 2.12 THERMAL-ENERGY METERS

### A. Impeller-Turbine, Thermal-Energy Meters:

1. [Manufacturers:](#) Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. [Hoffer Flow Controls, Inc.](#)
  - b. [ISTEC Corporation.](#)
  - c. [ONICON Incorporated.](#)
2. Description: System with strainer, flow sensor, temperature sensors, transmitter, indicator, and connecting wiring.
3. Flow Sensor: Impeller turbine with corrosion-resistant-metal body and transmitter; for installing in piping.
  - a. Design: Total thermal-energy measurement.
  - b. Minimum Pressure Rating: [**150 psig**].
  - c. Minimum Temperature Range: [**40 to 250 deg F**].
4. Temperature Sensors: Insertion-type transducer.
5. Indicator: Solid-state, integrating-type meter; for wall mounting.
  - a. Data Output: Six-digit electromechanical counter with readout in kilowatts per hour or British thermal units.
  - b. Battery Pack: Five-year lithium battery.

6. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent.
7. Display: Visually indicates total fluid volume in gallons and thermal-energy flow in kilowatts per hour or British thermal units.
8. Strainer: Full size of main line piping.
9. Operating Instructions: Include complete instructions with each thermal-energy meter system.

B. Ultrasonic, Thermal-Energy Meters:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. EMCO Flow Systems.
  - b. ONICON Incorporated.
  - c. SIEMENS Industry, Inc.; Energy Management Division.
  - d. Veris Industries.
2. Description: Meter with flow sensor, temperature sensors, transmitter, indicator, and connecting wiring.
3. Flow Sensor: Transit-time ultrasonic type with transmitter.
4. Temperature Sensors: Insertion-type or strap-on transducer.
5. Indicator: Solid-state, integrating-type meter.
  - a. Data Output: Six-digit electromechanical counter with readout in kilowatts per hour or British thermal units.
  - b. Battery Pack: Five-year lithium battery.
6. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent.
7. Display: Visually indicates total fluid volume in gallons and thermal-energy flow in kilowatts per hour or British thermal units.
8. Operating Instructions: Include complete instructions with each thermal-energy meter system.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install thermowells with socket extending one-third of pipe diameter and in vertical position in piping tees.
- B. Install thermowells of sizes required to match thermometer connectors. Include bushings if required to match sizes.
- C. Install thermowells with extension on insulated piping.
- D. Fill thermowells with heat-transfer medium.
- E. Install direct-mounted thermometers in thermowells and adjust vertical and tilted positions.

- F. Install remote-mounted thermometer bulbs in thermowells and install cases on panels; connect cases with tubing and support tubing to prevent kinks. Use minimum tubing length.
- G. Install duct-thermometer mounting brackets in walls of ducts. Attach to duct with screws.
- H. Install direct-mounted pressure gages in piping tees with pressure gage located on pipe at the most readable position.
- I. Install remote-mounted pressure gages on panel.
- J. Install valve and snubber in piping for each pressure gage for fluids (except steam).
- K. Install valve and syphon fitting in piping for each pressure gage for steam.
- L. Install test plugs in piping tees.
- M. Install flow indicators in piping systems in accessible positions for easy viewing.
- N. Assemble and install connections, tubing, and accessories between flow-measuring elements and flowmeters according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- O. Install flowmeter elements in accessible positions in piping systems.
- P. Install wafer-orifice flowmeter elements between pipe flanges.
- Q. Install differential-pressure-type flowmeter elements, with at least minimum straight lengths of pipe, upstream and downstream from element according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- R. Install permanent indicators on walls or brackets in accessible and readable positions.
- S. Install connection fittings in accessible locations for attachment to portable indicators.
- T. Mount thermal-energy meters on wall if accessible; if not, provide brackets to support meters.
- U. Install thermometers in the following locations:
  - 1. Inlet and outlet of each hydronic zone.
  - 2. Inlet and outlet of each hydronic boiler.
  - 3. Inlet and outlet of each hydronic coil in air-handling units.
  - 4. Two inlets and two outlets of each hydronic heat exchanger.
  - 5. Air side - Outside-, return-, supply-, and mixed-air ducts.
- V. Install pressure gages in the following locations:
  - 1. Inlet and discharge of each pressure-reducing valve station
  - 2. Inlet and outlet of strainers.
  - 3. Inlet and outlet of coils
  - 4. Suction and discharge side of each pump.

### 3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Install meters and gages adjacent to machines and equipment to allow service and maintenance of meters, gages, machines, and equipment.
- B. Connect flowmeter-system elements to meters.
- C. Connect flowmeter transmitters to meters.
- D. Connect thermal-energy meter transmitters to meters.

### 3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. After installation, calibrate meters according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Adjust faces of meters and gages to proper angle for best visibility.

### 3.4 THERMOMETER SCHEDULE

- A. Thermometers at inlet and outlet of each **hydronic zone** shall be one of the following:
  - 1. Sealed, bimetallic-actuated type.
  - 2. Direct or Remote-mounted, metal-case, vapor-actuated type.
  - 3. Compact or Industrial-style, liquid-in-glass type.
  - 4. Test plug with EPDM self-sealing rubber inserts.
  - 5. Industrial-style, liquid-in-glass type.
- B. Industrial type, liquid in glass type thermometers shall be installed at all the inlets and outlets of each of the following equipment;
  - 1. Hydronic pump
  - 2. Hydronic boiler
  - 3. Heat exchanger
  - 4. Air handling units
  - 5. Provide test with EPDM self-sealing rubber inserts
- C. Thermometers at inlet and outlet of each **hydronic coil in air-handling units or duct mounted** and built-up central systems shall be one of the following:
  - 1. Liquid-filled or Sealed, bimetallic-actuated type.
  - 2. Direct or Remote-mounted, metal-case, vapor-actuated type.
  - 3. Compact or Industrial-style, liquid-in-glass type.
  - 4. Test plug with EPDM self-sealing rubber inserts.
- D. Thermometers at inlet and outlet of each hydronic **heat-recovery unit** shall be one of the following:
  - 1. Liquid-filled or Sealed, bimetallic-actuated type.
  - 2. Direct or Remote-mounted, metal-case, vapor-actuated type.
  - 3. Compact or Industrial-style, liquid-in-glass type.
  - 4. Test plug with EPDM self-sealing rubber inserts.

- E. Thermometers at outside-, return-, supply-, and mixed-air ducts shall be one of the following:
  - 1. Liquid-filled or Sealed, bimetallic-actuated type.
  - 2. Direct or Remote-mounted, metal-case, vapor-actuated type.
  - 3. Compact or Industrial-style, liquid-in-glass type.
- F. Thermometer stems shall be of length to match thermowell insertion length.

### 3.5 THERMOMETER SCALE-RANGE SCHEDULE

- A. Scale Range for Heating, Hot-Water Piping: 0 to 250 deg F.
- B. Scale Range for Air Ducts: 0 to 150 deg F.

### 3.6 PRESSURE-GAGE SCHEDULE

- A. Pressure gages at all the inlet and discharge connections of each of the following equipment shall be liquid filled and sealed direct mounting, metal case.
  - 1. Pressure-reducing valve
  - 2. Hydronic pump
  - 3. Hydronic boiler
  - 4. Air handling and duct mounted units coils
  - 5. Provide test with EPDM self-sealing rubber inserts

### 3.7 PRESSURE-GAGE SCALE-RANGE SCHEDULE

- A. Scale Range for Heating, Hot-Water Piping: 0 to 160 psi.

### 3.8 FLOWMETER SCHEDULE

- A. How water to kitchen appliances RE plumbing plans.

END OF SECTION 230519

## SECTION 230529 - HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Metal pipe hangers and supports.
2. Trapeze pipe hangers.
3. Metal framing systems.
4. Thermal-hanger shield inserts.
5. Fastener systems.
6. Pipe stands.
7. Equipment supports.

- B. Related Sections:

1. Section 055000 "Metal Fabrications" for structural-steel shapes and plates for trapeze hangers for pipe and equipment supports.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. MSS: Manufacturers Standardization Society of The Valve and Fittings Industry Inc.

#### 1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Design trapeze pipe hangers and equipment supports, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
- B. Structural Performance: Hangers and supports for HVAC piping and equipment shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated according to ASCE/SEI 7.
  1. Design supports for multiple pipes, including pipe stands, capable of supporting combined weight of supported systems, system contents, and test water.
  2. Design equipment supports capable of supporting combined operating weight of supported equipment and connected systems and components.
  3. Design seismic-restraint hangers and supports for piping and equipment.

## 1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Sustainable Design Submittals:
  - 1. [Environmental Product Declaration](#): For each product.
  - 2. Health Product Declaration: For each product.
  - 3. Sourcing of Raw Materials: Corporate sustainability report for each manufacturer.
- C. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details and include calculations for the following; include Product Data for components:
  - 1. Trapeze pipe hangers.
  - 2. Metal framing systems.
  - 3. Pipe stands.
  - 4. Equipment supports.
- D. Delegated-Design Submittal: For trapeze hangers indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
  - 1. Detail fabrication and assembly of trapeze hangers.
  - 2. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for designing trapeze hangers.

## 1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Welding certificates.

## 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Structural Steel Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
- B. Pipe Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 METAL PIPE HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Carbon-Steel Pipe Hangers and Supports:
  - 1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, factory-fabricated components.
  - 2. Galvanized Metallic Coatings: Pregalvanized or hot dipped.
  - 3. Nonmetallic Coatings: Plastic coating, jacket, or liner.
  - 4. Padded Hangers: Hanger with fiberglass or other pipe insulation pad or cushion to support bearing surface of piping.
  - 5. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of carbon steel.

B. Stainless-Steel Pipe Hangers and Supports:

1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, factory-fabricated components.
2. Padded Hangers: Hanger with fiberglass or other pipe insulation pad or cushion to support bearing surface of piping.
3. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of stainless steel.

C. Copper Pipe Hangers:

1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, copper-coated-steel, factory-fabricated components.
2. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of copper-coated steel or stainless steel.

## 2.2 TRAPEZE PIPE HANGERS

- A. Description: MSS SP-69, Type 59, shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly made from structural carbon-steel shapes with MSS SP-58 carbon-steel hanger rods, nuts, saddles, and U-bolts.

## 2.3 METAL FRAMING SYSTEMS

A. MFMA Manufacturer Metal Framing Systems:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. B-line, an Eaton business.
  - b. Flex-Strut Inc.
  - c. Thomas & Betts Corporation; A Member of the ABB Group.
  - d. Unistrut; Part of Atkore International.
  - e. Wesanco, Inc.
2. Description: Shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly for supporting multiple parallel pipes.
3. Standard: MFMA-4.
4. Channels: Continuous slotted steel channel with intumed lips.
5. Channel Nuts: Formed or stamped steel nuts or other devices designed to fit into channel slot and, when tightened, prevent slipping along channel.
6. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of carbon steel or stainless steel.
7. Metallic Coating: Electroplated zinc, Hot-dipped galvanized, Mill galvanized, In-line, hot galvanized, or Mechanically-deposited zinc.
8. Paint Coating: Epoxy or Alkyd.
9. Plastic Coating: PVC or Polyurethane.
10. Combination Coating: .

B. Non-MFMA Manufacturer Metal Framing Systems:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Anvil International.
  - b. ERICO International Corporation.
  - c. PHD Manufacturing, Inc.
2. Description: Shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly made of steel channels, accessories, fittings, and other components for supporting multiple parallel pipes.
3. Standard: Comply with MFMA-4.
4. Channels: Continuous slotted steel channel with inturned lips.
5. Channel Nuts: Formed or stamped steel nuts or other devices designed to fit into channel slot and, when tightened, prevent slipping along channel.
6. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of carbon steel or stainless steel.
7. Coating: Zinc, Paint or PVC.

2.4 THERMAL-HANGER SHIELD INSERTS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Clement Support Services.
  2. ERICO International Corporation.
  3. National Pipe Hanger Corporation.
  4. Pipe Shields Inc.
  5. Piping Technology & Products, Inc.
  6. Rilco Manufacturing Co., Inc.
- B. Insulation-Insert Material for Hot and cold Piping: Water-repellent treated, ASTM C 533, Type I calcium silicate with 100-psi minimum compressive strength.
- C. For Trapeze or Clamped Systems: Insert and shield shall cover entire circumference of pipe.
- D. For Clevis or Band Hangers: Insert and shield shall cover lower 180 degrees of pipe.
- E. Insert Length: Extend 2 inches beyond sheet metal shield for piping operating below ambient air temperature.

2.5 FASTENER SYSTEMS

- A. Powder-Actuated Fasteners: Threaded-steel stud, for use in hardened portland cement concrete with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

- B. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: Insert-wedge-type, stainless- steel anchors, for use in hardened portland cement concrete; with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

## 2.6 PIPE STANDS

- A. General Requirements for Pipe Stands: Shop- or field-fabricated assemblies made of manufactured corrosion-resistant components to support roof-mounted piping.
- B. Compact Pipe Stand: One-piece plastic unit with integral-rod roller, pipe clamps, or V-shaped cradle to support pipe, for roof installation without membrane penetration.
- C. Low-Type, Single-Pipe Stand: One-piece stainless-steel base unit with plastic roller, for roof installation without membrane penetration.
- D. High-Type, Single-Pipe Stand:
  - 1. Description: Assembly of base, vertical and horizontal members, and pipe support, for roof installation without membrane penetration.
  - 2. Base: Stainless steel.
  - 3. Vertical Members: Two or more cadmium-plated-steel or stainless-steel, continuous-thread rods.
  - 4. Horizontal Member: Cadmium-plated-steel or stainless-steel rod with plastic or stainless-steel, roller-type pipe support.
- E. High-Type, Multiple-Pipe Stand:
  - 1. Description: Assembly of bases, vertical and horizontal members, and pipe supports, for roof installation without membrane penetration.
  - 2. Bases: One or more; plastic.
  - 3. Vertical Members: Two or more protective-coated-steel channels.
  - 4. Horizontal Member: Protective-coated-steel channel.
  - 5. Pipe Supports: Galvanized-steel, clevis-type pipe hangers.
- F. Curb-Mounted-Type Pipe Stands: Shop- or field-fabricated pipe supports made from structural-steel shapes, continuous-thread rods, and rollers, for mounting on permanent stationary roof curb.

## 2.7 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

- A. Description: Welded, shop- or field-fabricated equipment support made from structural carbon-steel shapes.

## 2.8 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Structural Steel: ASTM A 36/A 36M, carbon-steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.

- B. Grout: ASTM C 1107, factory-mixed and -packaged, dry, hydraulic-cement, nonshrink and nonmetallic grout; suitable for interior and exterior applications.
1. Properties: Nonstaining, noncorrosive, and nongaseous.
  2. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.
- C. Flashing;  
Metal Flashing: 26gage galvanized steel.
1. Metal Counter-flashing: 22 gage thick galvanized steel.
  2. Flexible Flashing: 47 mil thick sheet butyl or other material compatible with roofing. Verify with roofing manufacturer.
  3. Caps: Steel, 22-gage minimum; 16 gage at fire resistant elements.
- D. Sleeves:
1. Ductwork Sleeve 18 gauge Installation and Closure for Fire Rated Walls and Floors: Fire damper assembly with continuous angles on all sides as per NFPA-90A requirements.
  2. Provide and install sleeves for all penetrations in accordance with Division 1.
- E. Escutcheons;
1. Chrome plated cast brass escutcheons with set screws on all exposed piping at wall penetrations in finished spaces.
- F. Hanger Rods:
1. Hanger Rods: Hot rolled steel threaded both ends, threaded one end, or continuous threaded. In accordance with the following schedule.

HANGER ROD SIZE SCHEDULE	
Pipe Size (in)	Min Rod Dia (in)
¾" to 2"	3/8"
½" to 3-1/2"	½"
4" to 5"	5/8"
6"	¾"
8" to 12"	7/8"
14"	1"
16" to 18"	1-1/8"
20"	1-1/4"
24"	1-1/2"
30"	1-7/8"

2. Hanger spacing shall be in accordance with the following schedule for maximum allowable distance. Provide hanger all changes in direction.

PIPE SUPPORT SPACING SCHEDULE		
Pipe Material/ Size (in)	Maximum Horizontal Spacing (ft)	Maximum Vertical Spacing (ft)

Steel		
Up to 1 ¼"	8	15
1 ½" to 2 ½"	10	15
3" and over	12	15
Copper Pipe	8	10
Copper Tubing		
Up to 1 ¼"	6	10
1 ½" and over	8	10
PVC / HDPE		
Up to 1"	3	10
1 ¼" and over	4	10

3. Fiberglass piping supports spacing shall be in accordance with the manufactures guidelines.

## 2.9 VIBRATION ISOLATION HANGERS

- A. Vibration isolation pipe hangers; pre-compressed and locked at the rated deflection by means of a resilient up-stop to keep the piping or equipment at a fixed elevation during installation. The hangers shall be designed with a release mechanism to free the spring after the installation is complete and the hanger is subjected to its full load. Deflection shall be clearly indicated by means of a scale. Submittals shall include a drawing of the hanger showing the 30° capability. Hangers shall be type PC30N as manufactured by Mason Industries, Inc

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Metal Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Install hangers, supports, clamps, and attachments as required to properly support piping from the building structure.
- B. Metal Trapeze Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of horizontal piping, and support together on field-fabricated trapeze pipe hangers.
1. Pipes of Various Sizes: Support together and space trapezes for smallest pipe size or install intermediate supports for smaller diameter pipes as specified for individual pipe hangers.
  2. Field fabricate from ASTM A 36/A 36M, carbon-steel shapes selected for loads being supported. Weld steel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
- C. Metal Framing System Installation: Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of piping, and support together on field-assembled metal framing systems.
- D. Thermal-Hanger Shield Installation: Install in pipe hanger or shield for insulated piping.

## E. Fastener System Installation:

1. Install powder-actuated fasteners for use in lightweight concrete or concrete slabs less than 4 inches thick in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Use operators that are licensed by powder-actuated tool manufacturer. Install fasteners according to powder-actuated tool manufacturer's operating manual.
2. Install mechanical-expansion anchors in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Install fasteners according to manufacturer's written instructions.

## F. Pipe Stand Installation:

1. Pipe Stand Types except Curb-Mounted Type: Assemble components and mount on smooth roof surface. Do not penetrate roof membrane.
2. Curb-Mounted-Type Pipe Stands: Assemble components or fabricate pipe stand and mount on permanent, stationary roof curb. See Section 077200 "Roof Accessories" for curbs.

## G. Install hangers and supports complete with necessary attachments, inserts, bolts, rods, nuts, washers, and other accessories.

## H. Equipment Support Installation: Fabricate from welded-structural-steel shapes.

## I. Install hangers and supports to allow controlled thermal and seismic movement of piping systems, to permit freedom of movement between pipe anchors, and to facilitate action of expansion joints, expansion loops, expansion bends, and similar units.

## J. Install lateral bracing with pipe hangers and supports to prevent swaying.

## K. Install building attachments within concrete slabs or attach to structural steel. Install additional attachments at concentrated loads, including valves, flanges, and strainers, NPS 2-1/2 and larger and at changes in direction of piping. Install concrete inserts before concrete is placed; fasten inserts to forms and install reinforcing bars through openings at top of inserts.

## L. Load Distribution: Install hangers and supports so that piping live and dead loads and stresses from movement will not be transmitted to connected equipment.

## M. Pipe Slopes: Install hangers and supports to provide indicated pipe slopes and to not exceed maximum pipe deflections allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.

## N. Insulated Piping:

1. Attach clamps and spacers to piping.
  - a. Piping Operating above Ambient Air Temperature: Clamp may project through insulation.
  - b. Piping Operating below Ambient Air Temperature: Use thermal-hanger shield insert with clamp sized to match OD of insert.
  - c. Do not exceed pipe stress limits allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.

2. Install MSS SP-58, Type 39, protection saddles on all piping with roller hangers installed outside of insulation. Fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
  - a. Option: Thermal-hanger shield inserts may be used. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.
3. Install MSS SP-58, Type 40, protective shields on cold piping with vapor barrier not on roller hangers. Shields shall span an arc of 180 degrees.
  - a. Option: Thermal-hanger shield inserts may be used. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.
4. Shield Dimensions for Pipe: Not less than the following:
  - a. NPS 1/4 to NPS 3-1/2: 12 inches long and 0.048 inch thick.
  - b. NPS 4: 12 inches long and 0.06 inch thick.
  - c. NPS 5 and NPS 6: 18 inches long and 0.06 inch thick.
  - d. NPS 8 to NPS 14: 24 inches long and 0.075 inch thick.
  - e. NPS 16 to NPS 24: 24 inches long and 0.105 inch thick.
5. Pipes NPS 8 and Larger: Include wood or reinforced calcium-silicate-insulation inserts of length at least as long as protective shield.
6. Thermal-Hanger Shields: Install with insulation same thickness as piping insulation.

### 3.2 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

- A. Fabricate structural-steel stands to suspend equipment from structure overhead or to support equipment above floor.
- B. Grouting: Place grout under supports for equipment and make bearing surface smooth.
- C. Provide lateral bracing, to prevent swaying, for equipment supports.

### 3.3 METAL FABRICATIONS

- A. Cut, drill, and fit miscellaneous metal fabrications for trapeze pipe hangers and equipment supports.
- B. Fit exposed connections together to form hairline joints. Field weld connections that cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M procedures for shielded, metal arc welding; appearance and quality of welds; and methods used in correcting welding work; and with the following:
  1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
  2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
  3. Remove welding flux immediately.

4. Finish welds at exposed connections so no roughness shows after finishing and so contours of welded surfaces match adjacent contours.

### 3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Hanger Adjustments: Adjust hangers to distribute loads equally on attachments and to achieve indicated slope of pipe.
- B. Trim excess length of continuous-thread hanger and support rods to 1-1/2 inches.

### 3.5 PAINTING

- A. Touchup: Clean field welds and abraded areas of shop paint. Paint exposed areas immediately after erecting hangers and supports. Use same materials as used for shop painting. Comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up field-painted surfaces.
  1. Apply paint by brush or spray to provide a minimum dry film thickness of 2.0 mils.
- B. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and apply cold galvanizing-repair paint to comply with ASTM A 780. ZRC cold galvanizing compound

### 3.6 HANGER AND SUPPORT SCHEDULE

- A. Specific hanger and support requirements are in Sections specifying piping systems and equipment.
- B. Comply with MSS SP-69 for pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- C. Use hangers and supports with galvanized metallic coatings for piping and equipment that will not have field-applied finish.
- D. Use nonmetallic coatings on attachments for electrolytic protection where attachments are in direct contact with copper tubing.
- E. Use carbon-steel pipe hangers and supports or metal trapeze pipe hangers and metal framing systems and attachments for general service applications.
- F. Use stainless-steel pipe hangers and stainless-steel attachments for hostile environment applications.
- G. Use copper-plated pipe hangers and copper or stainless-steel attachments for copper piping and tubing.
- H. Use padded hangers for piping that is subject to scratching.
- I. Use thermal-hanger shield inserts for insulated piping and tubing.

- J. Horizontal-Piping Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Adjustable, Steel Clevis Hangers (MSS Type 1): For suspension of noninsulated or insulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 30.
  2. Yoke-Type Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 2): For suspension of up to 1050 deg F, pipes NPS 4 to NPS 24, requiring up to 4 inches of insulation.
  3. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel, Double-Bolt Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 3): For suspension of pipes NPS 3/4 to NPS 36, requiring clamp flexibility and up to 4 inches of insulation.
  4. Pipe Hangers (MSS Type 5): For suspension of pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 4, to allow off-center closure for hanger installation before pipe erection.
  5. Adjustable, Steel Band Hangers (MSS Type 7): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8.
  6. Adjustable, Swivel-Ring Band Hangers (MSS Type 10): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8.
  7. Extension Hinged or Two-Bolt Split Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 12): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 3/8 to NPS 3.
  8. Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 36): For support of pipes NPS 4 to NPS 36, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange or carbon-steel plate.
  9. Pipe Stanchion Saddles (MSS Type 37): For support of pipes NPS 4 to NPS 36, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange or carbon-steel plate, and with U-bolt to retain pipe.
  10. Adjustable Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 38): For stanchion-type support for pipes NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 36 if vertical adjustment is required, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange.
  11. Single-Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 41): For suspension of pipes NPS 1 to NPS 30, from two rods if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur.
  12. Adjustable Roller Hangers (MSS Type 43): For suspension of pipes NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 24, from single rod if horizontal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur.
  13. Complete Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 44): For support of pipes NPS 2 to NPS 42 if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur but vertical adjustment is not necessary.
  14. Pipe Roll and Plate Units (MSS Type 45): For support of pipes NPS 2 to NPS 24 if small horizontal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur and vertical adjustment is not necessary.
  15. Adjustable Pipe Roll and Base Units (MSS Type 46): For support of pipes NPS 2 to NPS 30 if vertical and lateral adjustment during installation might be required in addition to expansion and contraction.
- K. Vertical-Piping Clamps: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Extension Pipe or Riser Clamps (MSS Type 8): For support of pipe risers NPS 3/4 to NPS 24.
  2. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel Riser Clamps (MSS Type 42): For support of pipe risers NPS 3/4 to NPS 24 if longer ends are required for riser clamps.
- L. Hanger-Rod Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:

1. Steel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 13): For adjustment up to 6 inches for heavy loads.
  2. Steel Clevises (MSS Type 14): For 120 to 450 deg F piping installations.
  3. Swivel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 15): For use with MSS Type 11, split pipe rings.
  4. Malleable-Iron Sockets (MSS Type 16): For attaching hanger rods to various types of building attachments.
  5. Steel Weldless Eye Nuts (MSS Type 17): For 120 to 450 deg F piping installations.
- M. Building Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel or Malleable Concrete Inserts (MSS Type 18): For upper attachment to suspend pipe hangers from concrete ceiling.
  2. Top-Beam C-Clamps (MSS Type 19): For use under roof installations with bar-joist construction, to attach to top flange of structural shape.
  3. Side-Beam or Channel Clamps (MSS Type 20): For attaching to bottom flange of beams, channels, or angles.
  4. Center-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 21): For attaching to center of bottom flange of beams.
  5. Welded Beam Attachments (MSS Type 22): For attaching to bottom of beams if loads are considerable and rod sizes are large.
  6. C-Clamps (MSS Type 23): For structural shapes.
  7. Top-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 25): For top of beams if hanger rod is required tangent to flange edge.
  8. Steel-Beam Clamps with Eye Nuts (MSS Type 28): For attaching to bottom of steel I-beams for heavy loads.
  9. Linked-Steel Clamps with Eye Nuts (MSS Type 29): For attaching to bottom of steel I-beams for heavy loads, with link extensions.
  10. Malleable-Beam Clamps with Extension Pieces (MSS Type 30): For attaching to structural steel.
  11. Welded-Steel Brackets: For support of pipes from below or for suspending from above by using clip and rod. Use one of the following for indicated loads:
    - a. Light (MSS Type 31): 750 lb.
    - b. Medium (MSS Type 32): 1500 lb.
    - c. Heavy (MSS Type 33): 3000 lb.
  12. Side-Beam Brackets (MSS Type 34): For sides of steel or wooden beams.
  13. Plate Lugs (MSS Type 57): For attaching to steel beams if flexibility at beam is required.
- N. Saddles and Shields: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel-Pipe-Covering Protection Saddles (MSS Type 39): To fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
  2. Protection Shields (MSS Type 40): Of length recommended in writing by manufacturer to prevent crushing insulation.
  3. Thermal-Hanger Shield Inserts: For supporting insulated pipe.
- O. Spring Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Restraint-Control Devices (MSS Type 47): Where indicated to control piping movement.

2. Spring Cushions (MSS Type 48): For light loads if vertical movement does not exceed 1-1/4 inches.
  3. Spring-Cushion Roll Hangers (MSS Type 49): For equipping Type 41, roll hanger with springs.
  4. Spring Sway Braces (MSS Type 50): To retard sway, shock, vibration, or thermal expansion in piping systems.
  5. Variable-Spring Hangers (MSS Type 51): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to allow expansion and contraction of piping system from hanger.
  6. Variable-Spring Base Supports (MSS Type 52): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to allow expansion and contraction of piping system from base support.
  7. Variable-Spring Trapeze Hangers (MSS Type 53): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to allow expansion and contraction of piping system from trapeze support.
  8. Constant Supports: For critical piping stress and if necessary to avoid transfer of stress from one support to another support, critical terminal, or connected equipment. Include auxiliary stops for erection, hydrostatic test, and load-adjustment capability. These supports include the following types:
    - a. Horizontal (MSS Type 54): Mounted horizontally.
    - b. Vertical (MSS Type 55): Mounted vertically.
    - c. Trapeze (MSS Type 56): Two vertical-type supports and one trapeze member.
  9. [Install vibration isolation hangers or supports on all piping connected to motor driven equipment for a distance of 20' or the first two hangers.](#)
- P. Comply with MSS SP-69 for trapeze pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- Q. Comply with MFMA-103 for metal framing system selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- R. Use powder-actuated fasteners or mechanical-expansion anchors instead of building attachments where required in concrete construction.

### 3.7 MISCELLANEOUS:

- A. Equipment bases and supports.
1. Provide housekeeping pads of concrete, minimum 4 inches thick and extending 6 inches beyond supported equipment. Changers edges all four side. Provide dowels into concrete floor for equipment that is seismically braced.
  2. Provide templates, anchor bolts, and accessories for mounting and anchoring equipment. Provide for all equipment, pumps, air handling units, etc.
  3. Construct supports of steel members. Brace and fasten with flanges bolted to structure. Provide rigid anchors for pipes after vibration isolation components are installed.
- B. Flashing;
1. Provide flexible flashing and metal counter-flashing where piping and ductwork penetrate weather or waterproofed walls, floors, and roofs.

2. Flash piping projecting above finished roof surface with prefabricated steel reinforced boot and counter flashing sleeve.
- C. Sleeves;
1. Sleeves are required for all piping passing through walls and/or slabs. Sleeve diameter to be large enough to accommodate insulated piping.
  2. Sleeves through interior non-fire rated walls are to have annular space between pipe and sleeve filled with materials specified in Division 1.
  3. Sleeves thru fire rated walls to have annular space filled with fire stopping wrapping strips and expanding caulking applied with a caulking gun for a minimum depth of 3" or in another manner suitable for the application as recommended by the manufacturer. See Division 1.
- D. Escutcheons:
1. Provide escutcheons on all wall pipe penetrations that are visible outside MER spaces. All escutcheons shall be chrome plated.

END OF SECTION 230529

## SECTION 23 05 53 IDENTIFICATION FOR HVAC PIPING EQUIPMENT

## PART 1 GENERAL

## 1.1 WORK INCLUDED

- A. Identification of mechanical products installed under Division 23.

## 1.2 REFERENCES

- A. ASME A13.1 – Scheme for the Identification of Piping Systems

## 1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submittals as per contract requirements.
- B. See Division 1 list of wording, symbols, letter size, and color coding for mechanical identification.
- C. Submit valve chart and schedule, including valve tag number, location, function, and valve manufacturer's name and model number.
- D. Manufacturer's Instructions: Indicate installation instructions, special procedures, and installation.
- E. Project Record Documents: Record actual locations of tagged valves; include valve tag numbers.
- F. Valve Tag chart.

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

## 2.1 NAMEPLATES, TAGS, MARKERS, ETC

- A. Manufacturer: W.H. Brady Co., Signmark Div
- B. Acceptable manufacturers offering equivalent products
  - 1. Atlantic Engraving Company.
  - 2. Seton Name Plate Co.
  - 3. MSI Services
  - 4. Substitutions as per Contract Requirements.
- C. Description: Nameplates should be as specified in Division 1.

## PART 3 EXECUTION

## 3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Degrease and clean surfaces to receive adhesive for identification materials
- B. Prepare surfaces in accordance with contract requirements.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install tags, markers, etc. in conformance with Division 1.
- B. Unless otherwise specified, color shall conform with ANSI/ASME A13.1
- C. Install identifying devices after completion of coverings and painting.
- D. Install plastic nameplates with corrosive-resistant mechanical fasteners, or adhesive.
- E. Install labels with sufficient adhesive to ensure permanent adhesion and seal with clear lacquer. For unfinished cloth covering, apply paint primer before applying labels.
- F. Install tags using corrosion resistant chain. Number tags consecutively by location.
- G. Apply stencil painting in accordance with contract requirements.
- H. Identify all equipment, including pumps, air handlers, air cooled condensers, boilers, chillers, pumps, packaged AC units, and hot water heater with nameplates. Small devices, such as in-line pumps, may be identified with metal tags. Identify service of all air handling units, packaged roof top units, ac units, and split systems. I.E. Ground floor offices. **A plastic lamacoid placard shall be fastened to each unit with a full list of all of the rooms served by that unit.**
- I. Identify control panels and major control components outside panels with nameplates.
- J. Identify valves in main and branch piping with brass tags. Main shutoff valves for boiler shall be furnished with special wording as required by ASME IV HG 710.5 "Supply or Return Valve No. X - Do Not Close Without Also Closing Supply or Return Valve No. Y". Tags shall be provided for all new HVAC and related systems valves. Including; heating water, CW make-up. This shall apply to new valves and on re-piped existing equipment such as the fuel oil system.
- K. Tag automatic controls, instruments, and relays. Key to control schematic.
- L. Identify piping, concealed or exposed, with markers. Use tags on piping 3/4 inch diameter and smaller. Identify service, flow direction, and pressure. Install in clear view and align with axis of piping. Locate identification not to exceed 20 feet on straight runs including risers and drops, adjacent to each valve and tee, at each side of penetration of structure or enclosure, and at each obstruction. Labeling shall be in conformance with OSHA and ANSI A13.1.
- M. Identify all ductwork every 20' with flow arrows and unit or air handler served as well as service, such as SUPPLY AIR, RETURN AIR, EXHAUST AIR. Etc

- N. Identify all Smoke Dampers and Fire Dampers. All dampers shall be sequentially numbered by floor. For example fire damper - FD-1-1 (Fire damper #1, floor 1) Tag shall be 1" high red letters located on damper. Provide red dot stencil on ceiling below damper.
- O. Provide permanent labels for all controls and limits which state function of each control and control set-points.

### 3.3 SCHEDULE

- A. Provide valve chart and schedule minimum of 8.5" x 11" in aluminum frame with clear laminate face. Install in the boiler room or at location as directed by the facilities. Indicate Valve #, size, Service and N.O. or N.C.

VALVE TAG SCHEDULE			
No.	size	Service	N.O./N.C.

The chart shall contain all new HVAC and related systems valves, new. Including; heating water, and CW make up, and drain.

END OF SECTION

## SECTION 230593 - TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING FOR HVAC

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Balancing Air Systems:
  - a. Constant-volume air systems.
  - b. Variable-air-volume systems.
- 2. Balancing Hydronic Piping Systems:
  - a. Variable-flow hydronic systems.
  - b. Primary-secondary hydronic systems.
- 3. Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing Equipment:
  - a. Motors.
  - b. Condensing units.
  - c. Boilers.
  - d. Air handling units
  - e. Energy Recovery Ventilator
- 4. Testing, adjusting, and balancing existing systems and equipment.
- 5. Duct leakage tests.
- 6. Control system verification.

## 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. AABC: Associated Air Balance Council.
- B. BAS: Building automation systems.
- C. NEBB: National Environmental Balancing Bureau.
- D. TAB: Testing, adjusting, and balancing.
- E. TABB: Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing Bureau.
- F. TAB Specialist: An independent entity meeting qualifications to perform TAB work.

- G. TDH: Total dynamic head.

#### 1.4 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. TAB Conference: If requested by the engineer, conduct a TAB conference at Project site after approval of the TAB strategies and procedures plan to develop a mutual understanding of the details. Provide a minimum of 14 days' advance notice of scheduled meeting time and location.
1. Minimum Agenda Items:
    - a. The Contract Documents examination report.
    - b. The TAB plan.
    - c. Needs for coordination and cooperation of trades and subcontractors.
    - d. Proposed procedures for documentation and communication flow.

#### 1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Sustainable Design Submittals:
1. [Air-Balance Report](#): Documentation indicating that Work complies with ASHRAE 62.1, Section 7.2.2 - "Air Balancing."
  2. TAB Report: Documentation indicating that Work complies with ASHRAE/IES 90.1, Section 6.7.2.3 - "System Balancing."

#### 1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: Within 30 days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit documentation that the TAB specialist and this Project's TAB team members meet the qualifications specified in "Quality Assurance" Article.
- B. Contract Documents Examination Report: Within 30 days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit the Contract Documents review report as specified in Part 3.
- C. Certified TAB reports.
- D. Sample report forms.
- E. Instrument calibration reports, to include the following:
1. Instrument type and make.
  2. Serial number.
  3. Application.
  4. Dates of use.
  5. Dates of calibration.

#### 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. TAB Specialists Qualifications: Certified by AABC NEBB or TABB.

1. TAB Field Supervisor: Employee of the TAB specialist and certified by AABC or NEBB or TABB.
  2. TAB Technician: Employee of the TAB specialist and certified by AABC or NEBB as a TAB technician.
- B. Instrumentation Type, Quantity, Accuracy, and Calibration: Comply with requirements in ASHRAE 111, Section 4, "Instrumentation."

## 1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Full Owner Occupancy: Owner will occupy the site and existing building during entire TAB period. Cooperate with Owner during TAB operations to minimize conflicts with Owner's operations.
- B. Partial Owner Occupancy: Owner may occupy completed areas of building before Substantial Completion. Cooperate with Owner during TAB operations to minimize conflicts with Owner's operations.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Applicable)

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine the Contract Documents to become familiar with Project requirements and to discover conditions in systems designs that may preclude proper TAB of systems and equipment.
- B. Examine installed systems for balancing devices, such as test ports, gage cocks, thermometer wells, flow-control devices, balancing valves and fittings, and manual volume dampers. Verify that locations of these balancing devices are applicable for intended purpose and are accessible.
- C. Examine the approved submittals for HVAC systems and equipment.
- D. Examine design data including HVAC system descriptions, statements of design assumptions for environmental conditions and systems output, and statements of philosophies and assumptions about HVAC system and equipment controls.
- E. Examine ceiling plenums and underfloor air plenums used for supply, return, or relief air to verify that they are properly separated from adjacent areas. Verify that penetrations in plenum walls are sealed and fire-stopped if required.
- F. Examine equipment performance data including fan and pump curves.
1. Relate performance data to Project conditions and requirements, including system effects that can create undesired or unpredicted conditions that cause reduced capacities in all or part of a system.
  2. Calculate system-effect factors to reduce performance ratings of HVAC equipment when installed under conditions different from the conditions used to rate equipment

performance. To calculate system effects for air systems, use tables and charts found in AMCA 201, "Fans and Systems," or in SMACNA's "HVAC Systems - Duct Design." Compare results with the design data and installed conditions.

- G. Examine system and equipment installations and verify that field quality-control testing, cleaning, and adjusting specified in individual Sections have been performed.
- H. Examine test reports specified in individual system and equipment Sections.
- I. Examine HVAC equipment and verify that bearings are greased, belts are aligned and tight, filters are clean, and equipment with functioning controls is ready for operation.
- J. Examine terminal units, such as variable-air-volume boxes, and verify that they are accessible and their controls are connected and functioning.
- K. Examine strainers. Verify that startup screens have been replaced by permanent screens with indicated perforations.
- L. Examine control valves for proper installation for their intended function of throttling, diverting, or mixing fluid flows.
- M. Examine heat-transfer coils for correct piping connections and for clean and straight fins.
- N. Examine system pumps to ensure absence of entrained air in the suction piping.
- O. Examine operating safety interlocks and controls on HVAC equipment.
- P. Report deficiencies discovered before and during performance of TAB procedures. Observe and record system reactions to changes in conditions. Record default set points if different from indicated values.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Prepare a TAB plan that includes the following:
  - 1. Equipment and systems to be tested.
  - 2. Strategies and step-by-step procedures for balancing the systems.
  - 3. Instrumentation to be used.
  - 4. Sample forms with specific identification for all equipment.
- B. Perform system-readiness checks of HVAC systems and equipment to verify system readiness for TAB work. Include, at a minimum, the following:
  - 1. Airside:
    - a. Verify that leakage and pressure tests on air distribution systems have been satisfactorily completed.
    - b. Duct systems are complete with terminals installed.
    - c. Volume, smoke, and fire dampers are open and functional.
    - d. Clean filters are installed.
    - e. Fans are operating, free of vibration, and rotating in correct direction.

- f. Variable-frequency controllers' startup is complete and safeties are verified.
- g. Automatic temperature-control systems are operational.
- h. Ceilings are installed.
- i. Windows and doors are installed.
- j. Suitable access to balancing devices and equipment is provided.

2. Hydronics:

- a. Verify leakage and pressure tests on water distribution systems have been satisfactorily completed.
- b. Piping is complete with terminals installed.
- c. Water treatment is complete.
- d. Systems are flushed, filled, and air purged.
- e. Strainers are pulled and cleaned.
- f. Control valves are functioning per the sequence of operation.
- g. Shutoff and balance valves have been verified to be 100 percent open.
- h. Pumps are started and proper rotation is verified.
- i. Pump gage connections are installed directly at pump inlet and outlet flanges or in discharge and suction pipe prior to valves or strainers.
- j. Variable-frequency controllers' startup is complete and safeties are verified.
- k. Suitable access to balancing devices and equipment is provided.

### 3.3 GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR TESTING AND BALANCING

- A. Perform testing and balancing procedures on each system according to the procedures contained in AABC's "National Standards for Total System Balance" ASHRAE 111 NEBB's "Procedural Standards for Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing of Environmental Systems" SMACNA's "HVAC Systems - Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing" and in this Section.
- B. Cut insulation, ducts, pipes, and equipment cabinets for installation of test probes to the minimum extent necessary for TAB procedures.
  - 1. After testing and balancing, install test ports and duct access doors that comply with requirements in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."
  - 2. Install and join new insulation that matches removed materials. Restore insulation, coverings, vapor barrier, and finish according to Section 230713 "Duct Insulation," Section 230716 "HVAC Equipment Insulation," and Section 230719 "HVAC Piping Insulation."
- C. Mark equipment and balancing devices, including damper-control positions, valve position indicators, fan-speed-control levers, and similar controls and devices, with paint or other suitable, permanent identification material to show final settings.
- D. Take and report testing and balancing measurements in inch-pound (IP) units.

### 3.4 GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR BALANCING AIR ALL SYSTEMS

- A. Prepare test reports for both fans and outlets. Obtain manufacturer's outlet factors and recommended testing procedures. Cross-check the summation of required outlet volumes with required fan volumes.

- B. Prepare schematic diagrams of systems' "as-built" duct layouts.
- C. For variable-air-volume systems, develop a plan to simulate diversity.
- D. Determine the best locations in main and branch ducts for accurate duct-airflow measurements.
- E. Check airflow patterns from the outdoor-air louvers and dampers and the return- and exhaust-air dampers through the supply-fan discharge and mixing dampers.
- F. Locate start-stop and disconnect switches, electrical interlocks, and motor starters.
- G. Verify that motor starters are equipped with properly sized thermal protection.
- H. Check dampers for proper position to achieve desired airflow path.
- I. Check for airflow blockages.
- J. Check condensate drains for proper connections and functioning.
- K. Check for proper sealing of air-handling-unit components.
- L. Verify that air duct system is sealed as specified in Section 233113 "Metal Ducts."
- M. Code requirements;

Each supply air outlet and zone terminal device shall be equipped with means for air balancing in accordance with the requirements of Chapter 6 of the International Mechanical Code. Discharge dampers used for air-system balancing are prohibited on constant-volume fans and variable volume fans with motors 10 hp and larger. Air systems shall be balanced in a manner to first minimize throttling losses then, for fans with system power greater than 1 hp, fan speed shall be adjusted to meet design flow conditions.

Therefore, all fans greater than 10 hp shall be provided with variable frequency drives for speed control.

### 3.5 PROCEDURES FOR CONSTANT-VOLUME AIR SYSTEMS

- A. Adjust fans to deliver total indicated airflows within the maximum allowable fan speed listed by fan manufacturer.
  - 1. Measure total airflow.
    - a. Set outside-air, return-air, and relief-air dampers for proper position that simulates minimum outdoor-air conditions.
    - b. Where duct conditions allow, measure airflow by Pitot-tube traverse. If necessary, perform multiple Pitot-tube traverses to obtain total airflow.
    - c. Where duct conditions are not suitable for Pitot-tube traverse measurements, a coil traverse may be acceptable.
    - d. If a reliable Pitot-tube traverse or coil traverse is not possible, measure airflow at terminals and calculate the total airflow.

2. Measure fan static pressures as follows:
    - a. Measure static pressure directly at the fan outlet or through the flexible connection.
    - b. Measure static pressure directly at the fan inlet or through the flexible connection.
    - c. Measure static pressure across each component that makes up the air-handling system.
    - d. Report artificial loading of filters at the time static pressures are measured.
  3. Review Record Documents to determine variations in design static pressures versus actual static pressures. Calculate actual system-effect factors. Recommend adjustments to accommodate actual conditions.
  4. Obtain approval from engineer for adjustment of fan speed higher or lower than indicated speed. Comply with requirements in HVAC Sections for air-handling units for adjustment of fans, belts, and pulley sizes to achieve indicated air-handling-unit performance.
  5. Do not make fan-speed adjustments that result in motor overload. Consult equipment manufacturers about fan-speed safety factors. Modulate dampers and measure fan-motor amperage to ensure that no overload occurs. Measure amperage in full-cooling, full-heating, economizer, and any other operating mode to determine the maximum required brake horsepower.
- B. Adjust volume dampers for main duct, submain ducts, and major branch ducts to indicated airflows.
1. Measure airflow of submain and branch ducts.
  2. Adjust submain and branch duct volume dampers for specified airflow.
  3. Re-measure each submain and branch duct after all have been adjusted.
- C. Adjust air inlets and outlets for each space to indicated airflows.
1. Set airflow patterns of adjustable outlets for proper distribution without drafts.
  2. Measure inlets and outlets airflow.
  3. Adjust each inlet and outlet for specified airflow.
  4. Re-measure each inlet and outlet after they have been adjusted.
- D. Verify final system conditions.
1. Re-measure and confirm that minimum outdoor, return, and relief airflows are within design. Readjust to design if necessary.
  2. Re-measure and confirm that total airflow is within design.
  3. Re-measure all final fan operating data, rpms, volts, amps, and static profile.
  4. Mark all final settings.
  5. Test system in economizer mode. Verify proper operation and adjust if necessary.
  6. Measure and record all operating data.
  7. Record final fan-performance data.

### 3.6 PROCEDURES FOR VARIABLE-AIR-VOLUME SYSTEMS

- A. Adjust the variable-air-volume systems as follows:

1. Verify that the system static pressure sensor is located two-thirds of the distance down the duct from the fan discharge.
2. Verify that the system is under static pressure control.
3. Select the terminal unit that is most critical to the supply-fan airflow. Measure inlet static pressure, and adjust system static pressure control set point so the entering static pressure for the critical terminal unit is not less than the sum of the terminal-unit manufacturer's recommended minimum inlet static pressure plus the static pressure needed to overcome terminal-unit discharge system losses.
4. Calibrate and balance each terminal unit for maximum and minimum design airflow as follows:
  - a. Adjust controls so that terminal is calling for maximum airflow. Some controllers require starting with minimum airflow. Verify calibration procedure for specific project.
  - b. Measure airflow and adjust calibration factor as required for design maximum airflow. Record calibration factor.
  - c. When maximum airflow is correct, balance the air outlets downstream from terminal units.
  - d. Adjust controls so that terminal is calling for minimum airflow.
  - e. Measure airflow and adjust calibration factor as required for design minimum airflow. Record calibration factor. If no minimum calibration is available, note any deviation from design airflow.
  - f. When in full cooling or full heating, ensure that there is no mixing of hot-deck and cold-deck airstreams unless so designed.
  - g. On constant volume terminals, in critical areas where room pressure is to be maintained, verify that the airflow remains constant over the full range of full cooling to full heating. Note any deviation from design airflow or room pressure.
5. After terminals have been calibrated and balanced, test and adjust system for total airflow. Adjust fans to deliver total design airflows within the maximum allowable fan speed listed by fan manufacturer.
  - a. Set outside-air, return-air, and relief-air dampers for proper position that simulates minimum outdoor-air conditions.
  - b. Set terminals for maximum airflow. If system design includes diversity, adjust terminals for maximum and minimum airflow so that connected total matches fan selection and simulates actual load in the building.
  - c. Where duct conditions allow, measure airflow by Pitot-tube traverse. If necessary, perform multiple Pitot-tube traverses to obtain total airflow.
  - d. Where duct conditions are not suitable for Pitot-tube traverse measurements, a coil traverse may be acceptable.
  - e. If a reliable Pitot-tube traverse or coil traverse is not possible, measure airflow at terminals and calculate the total airflow.
6. Measure fan static pressures as follows:
  - a. Measure static pressure directly at the fan outlet or through the flexible connection.
  - b. Measure static pressure directly at the fan inlet or through the flexible connection.
  - c. Measure static pressure across each component that makes up the air-handling system.
  - d. Report any artificial loading of filters at the time static pressures are measured.

7. Set final return and outside airflow to the fan while operating at maximum return airflow and minimum outdoor airflow.
  - a. Balance the return-air ducts and inlets the same as described for constant-volume air systems.
  - b. Verify that terminal units are meeting design airflow under system maximum flow.
8. Re-measure the inlet static pressure at the most critical terminal unit and adjust the system static pressure set point to the most energy-efficient set point to maintain the optimum system static pressure. Record set point and give to controls contractor.
9. Verify final system conditions as follows:
  - a. Re-measure and confirm that minimum outdoor, return, and relief airflows are within design. Readjust to match design if necessary.
  - b. Re-measure and confirm that total airflow is within design.
  - c. Re-measure final fan operating data, rpms, volts, amps, and static profile.
  - d. Mark final settings.
  - e. Test system in economizer mode. Verify proper operation and adjust if necessary. Measure and record all operating data.
  - f. Verify tracking between supply and return fans.

### 3.7 GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR ALL HYDRONIC SYSTEMS

- A. Prepare test reports for pumps, coils, and heat exchangers. Obtain approved submittals and manufacturer-recommended testing procedures. Crosscheck the summation of required coil and heat exchanger flow rates with pump design flow rate.
- B. Prepare schematic diagrams of systems' "as-built" piping layouts.
- C. In addition to requirements in "Preparation" Article, prepare hydronic systems for testing and balancing as follows:
  1. Check liquid level in expansion tank.
  2. Check highest vent for adequate pressure.
  3. Check flow-control valves for proper position.
  4. Locate start-stop and disconnect switches, electrical interlocks, and motor starters.
  5. Verify that motor starters are equipped with properly sized thermal protection.
  6. Check that air has been purged from the system.
- D. Code requirements;
  1. Individual hydronic heating and cooling coils shall be equipped with means for balancing and measuring flow. Hydronic systems shall be proportionately balanced in a manner to first minimize throttling losses, then the pump impeller shall be trimmed or pump speed shall be adjusted to meet design flow conditions. Each hydronic system shall have either the capability to measure pressure across the pump, or test ports at each side of each pump.

### 3.8 PROCEDURES FOR CONSTANT-FLOW HYDRONIC SYSTEMS

- A. Adjust pumps to deliver total design gpm.
  - 1. Measure total water flow.
    - a. Position valves for full flow through coils.
    - b. Measure flow by main flow meter, if installed.
    - c. If main flow meter is not installed, determine flow by pump TDH or exchanger pressure drop.
  - 2. Measure pump TDH as follows:
    - a. Measure discharge pressure directly at the pump outlet flange or in discharge pipe prior to any valves.
    - b. Measure inlet pressure directly at the pump inlet flange or in suction pipe prior to any valves or strainers.
    - c. Convert pressure to head and correct for differences in gage heights.
    - d. Verify pump impeller size by measuring the TDH with the discharge valve closed. Note the point on manufacturer's pump curve at zero flow, and verify that the pump has the intended impeller size.
    - e. With valves open, read pump TDH. Adjust pump discharge valve until design water flow is achieved.
  - 3. Monitor motor performance during procedures and do not operate motor in an overloaded condition.
- B. Adjust flow-measuring devices installed in mains and branches to design water flows.
  - 1. Measure flow in main and branch pipes.
  - 2. Adjust main and branch balance valves for design flow.
  - 3. Re-measure each main and branch after all have been adjusted.
- C. Adjust flow-measuring devices installed at terminals for each space to design water flows.
  - 1. Measure flow at terminals.
  - 2. Adjust each terminal to design flow.
  - 3. Re-measure each terminal after it is adjusted.
  - 4. Position control valves to bypass the coil, and adjust the bypass valve to maintain design flow.
  - 5. Perform temperature tests after flows have been balanced.
- D. For systems with pressure-independent valves at terminals:
  - 1. Measure differential pressure and verify that it is within manufacturer's specified range.
  - 2. Perform temperature tests after flows have been verified.
- E. For systems without pressure-independent valves or flow-measuring devices at terminals:
  - 1. Measure and balance coils by either coil pressure drop or temperature method.

2. If balanced by coil pressure drop, perform temperature tests after flows have been verified.

F. Verify final system conditions as follows:

1. Re-measure and confirm that total water flow is within design.
2. Re-measure final pumps' operating data, TDH, volts, amps, and static profile.
3. Mark final settings.

G. Verify that memory stops have been set.

### 3.9 PROCEDURES FOR VARIABLE-FLOW HYDRONIC SYSTEMS

A. Balance systems with automatic two- and three-way control valves by setting systems at maximum flow through heat-exchange terminals, and proceed as specified above for hydronic systems.

B. Adjust the variable-flow hydronic system as follows:

1. Verify that the differential-pressure sensor is located as indicated.
2. Determine whether there is diversity in the system.

C. For systems with no diversity:

1. Adjust pumps to deliver total design gpm.

a. Measure total water flow.

- 1) Position valves for full flow through coils.
- 2) Measure flow by main flow meter, if installed.
- 3) If main flow meter is not installed, determine flow by pump TDH or exchanger pressure drop.

b. Measure pump TDH as follows:

- 1) Measure discharge pressure directly at the pump outlet flange or in discharge pipe prior to any valves.
- 2) Measure inlet pressure directly at the pump inlet flange or in suction pipe prior to any valves or strainers.
- 3) Convert pressure to head and correct for differences in gage heights.
- 4) Verify pump impeller size by measuring the TDH with the discharge valve closed. Note the point on manufacturer's pump curve at zero flow and verify that the pump has the intended impeller size.
- 5) With valves open, read pump TDH. Adjust pump discharge valve until design water flow is achieved.

c. Monitor motor performance during procedures and do not operate motor in an overloaded condition.

2. Adjust flow-measuring devices installed in mains and branches to design water flows.

- a. Measure flow in main and branch pipes.
    - b. Adjust main and branch balance valves for design flow.
    - c. Re-measure each main and branch after all have been adjusted.
  3. Adjust flow-measuring devices installed at terminals for each space to design water flows.
    - a. Measure flow at terminals.
    - b. Adjust each terminal to design flow.
    - c. Re-measure each terminal after it is adjusted.
    - d. Position control valves to bypass the coil and adjust the bypass valve to maintain design flow.
    - e. Perform temperature tests after flows have been balanced.
  4. For systems with pressure-independent valves at terminals:
    - a. Measure differential pressure and verify that it is within manufacturer's specified range.
    - b. Perform temperature tests after flows have been verified.
  5. For systems without pressure-independent valves or flow-measuring devices at terminals:
    - a. Measure and balance coils by either coil pressure drop or temperature method.
    - b. If balanced by coil pressure drop, perform temperature tests after flows have been verified.
  6. Prior to verifying final system conditions, determine the system differential-pressure set point.
  7. If the pump discharge valve was used to set total system flow with variable-frequency controller at 60 Hz, at completion open discharge valve 100 percent and allow variable-frequency controller to control system differential-pressure set point. Record pump data under both conditions.
  8. Mark final settings and verify that all memory stops have been set.
  9. Verify final system conditions as follows:
    - a. Re-measure and confirm that total water flow is within design.
    - b. Re-measure final pumps' operating data, TDH, volts, amps, and static profile.
    - c. Mark final settings.
  10. Verify that memory stops have been set.
- D. For systems with diversity:
1. Determine diversity factor.
  2. Simulate system diversity by closing required number of control valves, as approved by the design engineer.
  3. Adjust pumps to deliver total design gpm.
    - a. Measure total water flow.
      - 1) Position valves for full flow through coils.

- 2) Measure flow by main flow meter, if installed.
    - 3) If main flow meter is not installed, determine flow by pump TDH or exchanger pressure drop.
  - b. Measure pump TDH as follows:
    - 1) Measure discharge pressure directly at the pump outlet flange or in discharge pipe prior to any valves.
    - 2) Measure inlet pressure directly at the pump inlet flange or in suction pipe prior to any valves or strainers.
    - 3) Convert pressure to head and correct for differences in gage heights.
    - 4) Verify pump impeller size by measuring the TDH with the discharge valve closed. Note the point on manufacturer's pump curve at zero flow and verify that the pump has the intended impeller size.
    - 5) With valves open, read pump TDH. Adjust pump discharge valve until design water flow is achieved.
  - c. Monitor motor performance during procedures and do not operate motor in an overloaded condition.
4. Adjust flow-measuring devices installed in mains and branches to design water flows.
  - a. Measure flow in main and branch pipes.
  - b. Adjust main and branch balance valves for design flow.
  - c. Re-measure each main and branch after all have been adjusted.
5. Adjust flow-measuring devices installed at terminals for each space to design water flows.
  - a. Measure flow at terminals.
  - b. Adjust each terminal to design flow.
  - c. Re-measure each terminal after it is adjusted.
  - d. Position control valves to bypass the coil, and adjust the bypass valve to maintain design flow.
  - e. Perform temperature tests after flows have been balanced.
6. For systems with pressure-independent valves at terminals:
  - a. Measure differential pressure, and verify that it is within manufacturer's specified range.
  - b. Perform temperature tests after flows have been verified.
7. For systems without pressure-independent valves or flow-measuring devices at terminals:
  - a. Measure and balance coils by either coil pressure drop or temperature method.
  - b. If balanced by coil pressure drop, perform temperature tests after flows have been verified.
8. Open control valves that were shut. Close a sufficient number of control valves that were previously open to maintain diversity, and balance terminals that were just opened.

9. Prior to verifying final system conditions, determine system differential-pressure set point.
10. If the pump discharge valve was used to set total system flow with variable-frequency controller at 60 Hz, at completion open discharge valve 100 percent and allow variable-frequency controller to control system differential-pressure set point. Record pump data under both conditions.
11. Mark final settings and verify that memory stops have been set.
12. Verify final system conditions as follows:
  - a. Re-measure and confirm that total water flow is within design.
  - b. Re-measure final pumps' operating data, TDH, volts, amps, and static profile.
  - c. Mark final settings.
13. Verify that memory stops have been set.

### 3.10 PROCEDURES FOR PRIMARY-SECONDARY HYDRONIC SYSTEMS

- A. Balance the primary circuit flow first.
- B. Balance the secondary circuits after the primary circuits are complete.
- C. Adjust pumps to deliver total design gpm.
  1. Measure total water flow.
    - a. Position valves for full flow through coils.
    - b. Measure flow by main flow meter, if installed.
    - c. If main flow meter is not installed, determine flow by pump TDH or exchanger pressure drop.
  2. Measure pump TDH as follows:
    - a. Measure discharge pressure directly at the pump outlet flange or in discharge pipe prior to any valves.
    - b. Measure inlet pressure directly at the pump inlet flange or in suction pipe prior to any valves or strainers.
    - c. Convert pressure to head and correct for differences in gage heights.
    - d. Verify pump impeller size by measuring the TDH with the discharge valve closed. Note the point on manufacturer's pump curve at zero flow and verify that the pump has the intended impeller size.
    - e. With valves open, read pump TDH. Adjust pump discharge valve until design water flow is achieved.
  3. Monitor motor performance during procedures and do not operate motor in an overloaded condition.
- D. Adjust flow-measuring devices installed in mains and branches to design water flows.
  1. Measure flow in main and branch pipes.
  2. Adjust main and branch balance valves for design flow.

3. Re-measure each main and branch after all have been adjusted.
- E. Adjust flow-measuring devices installed at terminals for each space to design water flows.
1. Measure flow at terminals.
  2. Adjust each terminal to design flow.
  3. Re-measure each terminal after it is adjusted.
  4. Position control valves to bypass the coil and adjust the bypass valve to maintain design flow.
  5. Perform temperature tests after flows have been balanced.
- F. For systems with pressure-independent valves at terminals:
1. Measure differential pressure and verify that it is within manufacturer's specified range.
  2. Perform temperature tests after flows have been verified.
- G. For systems without pressure-independent valves or flow-measuring devices at terminals:
1. Measure and balance coils by either coil pressure drop or temperature method.
  2. If balanced by coil pressure drop, perform temperature tests after flows have been verified.
- H. Verify final system conditions as follows:
1. Re-measure and confirm that total water flow is within design.
  2. Re-measure final pumps' operating data, TDH, volts, amps, and static profile.
  3. Mark final settings.
- I. Verify that memory stops have been set.

### 3.11 PROCEDURES FOR MOTORS

- A. Motors 1/2 HP and Larger: Test at final balanced conditions and record the following data:
1. Manufacturer's name, model number, and serial number.
  2. Motor horsepower rating.
  3. Motor rpm.
  4. Phase and hertz.
  5. Nameplate and measured voltage, each phase.
  6. Nameplate and measured amperage, each phase.
  7. Starter size and thermal-protection-element rating.
  8. Service factor and frame size.
- B. Motors Driven by Variable-Frequency Controllers: Test manual bypass of controller to prove proper operation.

### 3.12 PROCEDURES FOR CONDENSING UNITS

- A. Verify proper rotation of fans.

- B. Measure entering- and leaving-air temperatures.
- C. Record fan and motor operating data.

### 3.13 PROCEDURES FOR BOILERS

- A. Hydronic Boilers:
  - 1. Measure and record entering- and leaving-water temperatures.
  - 2. Measure and record water flow.
  - 3. Record relief valve pressure setting.

### 3.14 PROCEDURES FOR HEAT-TRANSFER COILS

- A. Measure, adjust, and record the following data for each water coil:
  - 1. Entering- and leaving-water temperature.
  - 2. Water flow rate.
  - 3. Water pressure drop for major (more than 20 gpm) equipment coils, excluding unitary equipment such as reheat coils, unit heaters, and fan-coil units.
  - 4. Dry-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air.
  - 5. Wet-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air for cooling coils.
  - 6. Airflow.
- B. Measure, adjust, and record the following data for each electric heating coil:
  - 1. Nameplate data.
  - 2. Airflow.
  - 3. Entering- and leaving-air temperature at full load.
  - 4. Voltage and amperage input of each phase at full load.
  - 5. Calculated kilowatt at full load.
  - 6. Fuse or circuit-breaker rating for overload protection.
- C. Measure, adjust, and record the following data for each steam coil:
  - 1. Dry-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air.
  - 2. Airflow.
  - 3. Inlet steam pressure.
- D. Measure, adjust, and record the following data for each refrigerant coil:
  - 1. Dry-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air.
  - 2. Wet-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air.
  - 3. Airflow.

### 3.15 DUCT LEAKAGE TESTS

- A. Ducts designed to operate at static pressures of 3 inches w.g. or greater shall be sealed in accordance with specifications Section 23 31 13 Metal Ducts. In addition, ducts and plenums

shall be leak tested in accordance with the procedures given SMACNA **HVAC Air Duct Leakage Test Manual**. Air leakage rates must ( $CL$ ) less than or equal to 4.0 as determined in accordance with Equations below

1.  $CL = F/P^{0.65}$  where:
2.  $F$  - The measured leakage rate in cfm per 100 square feet of duct surface.
3.  $P$  - The static pressure of the test.

- B. Documentation shall be furnished by the test and balancing contractor demonstrating that representative sections totaling at least 25 percent of the duct area have been tested and that all tested sections meet the requirements of this section.
- C. Perform duct pressure testing in coordination with Installer.
- D. Verify that proper test methods are used and that leakage rates are within specified tolerances.
- E. Report; submit a report indicating which ductwork sections were tested. Provide single line or double line duct submittal drawing. The drawing shall indicate all systems in their entirety to 3/8" = 1'-0" scale. Sections that air leakage tested shall be clearly indicated.
- F. The report shall include full test procedure including how the ductwork was isolated for pressure testing, the pressure of the test and the duration of the test.
- G. Submit duct pressure test procedures used for this project.
- H. Submit summary of test results on a section by section basis, to include all  $CL$ ,  $F$ ,  $P$  and time.
- I. Witness the duct pressure testing performed by Installer.
- J. Verify that proper test methods are used and that leakage rates are within specified tolerances.
- K. Report deficiencies observed.

### 3.16 CONTROLS VERIFICATION

- A. In conjunction with system balancing, perform the following:
  1. Verify temperature control system is operating within the design limitations.
  2. Confirm that the sequences of operation are in compliance with Contract Documents.
  3. Verify that controllers are calibrated and function as intended.
  4. Verify that controller set points are as indicated.
  5. Verify the operation of lockout or interlock systems.
  6. Verify the operation of valve and damper actuators.
  7. Verify that controlled devices are properly installed and connected to correct controller.
  8. Verify that controlled devices travel freely and are in position indicated by controller: open, closed, or modulating.
  9. Verify location and installation of sensors to ensure that they sense only intended temperature, humidity, or pressure.
- B. Reporting: Include a summary of verifications performed, remaining deficiencies, and variations from indicated conditions.

### 3.17 TOLERANCES

- A. Set HVAC system's airflow rates and water flow rates within the following tolerances:
  - 1. Supply, Return, and Exhaust Fans and Equipment with Fans: Plus or minus 10 percent.
  - 2. Air Outlets and Inlets: Plus or minus 10 percent.
  - 3. Heating-Water Flow Rate: Plus or minus 10 percent.
  - 4. Cooling-Water Flow Rate: Plus or minus 10 percent.
- B. Maintaining pressure relationships as designed shall have priority over the tolerances specified above.

### 3.18 PROGRESS REPORTING

- A. Initial Construction-Phase Report: Based on examination of the Contract Documents as specified in "Examination" Article, prepare a report on the adequacy of design for systems balancing devices. Recommend changes and additions to systems balancing devices to facilitate proper performance measuring and balancing. Recommend changes and additions to HVAC systems and general construction to allow access for performance measuring and balancing devices.
- B. Status Reports: Prepare progress reports to describe completed procedures, procedures in progress, and scheduled procedures. Include a list of deficiencies and problems found in systems being tested and balanced. Prepare a separate report for each system and each building floor for systems serving multiple floors.

### 3.19 FINAL REPORT

- A. General: Prepare a certified written report; tabulate and divide the report into separate sections for tested systems and balanced systems.
  - 1. Include a certification sheet at the front of the report's binder, signed and sealed by the certified testing and balancing engineer.
  - 2. Include a list of instruments used for procedures, along with proof of calibration.
  - 3. Certify validity and accuracy of field data.
- B. Final Report Contents: In addition to certified field-report data, include the following:
  - 1. Pump curves.
  - 2. Fan curves.
  - 3. Manufacturers' test data.
  - 4. Field test reports prepared by system and equipment installers.
  - 5. Other information relative to equipment performance; do not include Shop Drawings and Product Data.
- C. General Report Data: In addition to form titles and entries, include the following data:
  - 1. Title page.
  - 2. Name and address of the TAB specialist.

3. Project name.
  4. Project location.
  5. Architect's name and address.
  6. Engineer's name and address.
  7. Contractor's name and address.
  8. Report date.
  9. Signature of TAB supervisor who certifies the report.
  10. Table of Contents with the total number of pages defined for each section of the report. Number each page in the report.
  11. Summary of contents including the following:
    - a. Indicated versus final performance.
    - b. Notable characteristics of systems.
    - c. Description of system operation sequence if it varies from the Contract Documents.
  12. Nomenclature sheets for each item of equipment.
  13. Data for terminal units, including manufacturer's name, type, size, and fittings.
  14. Notes to explain why certain final data in the body of reports vary from indicated values.
  15. Test conditions for fans and pump performance forms including the following:
    - a. Settings for outdoor-, return-, and exhaust-air dampers.
    - b. Conditions of filters.
    - c. Cooling coil, wet- and dry-bulb conditions.
    - d. Face and bypass damper settings at coils.
    - e. Fan drive settings including settings and percentage of maximum pitch diameter.
    - f. Inlet vane settings for variable-air-volume systems.
    - g. Settings for supply-air, static-pressure controller.
    - h. Other system operating conditions that affect performance.
- D. System Diagrams: Include schematic layouts of air and hydronic distribution systems. Present each system with single-line diagram and include the following:
1. Quantities of outdoor, supply, return, and exhaust airflows.
  2. Water and steam flow rates.
  3. Duct, outlet, and inlet sizes.
  4. Pipe and valve sizes and locations.
  5. Terminal units.
  6. Balancing stations.
  7. Position of balancing devices.
- E. Air-Handling-Unit Test Reports: For air-handling units with coils, include the following:
1. Unit Data:
    - a. Unit identification.
    - b. Location.
    - c. Make and type.
    - d. Model number and unit size.
    - e. Manufacturer's serial number.
    - f. Unit arrangement and class.

- g. Discharge arrangement.
- h. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
- i. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave and amount of adjustments in inches.
- j. Number, make, and size of belts.
- k. Number, type, and size of filters.

2. Motor Data:

- a. Motor make, and frame type and size.
- b. Horsepower and rpm.
- c. Volts, phase, and hertz.
- d. Full-load amperage and service factor.
- e. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
- f. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave and amount of adjustments in inches.

3. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):

- a. Total airflow rate in cfm.
- b. Total system static pressure in inches wg.
- c. Fan rpm.
- d. Discharge static pressure in inches wg.
- e. Filter static-pressure differential in inches wg.
- f. Preheat-coil static-pressure differential in inches wg.
- g. Cooling-coil static-pressure differential in inches wg.
- h. Heating-coil static-pressure differential in inches wg.
- i. Outdoor airflow in cfm.
- j. Return airflow in cfm.
- k. Outdoor-air damper position.
- l. Return-air damper position.
- m. Vortex damper position.

F. Apparatus-Coil Test Reports:

1. Coil Data:

- a. System identification.
- b. Location.
- c. Coil type.
- d. Number of rows.
- e. Fin spacing in fins per inch o.c.
- f. Make and model number.
- g. Face area in sq. ft..
- h. Tube size in NPS.
- i. Tube and fin materials.
- j. Circuiting arrangement.

2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):

- a. Airflow rate in cfm.
- b. Average face velocity in fpm.
- c. Air pressure drop in inches wg.

- d. Outdoor-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F.
- e. Return-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F.
- f. Entering-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F.
- g. Leaving-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F.
- h. Water flow rate in gpm.
- i. Water pressure differential in feet of head or psig.
- j. Entering-water temperature in deg F.
- k. Leaving-water temperature in deg F.
- l. Refrigerant expansion valve and refrigerant types.
- m. Refrigerant suction pressure in psig.
- n. Refrigerant suction temperature in deg F.
- o. Inlet steam pressure in psig.

G. Fan Test Reports: For supply, return, and exhaust fans, include the following:

- 1. Fan Data:
  - a. System identification.
  - b. Location.
  - c. Make and type.
  - d. Model number and size.
  - e. Manufacturer's serial number.
  - f. Arrangement and class.
  - g. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
  - h. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave and amount of adjustments in inches.
- 2. Motor Data:
  - a. Motor make, and frame type and size.
  - b. Horsepower and rpm.
  - c. Volts, phase, and hertz.
  - d. Full-load amperage and service factor.
  - e. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
  - f. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave, and amount of adjustments in inches.
  - g. Number, make, and size of belts.
- 3. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
  - a. Total airflow rate in cfm.
  - b. Total system static pressure in inches wg.
  - c. Fan rpm.
  - d. Discharge static pressure in inches wg.
  - e. Suction static pressure in inches wg.

H. Round, Flat-Oval, and Rectangular Duct Traverse Reports: Include a diagram with a grid representing the duct cross-section and record the following:

- 1. Report Data:
  - a. System and air-handling-unit number.
  - b. Location and zone.

- c. Traverse air temperature in deg F.
- d. Duct static pressure in inches wg.
- e. Duct size in inches.
- f. Duct area in sq. ft..
- g. Indicated airflow rate in cfm.
- h. Indicated velocity in fpm.
- i. Actual airflow rate in cfm.
- j. Actual average velocity in fpm.
- k. Barometric pressure in psig.

I. Air-Terminal-Device Reports:

1. Unit Data:

- a. System and air-handling unit identification.
- b. Location and zone.
- c. Apparatus used for test.
- d. Area served.
- e. Make.
- f. Number from system diagram.
- g. Type and model number.
- h. Size.
- i. Effective area in sq. ft..

2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):

- a. Airflow rate in cfm.
- b. Air velocity in fpm.
- c. Preliminary airflow rate as needed in cfm.
- d. Preliminary velocity as needed in fpm.
- e. Final airflow rate in cfm.
- f. Final velocity in fpm.
- g. Space temperature in deg F.

J. System-Coil Reports: For reheat coils and water coils of terminal units, include the following:

1. Unit Data:

- a. System and air-handling-unit identification.
- b. Location and zone.
- c. Room or riser served.
- d. Coil make and size.
- e. Flowmeter type.

2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):

- a. Airflow rate in cfm.
- b. Entering-water temperature in deg F.
- c. Leaving-water temperature in deg F.
- d. Water pressure drop in feet of head or psig.
- e. Entering-air temperature in deg F.

- f. Leaving-air temperature in deg F.
- K. Pump Test Reports: Calculate impeller size by plotting the shutoff head on pump curves and include the following:
  - 1. Unit Data:
    - a. Unit identification.
    - b. Location.
    - c. Service.
    - d. Make and size.
    - e. Model number and serial number.
    - f. Water flow rate in gpm.
    - g. Water pressure differential in feet of head or psig.
    - h. Required net positive suction head in feet of head or psig.
    - i. Pump rpm.
    - j. Impeller diameter in inches.
    - k. Motor make and frame size.
    - l. Motor horsepower and rpm.
    - m. Voltage at each connection.
    - n. Amperage for each phase.
    - o. Full-load amperage and service factor.
    - p. Seal type.
  - 2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
    - a. Static head in feet of head or psig.
    - b. Pump shutoff pressure in feet of head or psig.
    - c. Actual impeller size in inches.
    - d. Full-open flow rate in gpm.
    - e. Full-open pressure in feet of head or psig.
    - f. Final discharge pressure in feet of head or psig.
    - g. Final suction pressure in feet of head or psig.
    - h. Final total pressure in feet of head or psig.
    - i. Final water flow rate in gpm.
    - j. Voltage at each connection.
    - k. Amperage for each phase.
- L. Instrument Calibration Reports:
  - 1. Report Data:
    - a. Instrument type and make.
    - b. Serial number.
    - c. Application.
    - d. Dates of use.
    - e. Dates of calibration.

### 3.20 VERIFICATION OF TAB REPORT

- A. The TAB specialist's test and balance engineer shall conduct the inspection in the presence of commissioning authority.
- B. Commissioning authority shall randomly select measurements, documented in the final report, to be rechecked. Rechecking shall be limited to either 10 percent of the total measurements recorded or the extent of measurements that can be accomplished in a normal 8-hour business day.
- C. If rechecks yield measurements that differ from the measurements documented in the final report by more than the tolerances allowed, the measurements shall be noted as "FAILED."
- D. If the number of "FAILED" measurements is greater than 10 percent of the total measurements checked during the final inspection, the testing and balancing shall be considered incomplete and shall be rejected.
- E. If TAB work fails, proceed as follows:
  - 1. TAB specialists shall recheck all measurements and make adjustments. Revise the final report and balancing device settings to include all changes; resubmit the final report and request a second final inspection.
  - 2. If the second final inspection also fails, Owner may contract the services of another TAB specialist to complete TAB work according to the Contract Documents and deduct the cost of the services from the original TAB specialist's final payment.
- F. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.21 ADDITIONAL TESTS

- A. Within 90 days of completing TAB, perform additional TAB to verify that balanced conditions are being maintained throughout and to correct unusual conditions.
- B. Seasonal Periods: If initial TAB procedures were not performed during near-peak summer and winter conditions, perform additional TAB during near-peak summer and winter conditions.

END OF SECTION 230593

## SECTION 23 07 13 HVAC DUCTWORK INSULATION

## PART 1 GENERAL

## 1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Ductwork insulation.
- B. Duct Liner.
- C. Insulation jackets.

## 1.02 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Section 23 05 53 - Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment.
- B. Section 23 31 13 - Ductwork.

## 1.03 REFERENCES

- A. ASTM C553 - Standard Specification for Mineral Fiber Blanket Thermal Insulation for Commercial and Industrial Applications.
- B. ASTM C612 - Standard Specification for Mineral Fiber Block and Board Thermal Insulation.
- C. ASTM E84 - Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials.
- D. NAIMA National Insulation Standards.
- E. NFPA 255 - Standard Method of Test of Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials.
- F. SMACNA - HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible.
- G. UL 723 - Standard for Test for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials.
- H. ASHRAE 90-75 – Insulation Standards

## 1.04 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include thermal conductivity, water-vapor permeance thickness, and jackets (both factory- and field-applied if any).
- B. Sustainable Design Submittals:
  - 1. Product Data: For adhesives, indicating VOC content.
  - 2. Laboratory Test Reports: For adhesives, indicating compliance with requirements for low-emitting materials.

3. Product Data: For coatings, indicating VOC content.
  4. Laboratory Test Reports: For coatings, indicating compliance with requirements for low-emitting materials.
  5. Product Data: For sealants, indicating VOC content.
  6. Laboratory Test Reports: For sealants, indicating compliance with requirements for low-emitting materials.
- C. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
1. Detail application of protective shields, saddles, and inserts at hangers for each type of insulation and hanger.
  2. Detail insulation application at elbows, fittings, dampers, specialties and flanges for each type of insulation.
  3. Detail application of field-applied jackets.
  4. Detail application at linkages of control devices.
- D. Samples: For each type of insulation and jacket indicated. Identify each Sample, describing product and intended use. Sample sizes are as follows:
1. Sheet Form Insulation Materials: 12 inches square.
  2. Sheet Jacket Materials: 12 inches square.
  3. Manufacturer's Color Charts: For products where color is specified, show the full range of colors available for each type of finish material.

#### 1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Applicator Qualifications: Company specializing in performing the work of this section with minimum three years experience approved by manufacturer.

#### 1.06 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

- A. Materials: Flame spread/fuel contributed/smoke developed rating of 25/50/50 in accordance with NFPA 255.
- B. Insulation thickness shall comply with all applicable energy conservation codes.

#### 1.07 ENVIRONMENTAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Maintain ambient temperatures and conditions required by manufacturers of adhesives, mastics, and insulation cements.
- B. Maintain temperature during and after installation for minimum period of 24 hours.

### PART 2 PRODUCTS

#### 2.01 ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURERS - INSULATION

- A. Owen Corning Fiberglass Corp.
- B. Manville Industrial Products
- C. Certain Teed Corporation

- D. 3M Corporation "Firemaster" for Kitchen Exhaust
- E. Substitutions: Under provisions of Division 1.

## 2.02 GLASS FIBER, RIGID

- A. Type A: Flexible glass fiber duct insulation; ANSI/ASTM C612; commercial grade; "K" value of 0.25 at 75° F; minimum density of 1-1/2 pounds per cu. ft.; factory applied vapor barrier jacket of 0.7 mil minimum aluminum foil laminated to glass fiber reinforced Kraft paper. Similar to Owens-Corning type FRK-25-ED Type 150 commercial grade.
- B. Type B: Rigid glass fiber board insulation with resin binder; ANSI/ASTM C612, Class 1; "K" value of 0.23 at 75° F minimum density of 6 pounds per cu. ft; factory applied white Kraft faced flame retardant vapor barrier jacket of aluminum laminated to heavy Kraft paper with a flame retardant snuffer type adhesive and reinforced with glass fibers; permeability of 0.2. Similar to Owens-Corning type 705 with AST jacket.
- C. Type C: Molded block or board insulation made of asbestos free hydrous calcium silicate; "K" value of 0.42 at 200° F; minimum density of 14 pounds per cubic foot; temperature range up to 1200° F.

### D. Type D1: **Flexible Glass Duct Liner: (For standard applications)**

ANSI/ASTM C553; "K" value of 0.23 at 75° F; minimum density of 1.5 pounds per cu. ft.; surface finish of black pigmented fire resistant resilient mastic coated on air side for maximum velocity of 4000 feet per minute.

#### a. Maximum Thermal Conductivity

- 1) Type I, Flexible: 0.27 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F at 75 deg F mean temperature.
- 2) Type II, Rigid: 0.23 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F at 75 deg F mean temperature.
- b. Antimicrobial Erosion-Resistant Coating: Apply to the surface of the liner that will form the interior surface of the duct to act as a moisture repellent and erosion-resistant coating. Antimicrobial compound shall be tested for efficacy by an NRTL and registered by the EPA for use in HVAC systems.
- c. Solvent Water-Based Liner Adhesive: Comply with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B and with ASTM C 916.

### E Type D2: **Flexible Elastomeric Duct Liner: (Wet Or Damp Applications Including Natatorium And Saunas).**

**Flexible Elastomeric Duct Liner:** Preformed, cellular, closed-cell, sheet materials complying with ASTM C 534, Type II, Grade 1; and with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B.

- 1. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Maximum flame-spread index of 25 and maximum smoke-developed index of 50 when tested according to UL 723; certified by an NRTL.
- 2. Liner Adhesive: As recommended by insulation manufacturer and complying with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B.

- F. Type "E" – Fire resistant duct wrap consisting of light weight, non-asbestos high temperature non-organic ceramic fiber blanket encapsulated in foil/scrim having a service

temperature rating of 2300° F. Wrap shall be applied in two temperature layers to provide a two-hour rated enclosure assembly. Bonding material shall be 304 stainless steel, 3/4" wide and .015" thick.

- G Adhesives: Waterproof fire-retardant type. Smoke and flame spread rating less than 50.
- H. Indoor Jacket: Pre-sized glass cloth, minimum 7.8 oz/sq. yd unless otherwise specified above.
- H. Outdoor Jackets (not used): Insulate as per the specification and jacket with Polyguard Insul-wrap 50W Membrane. For watertight insulation jacket install as per manufacturers recommendations. Furnish all mastics and adhesives as per manufacture system.

## 1.2 ADHESIVES

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Flexible Elastomeric and Polyolefin Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-24179A, Type II, Class I.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Aeroflex USA, Inc.
    - b. Armacell LLC.
    - c. Foster Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
    - d. K-Flex USA.
  - 2. Adhesives shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less.
  - 3. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."
- C. ASJ Adhesive, and FSK Jacket Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A for bonding insulation jacket lap seams and joints.
  - 1. Adhesive shall have a VOC content of 80 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

## 1.3 MASTICS AND COATINGS

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
  - 1. VOC Content: 300 g/L or less.
  - 2. Low-Emitting Materials: Mastic coatings shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."

## 1.4 SEALANTS

### A. FSK and Metal Jacket Flashing Sealants:

1. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
2. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F
4. Color: Aluminum.
5. Sealant shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less.
6. Sealant shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."

### B. ASJ Flashing Sealants, and Vinyl and PVC Jacket Flashing Sealants:

1. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
2. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F
4. Color: White.
5. Sealant shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less.
6. Sealant shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."

## 1.5

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Install insulation materials only after ductwork has been sealed, tested and approved.
- B. All insulated surfaces are to be cleaned and dried of any foreign material. This includes but is not limited to oil, water, dirt, rust and scale. Completely cover the entire surface to present a tight, smooth appearance.

### 3.02 INSTALLATION

- A. Division 1 - Quality Control: Install materials in accordance with manufacturer's instructions, specification requirements and in compliance with local code
- B. Install in accordance with NAIMA National Insulation Standards.
- C. Apply insulation in such a way as to permit expansion and/or contraction of metal without causing damage to insulation, joints, seams or finish.
- D. Do not apply additional coats of mastic, adhesive, or sealers until previous coats have thoroughly dried.

- E. Fill in all surface imperfections such as chipped edges, small joints, cracks, holes and small voids with materials o match insulation. Make smooth with a skim coat of insulation cement. Extend surface finish to protect all surfaces and leave no exposed edges.
- F. Provide flashing for insulation installed outdoors to enclose all exposed edges or ends.
- G. Repair existing insulation where damaged by new work. Use materials to match existing.
- H. Cut, score or miter insulation to fit the slope and contour of surface to be covered. Insulation up to 3 inches thick to be applied in single layer. Over 3 inches apply in multiple layers, with joints staggered.

## 3.03 DUCT INSULATION SCHEDULE

<u>Service</u>	<u>Type</u>	<u>Insulation Thickness</u>
<sup>1</sup> Interior AC systems; SA, RA & EA, ductwork that is exposed in <u>equip rooms</u> .	B	1-1/2"
<sup>1</sup> Interior AC systems; SA, RA & EA including flexible run outs, that is concealed.	A	2"
Outside air intake ductwork All	B	1 1/2"
Acoustically line all SA & RA ductwork For a distance of 20' from fan inlet and outlet and 10' downstream of all VAV boxes.	D1/D2	1/2"
<sup>5</sup> Interior exposed AC systems; SA, RA located in conditioned spaces rectangular, spiral round or oval ductwork;		
Located in conditioned space	D1/D2	1"
Located in unconditioned space, plenum or equipment room.	D1/D2	1 1/2"
<sup>4</sup> Smoke purge exhaust and supply	E	2" (not used)
All Stair pressure ductwork	E	2" (not used)
Generator exhaust pipe and muffler	C	2"
1. Insulation Thickness shall be no less than the size indicated or the height of standing seams or angle bracing.		
2. Reduce external insulation to 1" for internally lined ductwork except for outdoor installations. On outdoor installations insulation thickness shall be as scheduled but not less then the height of standing seams or angle bracing.		
3. Outside air intake ducts shall not be internally lined.		
4. All square, round, oval or rectangular ductwork that is exposed to view in finished spaces shall be internally insulated.		

**END OF SECTION**

## SECTION 23 07 16 HVAC EQUIPMENT INSULATION

## PART 1 GENERAL

## 1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Equipment insulation
- B. Covering
- C. Breeching insulation

## 1.02 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Section 23 05 53 – Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment.
- B. Section 23 21 13 - Hydronic Piping.
- C. Section 23 23 00 - Refrigerant Piping and Specialties.

## 1.03 REFERENCES

- A. ASHRAE 90-75 – Insulation Standards
- B. ASTM C195 – Standard Specification for Mineral Fiber Thermal Insulation Cement.
- C. ASTM C533 – Standard Specification for Calcium Silicate Block and Pipe Thermal
- D. ASTM C552 – Standard Specification for Cellular Glass Thermal Insulation.
- E. ASTM C553 - Standard Specification for Mineral Fiber Blanket Thermal Insulation for Commercial and Industrial Applications.
- F. ASTM C612 - Standard Specification for Mineral Fiber Block and Board Thermal Insulation.
- G. ASTM C921 - Standard Practice for Determining the Properties of Jacketing Materials for Thermal Insulation.
- H. ASTM E84 - Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials.
- I. ASTM E96 - Standard Test Methods for Water Vapor Transmission of Materials.
- J. NAIMA National Insulation Standards.
- K. NFPA 255 - Standard Method of Test of Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials.
- L. UL 723 - Standard for Test for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials.

## 1.04 SUBMITTALS FOR REVIEW

- A. Division 1 – Submittal Requirements.
- B. Product Data: Provide product description, thermal characteristics, list of materials and thickness for equipment scheduled.
- C. Manufacturer's Instructions: Indicate installation procedures which ensure acceptable workmanship and installation standards will be achieved.

#### 1.1 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product. Include thermal conductivity, water-vapor permeance thickness, and jackets (both factory and field applied if any).
- B. Sustainable Design Submittals:
  - 1. Product Data: For adhesives, mastics, and sealants, indicating VOC content.
  - 2. Laboratory Test Reports: For adhesives, mastics, and sealants, indicating compliance with requirements for low-emitting materials.
- C. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
  - 1. Detail removable insulation at equipment connections.
  - 2. Detail application of field-applied jackets.
  - 3. Detail application at linkages of control devices.
  - 4. Detail field application for each equipment type.

#### 1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing the Products specified in this section with minimum three years documented experience.

#### 1.06 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

- A. Materials: Flame spread/fuel contributed/smoke developed rating of 25/50/50 in accordance with NFPA 255.
- B. Insulation thickness shall comply with applicable energy conservation codes.

#### 1.07 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND PROTECTION

- A. Division 1 - Material and Equipment: Transport, handle, store, and protect products.
- B. Accept materials on site in original factory packaging, labeled with manufacturer's identification, including product density and thickness.
- C. Protect insulation from weather and construction traffic, dirt, water, chemical, and mechanical damage, by storing in original wrapping.

## 1.08 ENVIRONMENTAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Maintain ambient temperatures and conditions required by manufacturers of adhesives, mastics, and insulation cements.

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

### 2.01 ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURERS

- A. Owens Corning Fiberglass Corp.
- B. Certain Teed Corporation
- C. Manville Industrial Products.
- D. Substitutions: Under provisions of Section 01630.

### 2.02 INSULATION

- A. Type A: Flexible glass fiber blanket; ANSI/ASTM C553; 'k' value of 0.23 at 75° F, 3.5 lb/cu feet density. Temperature range - 35° F to 250° F.
- B. Type B: Rigid glass fiber board; ANSI/ASTM C612; 'k' value of 0.24 at 75° F, 6.0 lb/cu feet. Temperature range - 35° F to 250° F.
- A. Type C: Elastomeric insulation; ASTM C518, C177; 'K' Value of 0.27 at 75°F; non-combustible. Similar to Armstrong "AP Armaflex"; temperature range -40° F to 220° F.

### 2.03 ACCESSORIES

- A. Bedding Compounds: Non-shrinking, permanently flexible, compatible with insulation
- B. Vapor Barrier Coating: Non-flammable, fire resistant, polymeric resin, compatible with insulation.
- C. Insulating Cement: ANSI/ASTM C195, hydraulic setting mineral wool
- D. Wire Mesh: Corrosive-resistant metal; hexagonal pattern.

### 2.04 ADHESIVES

- D. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Cellular-Glass Adhesive: Two-component, thermosetting urethane adhesive containing no flammable solvents, with a service temperature range of **minus 100 to plus 200 deg F**
  - 1. Adhesive: As recommended by cellular glass manufacturer and with a VOC content of 80 g/L or less.
  - 2. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of

Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."

F. PVC Jacket Adhesive: Compatible with PVC jacket.

1. Adhesive: As recommended by Adhesive - PVC Jacket manufacturer and with a VOC content of 50 g/L or less.
2. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."

2.05 MASTICS AND COATINGS

G. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.

1. Mastics: As recommended by insulation manufacturer and with a VOC content of 50 g/L or less.
2. Mastics shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."

2.06 LAGGING ADHESIVES

H. Adhesives shall comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class I, Grade A and shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.

1. Adhesive shall be as recommended by insulation manufacturer and shall have a VOC content of Insert value g/L or less.
2. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."
3. Fire-resistant, water-based lagging adhesive and coating for use indoors to adhere fire-resistant lagging cloths over equipment insulation.
4. Service Temperature Range: **20 to plus 180 deg F** Color: White.

2.07 SEALANTS

I. Materials shall be as recommended by the insulation manufacturer and shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.

J. Joint Sealants:

1. Permanently flexible, elastomeric sealant.
2. Service Temperature Range: Minus 58 to plus 176 deg F.
3. Color: White or gray.
4. Sealant shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less.
5. Sealant shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."

PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that equipment has been tested before applying insulation materials.
- B. Clean and dry all surfaces to be insulated of all foreign material. This includes but is not limited to water, oil, dirt, rust, and scale.

### 3.02 INSTALLATION

- A. Install materials in accordance with manufacturer's instruction, specification requirements and in compliance with local code.
- B. Only insulation and finish materials including adhesives, cements, and mastics which conform to the requirements of all governing codes & ordinances shall be used.
- C. Factory Insulated Equipment: Do not insulate.
- D. Exposed Equipment: Locate insulation and cover seams in least visible locations. Insulate expansion tanks, pumps, pot feeders etc.
- E. Apply insulation as close as possible to equipment by grooving, scoring, and beveling insulation. Fasten insulation to equipment with studs, pins, clips, adhesive, wires, or bands. Insulation shall be applied in single layers up to 3 inches thick; over 3 inches thick it shall be applied in multiple layers.
- F. Fill joints, cracks, seams, and depressions with bedding compound to form smooth surface. On cold equipment, use vapor barrier cement. The surface finish shall be extended to protect all insulation surfaces. No raw edges or ends shall be left exposed.
- G. Insulated equipment containing fluids below ambient temperature: Insulate entire system.
- H. Cover insulation with metal mesh and finish with heavy coat of insulating cement.
- I. Insulation shall be applied in such a way as to permit expansion or contraction of metal without causing damage to insulation or surface finish. Seal or cement shall not be applied until all previous application of cements and adhesives have thoroughly dried.
- J. Vapor barrier finishes shall not be stapled through.
- K. Clean and dry all surfaces to be insulated of rust, scale, dirt, oil, water and other foreign matter. Apply insulation to completely cover metal surface. Surface finish shall be applied to present a tight, smooth appearance.
- L. Nameplates and ASME Stamps: Bevel and seal insulation around; do not insulate over.
- M. Equipment Requiring Access for Maintenance, Repair, Cleaning: Install insulation so it can be easily removed and replaced without damage.
- N. Insulate all pumps with type C insulation. Fabricate custom aluminum sheet metal enclosure around pump body and fittings. Cut and fit insulation to tightly fit the size and shape of the pump body parts including the volute and inlet and outlet piping and fittings.

The enclosure shall be removable with out cutting or breaking the insulation. The enclosure shall be vapor tight to prevent condensation.

### 3.03 SCHEDULES

<u>EQUIPMENT</u>	<u>INSULATION TYPE</u>	<u>THICKNESS</u>
Air Handler Components and Fans, Not Factory insulated including coil & filter sections	B or C	1.5"
Return fans	B or C	1.5"
Expansion Tanks/Chemical Feed Tanks and heat exchangers All Specialties valves, air separators	C	1.5"
Boilers Factory Installed Jackets Factory Installed Jackets	B	2"
Pumps Body and Parts.	C	2"

END OF SECTION

## SECTION 23 07 19 HVAC PIPING INSULATION

## PART 1 GENERAL

## 1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Piping insulation
- B. Jackets and accessories

## 1.02 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Section 23 05 53 – Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment.
- B. Section 23 21 13 - Hydronic Piping.

## 1.03 REFERENCES

- A. ASTM C177 - Standard Test Method for Steady-State Heat Flux Measurements and Thermal Transmission Properties by Means of the Guarded Hot Plate Apparatus
- B. ASTM C195 - Standard Specification for Mineral Fiber Thermal Insulating Cement.
- C. ASTM C449/C449M - Standard Specification for Mineral Fiber Hydraulic-Setting Thermal Insulating and Finishing Cement
- D. ASTM C518 - Standard Test Method for Steady-State Heat Flux Measurements and Thermal Transmission Properties by Means of the Heat Flow Meter Apparatus
- E. ASTM C533 - Standard Specification for Calcium Silicate Block and Pipe Thermal Insulation.
- F. ASTM C547 - Standard Specification for Mineral Fiber Preformed Pipe Insulation
- G. ASTM C552 - Standard Specification for Cellular Glass Thermal Insulation.
- H. ASTM C578 - Standard Specification for Preformed, Cellular Polystyrene Thermal Insulation
- I. ASTM C610 - Standard Specification for Expanded Perlite Block and Pipe Thermal Insulation
- J. ASTM E84 - Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials
- K. NAIMA National Insulation Standards
- L. NFPA 255 - Standard Method of Test of Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials

M. UL 723 - Standard for Test for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials.

N. ASHRAE 90-75 - Insulation Standards

#### 1.04 SUBMITTALS FOR REVIEW

A. Division 1 – Submittal Requirements.

B. Product Data: Provide product description, thermal characteristics, list of materials and thickness for each service, and locations.

C. Manufacturer's Instructions: Indicate installation procedures that ensure acceptable workmanship and installation standards will be achieved.

D. Sustainable Design Submittals:

1. Product Data: For adhesives, mastics, and sealants, indicating VOC content.
2. Laboratory Test Reports: For adhesives, mastics, and sealants, indicating compliance with requirements for low-emitting materials.

E. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

1. Detail application of protective shields, saddles, and inserts at hangers for each type of insulation and hanger.
2. Detail attachment and covering of heat tracing inside insulation.
3. Detail insulation application at pipe expansion joints for each type of insulation.
4. Detail insulation application at elbows, fittings, flanges, valves, and specialties for each type of insulation.
5. Detail removable insulation at piping specialties.
6. Detail application of field-applied jackets.
7. Detail application at linkages of control devices.

#### 1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing the Products specified in this section with minimum three years experience.

#### 1.06 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

A. Conform to maximum flame spread/smoke developed rating of 25/50 in accordance with NFPA 255

B. Insulation thickness shall comply with applicable Energy Conservation Codes.

### PART 2 PRODUCTS

#### 2.01 ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturer: Pittsburgh Corning Corporation

B. Certainteed Corporation.

- C. Armstrong Corporation.
- D. Manville Industrial Products.
- E. Owens-Corning Fiberglass Corporation
- F. Polyguard

## 2.02 INSULATION

- A. Type A: Molded glass fiber insulation; ANSI/ASTM C547; 'k' value of 0.23 at 75° F; noncombustible. Minimum density of 3.5 lbs./cu. Ft.; temperature range 35° F to 450° F.
- B. Type B: Cellular glass insulation; ASTM C552; 'K' Value of 0.53 at 75°F; non-combustible. Minimum density of 8.0 lbs./cu. ft. similar to Pittsburgh Corning Foamglas.
- C. Type C: Elastomeric insulation; ASTM C518, C177; 'K' Value of 0.27 at 75°F; non-combustible. Similar to Armstrong "AP Armaflex"; temperature range -40° F to 220° F

## 2.03 JACKETS

### A. Interior Applications:

- 1. Insulation Type A - Factory applied, white, flame retardant, all service (ASJ) vapor barrier jacket of .001" aluminum foil laminated to Kraft paper with a flame retardant snuffer type adhesive reinforced with glass fibers and having a self sealing lap. Provide 2" longitudinal lap and 4" circumferential sealing strips. Permeability .02 perm.

### B. Exterior Applications: (not used)

- 1. Insulation Type A thickness as scheduled with ASJ vapor barrier jacket - Cover factory interior jacket with Alumaguard Cool Wrap by Polyguard rubberized bitumen membrane designed specifically to be installed over insulation on exterior piping, tanks, vessels, and equipment. The membrane shall be 'peel and stick', self-healing if punctured, UV stable, and will expand and contract with the mechanical system. All seams shall be sealed water tight. Permeability .0053 perm

### C. Piping exposed in Mechanical Rooms or any space:

- 1. All exposed piping and fittings shall be completely covered with white Zeston 2000 PVC insulated piping and fitting covers. Apply as per manufacturer with perma weld adhesive.

### D. Underground applications: (not used)

All straight sections of the insulated piping system shall be filament wound, polyester resin/fiberglass reinforcement composite directly applied on the insulating foam. The jacket shall be either filament wind fiberglass directly onto the polyurethane foam or injected foam into a fiberglass outer casing.

Fiberglass outer casing shall be A.O. Smith Red Thread or Ameron Bondstrand 3000. Thermoplastic casing material that are not rated for temperatures above 140 degrees F will not be allowed, e.g., PVC or HDPE. The minimum thickness for FRP jacket shall be as 0.55"

## 2.04 ACCESSORIES

- A. Insulation Bands: ¾" wide; 0.007 inch thick aluminum.
- B. Metal Jacket Bands: 3/8" wide; 0.015 inch thick aluminum.
- C. Insulating Cement: ANSI/ASTM C195; hydraulic setting mineral wool.
- D. Finishing Cement: ASTM C449
- E. Fibrous Glass Cloth: Untreated; 9 oz/sq. yd weight.
- F. Adhesives: Compatible with insulation and fire retardant.

## 2.05 ADHESIVES

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Cellular-Glass Adhesive: Two-component, thermosetting urethane adhesive containing no flammable solvents, with a service temperature range of minus 100 to plus 200 deg F.
  - 1. Adhesive: As recommended by cellular glass manufacturer and with a VOC content of 80 g/L or less.
- C. Flexible Elastomeric and Polyolefin Adhesive: Solvent-based adhesive.
  - 1. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers." Formaldehyde emissions shall not exceed 9 mcg/cu. m or 7 ppb, whichever is less.
  - 2. Flame-spread index shall be 25 or less and smoke-developed index shall be 50 or less as tested in accordance with ASTM E84.
  - 3. Wet Flash Point: Below 0 deg F .
  - 4. Service Temperature Range: 40 to 200 deg F
  - 5. Color: Black.
- D. Mineral-Fiber Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A.
  - 1. Adhesive: As recommended by mineral fiber manufacturer and with a VOC content of 80 g/L or less.

## 2.06 MASTICS AND COATINGS

- A. Mastic and coating terminology is used interchangeably in this article. Manufacturers refer to vapor-barrier formulations and vapor-retarder formulations as "mastics" or "coatings." Low-permeance mastics and coatings are termed "vapor retarders." Products with a perm rating of greater than 1.0 are called "breathable." Consider ambient conditions and operating temperatures when selecting mastics and coatings. Consider using water-based mastics and coatings for environmental reasons.
- B. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
  - 1. Mastics: As recommended by insulation manufacturer and with a VOC content of 50 g/L or less.

## 2.07 LAGGING ADHESIVES

- A. Adhesives shall comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class I, Grade A, and shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
  - 1. Adhesive shall be as recommended by insulation manufacturer and shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less.
  - 2. Fire-resistant, water-based lagging adhesive and coating for use indoors to adhere fire-resistant lagging cloths over pipe insulation.
  - 3. In "Service Temperature Range" Subparagraph below, more manufacturers can comply if first option is retained; consult manufacturers.
  - 4. Service Temperature Range: 20 to plus 180 deg F .
  - 5. Color: White.

## 2.08 SEALANTS

- A. Sealants are categorized into "joint sealants" and "flashing sealants." Joint sealants are primarily used for vapor-sealing longitudinal seams and butt joints of insulation materials. Flashing sealants are primarily used for sealing jacket and mastic materials.
- B. Materials shall be as recommended by the insulation manufacturer and shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
- C. Joint Sealants:
  - 1. Permanently flexible, elastomeric sealant.
    - a. Service Temperature Range: Minus 150 to plus 250 deg F
    - b. Color: White or gray.
  - 2. Sealant shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less.
- D. FSK and Metal Jacket Flashing Sealants:
  - 1. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
  - 2. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F
  - 3. Color: Aluminum.
  - 4. Sealant shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less.

- E. ASJ Flashing Sealants and PVDC and PVC Jacket Flashing Sealants:
  - 1. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
  - 2. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F
  - 3. Color: White.
  - 4. Sealant shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less.

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that piping has been tested before applying insulation materials.
- B. Verify that surfaces are clean and dry, with all foreign material removed. This includes but is not limited to water, oil, dirt, scale and rust.
- D. Only insulation and finish materials including adhesive cements and mastic which conform to the requirements of all-governing codes and ordinances shall be used.

### 3.02 INSTALLATION

- A. Division 1 – Quality Control: Install materials in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and the best practice of the trade.
- B. Install in accordance with NAIMA National Insulation Standards.
- C. Insulation on all piping shall be vapor sealed. On insulated piping with vapor barrier, insulate all fittings, valves, unions, flanges, strainers, flexible connections, and expansion joints. Vapor seal all exposed edges with jacket material and vapor barrier type adhesive.
- D. Repair or replace any existing insulation and surface finish disturbed or damaged by installation of new work using materials to match existing.
- E. Apply insulation to completely cover metal surface. Surface shall be applied to present a tight, smooth appearance.
- F. Exposed Piping: Locate insulation and cover seams in least visible locations.
- G. For hot piping conveying fluids 140 degrees F or less, and on insulated piping without vapor barrier, do not insulate flanges and unions at equipment, but bevel and seal ends of insulation.
- H. For hot piping conveying fluids over 140 degrees F, insulate flanges and unions at equipment.
- I. Neatly finish insulation at supports, protrusions, and interruptions.
- J. Do not use staples on vapor barrier insulation.
- K. Jackets:

1. Indoor, Concealed Applications: Insulated pipes conveying fluids above ambient temperature shall have standard jackets, with vapor barrier, factory-applied or field-applied. Insulate fittings, joints, and valves with insulation of like material and thickness as adjoining pipe, and finish with glass cloth and adhesive. PVC jackets may be used
  2. Indoor, Concealed Applications: Insulated dual-temperature pipes or pipes conveying fluids below ambient temperature shall have vapor barrier jackets, factory-applied. Insulate fittings, joints, and valves with molded insulation of like material and thickness as adjacent pipe, and finish with glass cloth and vapor barrier adhesive.
  3. Indoor, Exposed Applications: For pipe exposed in mechanical equipment rooms or in finished spaces, insulate and jacket as for concealed applications, and finish with PVC jackets.
  4. Outdoor Applications (not used): Cover with .016" aluminum jacket with 2" overlap at seams and joints. Lay joints downward to shed water. Secure with 3/8" seals and straps at joints and aluminum bands on 8" centers between joints. Or cover ASJ vapor barrier jacket - Cover factory interior jacket with Alumaguard 60 .06" foil faced rubberized bitumen membrane
- L. Inserts and Shields:
1. Application: All insulated Piping 2 inches diameter or larger shall be installed with inserts and shields as follows.
  2. Shields: Galvanized steel between pipe hangers or pipe hanger rolls and inserts.
  3. Insert location: Between support shield and piping and under the finish jacket.
  4. Insert configuration: Minimum 6 inches long, of same thickness and contour as adjoining insulation; may be factory fabricated.
  5. Insert material: Hydrous calcium silicate insulation or other heavy density insulating material suitable for the planned temperature range.
- M. Continue insulation through walls, sleeves, pipe hangers, and other pipe penetrations. Finish at supports, protrusions, and interruptions.
- N. Underground applications (not used):  
The internal pipe shall be hydrostatically tested to 150 psig or 1½ times the operating pressure, whichever is greater. Insulation shall then be poured in place into the field weld area. All field applied insulation shall be placed only in straight sections. Field insulation of fittings shall not be acceptable. The mold for the polyurethane shall be made of clear adhesive backed polyester film. The installer shall seal the field joint area with a heat shrinkable adhesive backed wrap or with wrappings of glass reinforcement fully saturated with a catalyzed resin identical in properties to the factory-applied resin. Backfilling shall not begin until the heat shrink wrap has cooled or until the FRP lay-up has cured. All insulation and coating materials for making the field joint shall be furnished by the piping system manufacture

### 3.03 PENETRATIONS

- A. Insulation Installation at Roof Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through roof penetrations.

1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
  2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation above roof surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
  3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside roof flashing at least 2 inches below top of roof flashing.
  4. Seal jacket to roof flashing with flashing sealant.
- B. Insulation Installation at Underground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Terminate insulation flush with sleeve seal. Seal terminations with flashing sealant.
- C. Insulation Installation at Above ground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through wall penetrations.
1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
  2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation inside wall surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
  3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside wall flashing and overlap wall flashing at least 2 inches (50 mm).
  4. Seal jacket to wall flashing with flashing sealant.
- D. Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated): Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.
- E. Insulation Installation at Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through penetrations of fire-rated walls and partitions.
1. Comply with requirements in Division 7 Section "Through-Penetration Firestop Systems" for firestopping and fire-resistive joint sealers.
- F. Insulation Installation at Floor Penetrations:
1. Pipe: Install insulation continuously through floor penetrations.
  2. Seal penetrations through fire-rated assemblies. Comply with requirements in Division 7 Section "Through-Penetration Firestop Systems."

### 3.04 GENERAL PIPE INSULATION INSTALLATION

- A. Requirements in this article generally apply to all insulation materials except where more specific requirements are specified in various pipe insulation material installation articles.
- B. Insulation Installation on Fittings, Valves, Strainers, Flanges, and Unions:

1. Install insulation over fittings, valves, strainers, flanges, unions, and other specialties with continuous thermal and vapor-retarder integrity unless otherwise indicated.
  2. Insulate pipe elbows using preformed fitting insulation or mitered fittings made from same material and density as adjacent pipe insulation. Each piece shall be butted tightly against adjoining piece and bonded with adhesive. Fill joints, seams, voids, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement finished to a smooth, hard, and uniform contour that is uniform with adjoining pipe insulation.
  3. Insulate tee fittings with preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Cut sectional pipe insulation to fit. Butt each section closely to the next and hold in place with tie wire. Bond pieces with adhesive.
  4. Insulate valves using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. For valves, insulate up to and including the bonnets, valve stuffing-box studs, bolts, and nuts. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement.
  5. Insulate strainers using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement. Insulate strainers so strainer basket flange or plug can be easily removed and replaced without damaging the insulation and jacket. Provide a removable reusable insulation cover. For below-ambient services, provide a design that maintains vapor barrier.
  6. Insulate flanges and unions using a section of oversized preformed pipe insulation. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker.
  7. Cover segmented insulated surfaces with a layer of finishing cement and coat with a mastic. Install vapor-barrier mastic for below-ambient services and a breather mastic for above-ambient services. Reinforce the mastic with fabric-reinforcing mesh. Trowel the mastic to a smooth and well-shaped contour.
  8. For services not specified to receive a field-applied jacket except for flexible elastomeric and polyolefin, install fitted PVC cover over elbows, tees, strainers, valves, flanges, and unions. Terminate ends with PVC end caps. Tape PVC covers to adjoining insulation facing using PVC tape.
  9. Stencil or label the outside insulation jacket of each union with the word "union." Match size and color of pipe labels.
- C. Insulate instrument connections for thermometers, pressure gages, pressure temperature taps, test connections, flow meters, sensors, switches, and transmitters on insulated pipes. Shape insulation at these connections by tapering it to and around the connection with insulating cement and finish with finishing cement, mastic, and flashing sealant.
- D. Install removable insulation covers at locations indicated. Installation shall conform to the following:
1. Make removable flange and union insulation from sectional pipe insulation of same thickness as that on adjoining pipe. Install same insulation jacket as adjoining pipe insulation.

2. When flange and union covers are made from sectional pipe insulation, extend insulation from flanges or union long at least two times the insulation thickness over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of flange or union. Secure flange cover in place with stainless-steel or aluminum bands. Select band material compatible with insulation and jacket.
3. Construct removable valve insulation covers in same manner as for flanges, except divide the two-part section on the vertical center line of valve body.
4. When covers are made from block insulation, make two halves, each consisting of mitered blocks wired to stainless-steel fabric. Secure this wire frame, with its attached insulation, to flanges with tie wire. Extend insulation at least 2 inches (50 mm) over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of valve. Fill space between flange or union cover and pipe insulation with insulating cement. Finish cover assembly with insulating cement applied in two coats. After first coat is dry, apply and trowel second coat to a smooth finish.

### 3.05 INSULATION SCHEDULE

Refer to the insulation schedule below for pipe insulation thickness by system. Not all systems are necessarily included in this project

INSULATION SCHEDULE							
SERVICE	INSULATION	TEMPERATURE	NOMINAL PIPE SIZE				
	TYPE	RANGE (F°)	<1"	1" to < 1 1/2"	1 1/2" to < 4"	4" to < 8"	≥ 8"
Hot Water (HW)	A	INSULATION THICKNESS					
		> 350°	4 1/2	5	5	5	5
		251°-350°	3	4	4	4 1/2	4 1/2
		201°-250°	2 1/2	2 1/2	2 1/2	3	3
		141°-200°	1 1/2	1 1/2	2	2	2
		105°-140°	1	1	1 1/2	1 1/2	1 1/2
Buried (HW)	C	> 350°	4 1/2	5	5	5	5
		251°-350°	3	4	4	4 1/2	4 1/2
		201°-250°	2 1/2	2 1/2	2 1/2	3	3
		141°-200°	2	2	2 1/2	2 1/2	2 1/2
		105°-140°	1 1/2	1 1/2	2	2	2
Chilled Water (CHW)	A	40° - 60°	1/2	1/2	1	1	1
		< 40°	1/2	1	1	1	1
Buried (CHW)	C	40° - 60°	1	1 1/2	1 1/2	1 1/2	1 1/2
		< 40°	1	1 1/2	1 1/2	1 1/2	1 1/2
Steam & Condensate	A	Low Pressure	2 1/2	2 1/2	2 1/2	3	3
Steam Condensate	A	Low Pressure	2 1/2	2 1/2	2 1/2	3	3
Condensate Drains	A	All	1/2	1/2	1	1	1
Cold Water Make up	A	All	1/2	1/2	1	1	1
Refrigerant Hot Gas	C	All	1 1/2	1 1/2	2	2	2
Humidifier Steam	A	All	2 1/2	2 1/2	2 1/2	3	3
Refrigerant Suction	C	All	1/2	1/2	1	1	1

END OF SECTION

**SECTION 23 09 01 – DIRECT DIGITAL CONTROL EQUIPMENT****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. These basic Mechanical Requirements apply to all Division 23 Sections.
- B. 1.2 The work of this Section consists of providing of all materials, labor and equipment and the like necessary and/or required for the complete execution of all mechanical for this project, as required by the contract documents.

**1.2 Qualifications of Bidder**

- A. All bidders must be building automation contractors in the business of installing direct digital control building automation systems for a minimum of 5 years.
- B. All bidders must have a service and installation office in the Westchester area.
- C. All bidders must be authorized distributors or branch offices of the manufacturers specified.
- D. All bidders must have a trained staff of application engineers, who have been certified by the manufacturer in the configuration, programming and service of the automation system.
- E. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following school district standard manufacture:
  - 1. Andover Controls Corporation – Schneider Electric

**1.3 Scope of Work**

- A. Except as otherwise noted, the control system shall consist of all Ethernet Network Controllers, Standalone Digital Control Units, software, sensors, transducers, relays, valves, dampers, valve and damper operators, control panels, and other accessory equipment, along with a complete system of electrical interlocking wiring to fill the intent of the specification and provide for a complete and operable system. Unless otherwise specified, provide operators for equipment such as dampers and valves if the equipment manufacturer does not provide these. Coordinate requirements with the mechanical contractors.
- B. The Building Automation System (BAS) contractor shall review and study all HVAC drawings and the entire specification to familiarize himself with the equipment and system operation, and to verify the quantities and types of dampers, operators, alarms, controllers etc. to be provided. ALL NEW TEMPERATURE CONTROLS EQUIPMENT SHALL BE ANDOVER CONTINUUM SERIES VERSION 1.9. OR LATER.
- C. All interlocking, wiring and installation of control devices associated with the equipment listed below shall be provided under this Contract. When the BAS system is fully installed and operational, the BAS Contractor and representatives of the Owner will review and check out the system. At that time, the BAS contractor shall demonstrate the operation of the system and prove that it complies with the intent of the drawings and specifications.

- D. The Contractor shall furnish and install a complete building automation system including all necessary hardware, network wiring, all operating applications software, and all programming necessary to perform the control sequences of operation as called for in the specifications. The scope of work shall include control over and graphic representation all new mechanical and plumbing equipment installed as part of this project. At a minimum, provide controls for the following:
1. Split system air handling units
  2. Energy Recovery Ventilators
  3. All coils and control valves
  4. All VAV boxes
  5. Toilet, general, return, fan controls
  6. Hot water pumps primary and secondary pumps
  7. Condensate pumps
  8. Boilers, Burners
  9. Frequency controllers, HOA's and starters
  10. Fin tube radiation and unit heaters control valves.
  11. Supplemental AC systems
  12. Domestic hot water recirc pumps
  13. Domestic hot water mixing valves and safeties.
  14. Power wiring to DDC devices and BAS panels.
  15. Auxiliary high temp sensor and alarm for all data closets.
  16. High water alarm for all condensate drain pans with unit shut down
  17. Flow meter output for domestic hot water meters. Set up a spread sheet report to record domestic HW use in gallons.
- E. Provide services and manpower necessary for commissioning of system in coordination with the HVAC Contractor, Balancing Contractor and Owner's representative.
- F. All work performed under this section of the specifications will comply with all codes, laws and governing bodies. If this specification and associated drawings exceed governing code requirements, the specification will govern. The Contractor shall obtain and pay for all necessary construction permits and licenses.
- G. Provide all labor and materials to perform all programming necessary at the owners new operator work station to be located in the in Secure Storage 036 to graphically represent and control EACH AND EVERY PIECE OF EQUIPMENT IN THE LISTS ABOVE. This shall include, all input and output status points, and functional points.

#### 1.4 System Description

- A. The Building Automation System (BAS) shall consist of PC-based workstation and microcomputer controllers of modular design providing distributed processing capability, and allowing future expansion of 10%, both input/output points and processing/control functions without having to add hardware, software or controllers. For this project the system shall consist of the following components:
- B. Operator Workstations.

The BAS Contractor shall furnish (1) Operator Workstation Computer and (1) printer as described in Part 2 of the specification. This workstation must be running the standard workstation software developed and tested by the manufacturer of the network controllers and the standalone controllers. No third party front-end workstation software will be acceptable.

Provide all necessary software and licensing as required. **Locate the BMS interface in Secure Storage 036.**

C. Ethernet-based Network Controllers.

1. The BAS Contractor shall furnish Ethernet-based network controllers as described in Part 2 of the specification. These controllers will connect directly to the Operator Workstation over Ethernet, provide communication to the Standalone Digital Control Units and/or other Input/Output Modules and serve as a gateway to equipment furnished by others (if applicable).

D. Standalone Digital Control Units (SDCUs).

1. Provide the necessary quantity and types of SDCUs to meet the requirements of the project for mechanical equipment control including air handlers, control, and terminal unit control. Each SDCU will operate completely standalone, containing all of the I/O and programs to control its associated equipment.

## 1.5 Work by Others

A. The BAS Contractor shall coordinate with other trade contractors performing work on this project necessary to achieve a complete installation. To that end, the contractor shall consult the drawings and specifications for all other trades to determine the nature and extent of work by others.

B. The BAS Contractor shall furnish all control valves, sensor wells, flow meters and other similar equipment for installation by the Mechanical Contractor.

C. The BAS Contractor shall provide field supervision to the designated contractor for the installation of the following as required:

1. Automatic control dampers
2. Fire/smoke dampers
3. Sheet metal baffle plates to eliminate stratification.

D. The Electrical Contractor shall provide:

1. All power wiring to motors, heat trace, junction boxes for power to BAS panels.
2. Furnish smoke detectors and wire to the building fire alarm system. HVAC Contractor to mount devices. BAS Contractor to hardwire to fan shut down. BAS contractor to coordinate this with the electrical contractor.

E. The BAS Contractor shall provide:

1. All power wiring to all smoke damper actuators for smoke control sequence.

## 1.6 Code Compliance

A. Provide BAS components and ancillary equipment, which are UL-916 listed and labeled.

- B. All equipment or piping used in conditioned air streams, spaces or return air plenums shall comply with NFPA 90A Flame/Smoke/Fuel contribution rating of 25/50/0 and all applicable building codes or requirements.
- C. All wiring shall conform to the National Electrical Code.
- D. All smoke dampers shall be rated in accordance with UL 555S.
- E. Comply with FCC rules, Part 15 regarding Class A radiation for computing devices and low power communication equipment operating in commercial environments.
- F. Comply with FCC, Part 68 rules for telephone modems and data sets.

#### **1.7 Submittals**

- A. All shop drawings shall be prepared in AutoCAD software. In addition to the drawings, the Contractor shall furnish a diskette containing the identical information. Drawings shall be B size or larger.
- B. Shop drawings shall include a riser diagram depicting locations of all controllers and workstations, with associated network wiring. Also included shall be individual schematics of each mechanical system showing all connected points with reference to their associated controller. Typical will be allowed where appropriate.
- C. Submittal data shall contain manufacturer's data on all hardware and software products required by the specification. Valve, damper and air flow station schedules shall indicate size, configuration, capacity and location of all equipment.
- D. Software submittals shall contain narrative descriptions of sequences of operation, program listings, point lists, and a complete description of the graphics, reports, alarms and configuration to be furnished with the workstation software. Information shall be bound or in a three-ring binder with an index and tabs. All literature, descriptions, equipment spec sheets, sequences etc shall be on 8 1/2 x 11 or larger sized sheets. All details diagrams and schematics shall be on 11X17 sized sheets or larger.
- E. Submit five (5) copies of submittal data and shop drawings to the Engineer for review prior to ordering or fabrication of the equipment. The Contractor prior to submitting shall check all documents for accuracy.
- F. The Engineer will make corrections, if required, and return to the Contractor. The Contractor will then resubmit with the corrected or additional data. This procedure shall be repeated until all corrections are made to the satisfaction of the Engineer and the submittals are fully approved.
- G. Submit a training class syllabus and training manual for review with the temperature controls submittal. The training manual shall be custom made for this project. Manufacturers brochures, and installation manuals will not be acceptable for this purpose. Submit a type written overview and a written summary of each topic to be covered. The document shall be suitable for a system operator to use as a quick reference guide to basic system operation as applicable for this project. Refer to section 1.9 paragraph B, for the minimum requirement of training to be included.

## 1.8 System Startup & Commissioning

- A. Each point in the system shall be tested for both hardware and software functionality. In addition, each mechanical and electrical system under control of the BAS will be tested against the appropriate sequence of operation specified herein. Successful completion of the system test shall constitute the beginning of the warranty period. A written report will be submitted to the owner indicating that the installed system functions in accordance with the plans and specifications.
- B. The BAS contractor shall commission and set in operating condition all major equipment and systems, such as the chilled water, hot water and all air handling systems, in the presence of the equipment manufacturer's representatives, as applicable, and the Owner and Architect's representatives.
- C. The BAS Contractor shall provide all manpower and engineering services required to assist the HVAC Contractor and Balancing Contractor in testing, adjusting, and balancing all systems in the building. The BAS Contractor shall have a trained technician available on request during the balancing of the systems. The BAS Contractor shall coordinate all requirements to provide a complete air balance with the Balancing Contractor and shall include all labor and materials in his contract.

## 1.9 Training

- A. The BAS Contractor shall provide both on-site training to the Owner's representative and maintenance personnel per the following description:
- B. On-site training shall consist of a minimum of (3) separate 4 hour sessions of hands-on instruction geared at the operation and maintenance of the systems. The sessions shall be scheduled at the beginning of substantial completion and spaced out over the first year of owner use. The first session curriculum shall include
  - 1. System Overview
  - 2. System Software and Operation
    - a. System access
    - b. Software features overview
    - c. Changing set-points and other attributes
    - d. Scheduling
    - e. Editing programmed variables
    - f. Displaying color graphics
    - g. [Setting up reports](#)
    - h. Running reports
    - i. Workstation maintenance
    - j. Application programming
  - 3. Operational sequences including start-up, shutdown, adjusting and changing system variables. These items shall be reviewed for all equipment installed under this project and or connected to the BMS under this project.
  - 4. Equipment and hardware overview and maintenance. This shall include:
    - a. Review of all hardware installed under this project
    - b. Review of a system schematic.

- c. Review of where each controller is located in the building and what its function is. This shall include a walking, hands-on tour and demonstration of each and every controller.

#### **1.10 Operating and Maintenance Manuals**

- A. The operation and maintenance manuals shall contain all information necessary for the operation, maintenance, replacement, installation, and parts procurement for the entire BAS. This documentation shall include specific part numbers and software versions and dates. A complete list of recommended spare parts shall be included with the lead-time and expected frequency of use of each part clearly identified.
- B. Following project completion and testing, the BAS contractor will submit as-built drawings reflecting the exact installation of the system. The as-built documentation shall also include a copy of all application software both in written form and on diskette.

#### **1.11 Warranty**

- A. The BAS contractor shall warrant the system for 12 months after system acceptance and beneficial use by the owner. During the warranty period, the BAS contractor shall be responsible for all necessary revisions to the software as required to provide a complete and workable system consistent with the letter and intent of the Sequence of Operation section of the specification.
- B. Updates to the manufacturer's software shall be provided at no charge during the warranty period.

#### **1.12 Programming**

- A. Sequence of operations: The controls contractor shall review the sequences of operation given in section 23 09 93 of this specification. "Canned", preprogrammed, or typical sequences by the manufacture may not be acceptable and shall only be used if accepted by the engineer. Otherwise the controls contractor shall be capable of and responsible for providing custom programming, hardware, software, and labor as required to achieve the sequences of operation as specified.

#### **1.13 System Architecture**

- A. General
- B. The Building Automation System (BAS) shall consist of all new Network Control Units (NCUs), a family of Standalone Digital Control Units (SDCUs), Input/Output Unit Modules (IOU Modules), Operator Workstations (OWs), and one File Server to support system configurations where more than one operator workstation is required. The BAS shall provide control, alarm detection, scheduling, reporting and information management for the entire class room building and all new and existing equipment in the building, and Wide Area Network (WAN) if applicable, from a single ODBC-compliant database
- C. Level 1 Network Description
- D. Level 1, the main backbone of the system, shall be an Ethernet LAN/WAN. Network Control Units, Operator Workstations, and the Central File Server shall connect directly to this network without the need for Gateway devices. The contractor shall visit the site and review the existing

Andover temperature controls equipment installed in the building and in the physical plant. Certain of these controllers may be suitable for reuse. The network shall be an extension of the existing in the building as required to achieve a complete system,

- E. Level 2 Network Description
- F. Level 2 of the system shall consist of one or more field buses managed by the Network Control Units. The Level 2 field buses may consist of one or both of the following types:
  - G. An RS485, token passing bus that supports up to 127 Standalone Digital Control Units (SDCUs) for operation of HVAC equipment and lighting, or
  - H. An RS485 field bus that supports up to 32 devices from a family of plug-in, IOU modules.
  - I. These IOU modules may be mounted within the NCU enclosure or remotely mounted via a single, twisted, shielded pair of wires.
  - J. The BAS shall be capable of being segmented, through software, into multiple local area networks (LANs) distributed over a wide area network (WAN), sharing a single file server. This enables workstations to manage a single LAN (or building), and/or the entire system with all devices being assured of being updated by and sharing the most current database. In the case of a single workstation system, the workstation shall contain the entire database – with no need for a separate file server.
- K. Standard Network Support
- L. All NCUs, Workstation(s) and File Server shall be capable of residing directly on the owner's Ethernet TCP/IP LAN/WAN with no required gateways. Furthermore, the NCU's, Workstation(s) and File Server shall be capable of using standard, commercially available, off-the-shelf Ethernet infrastructure components such as routers, switches and hubs. With this design the owner may utilize the investment of an existing or new enterprise network or structured cabling system. This also allows the option of the maintenance of the LAN/WAN to be performed by the owner's Information Systems Department as all devices utilize standard TCP/IP components.
- M. Remote Communications
- N. In addition to the above LAN/WAN architecture support, the same workstation software (front end) must be capable of managing remote systems via standard dial-up phone lines as a standard component of the software. Front-end "add-on" software modules to perform remote site communication shall not be acceptable.
- O. The remote system architecture shall consist of two levels providing control, alarm detection, reporting and information management for the remote facility. Level 1 shall contain the Remote Site Control Unit, communicating to the remotely located, Operator Workstation(s) through the use of a modem and a standard dial-up phone line. Level 2 shall consist of one or more field buses controlled by the RSCU. The field buses may consist of one or both of two types:
  - P. 1) An RS485, token passing bus that supports up to 127 Standalone Digital Control Units (SDCUs) for operation of HVAC equipment and lighting, or

- Q. 2) An RS485 field bus that supports up to 32 devices from a family of plug-in, IOU modules that may be mounted within the RSCU enclosure or remotely mounted on a single, twisted, shielded pair of wires.
- R. System Expansion
- S. The BAS system shall be scalable and expandable at all levels of the system using the same software interface, and the same Level 1 and Level 2 controllers. Systems that require replacement of either the workstation software or field controllers in order to expand the system shall not be acceptable.
- T. The BAS shall be expandable to include Security and Access Control functions at any time in the future with no additional workstations, front-end software or Level 1 controllers required. Standalone Digital Control Units or IOU modules shall be able to be added to the existing Level 1 controller's field bus(es), to perform security and card access applications. In this way, an owner's existing investment in wiring infrastructure may be leveraged and the cost and inconvenience of adding new field bus wiring will be minimized.
- U. Additionally, an integrated video badging option must be able to be included with no additional workstations required. This photo ID option must share the same database as the BAS in order to eliminate the need for updating multiple databases.
- V. The system shall use the same application programming language for all levels: Operator Workstation, Network Control Unit, Remote Site Control Unit and Standalone Digital Control Unit. Furthermore, this single programming language shall be used for all applications: environmental control, card access control, intrusion detection and security, lighting control, leak detection / underground storage tank monitoring, and digital data communication interfaces to third party microprocessor-based devices.
- W. Support For Open Systems Protocols
- The BAS design must include solutions for the integration of the following "open systems" protocols: BACnet, LonTalk™, and digital data communication to third party microprocessors such as chiller controllers, fire panels and variable frequency drives (VFDs).
- X. The system shall also provide the ability to program custom ASCII communication drivers, that will reside in the NCU, for communication to third party systems and devices. These drivers will provide real time monitoring and control of the third party systems.

#### **1.14 Network Control Units (NCUs)**

- A. Network Control Units shall be microprocessor based, multi-tasking, multi-user, and employ a real time operating system. Each NCU control panel shall consist of modular hardware including power supply, CPU board, and input/output modules. A sufficient number of NCUs shall be supplied to fully meet the requirements of this specification and the attached point list. NCUs for telephone dialup sites shall be of the same design as the Ethernet control units but without the plug-in Ethernet network interface card (NIC), i.e., NCUs, which include a NIC, shall be interchangeable whether used on a LAN/WAN or a dialup site.
- B. Webserver Functionality
- All NCUs on the Ethernet TCP/IP LAN/WAN shall be capable, out-of-the box, to be set up as a Web Server. The NCU shall have the ability to store HTML code and "serve" pages to a web

browser. This provides the ability for any computing device utilizing a TCP/IP Ethernet connection and capable of running a standard Internet browser (Microsoft Internet Explorer™, Netscape Navigator™, etc.) to access real-time data from the entire BAS via any NCUs.

Graphics and text-based web pages shall be constructed using standard HTML code. The interface shall allow the user to choose any of the standard text or graphics-based HTML editors for page creation. It shall also allow the operator to generate custom graphical pages and forms.

The WEB server interface shall be capable of password security, including validation of the requesting PC's IP address. The WEB server interface shall allow the sharing of data or information between any controller, or process or network interface (BACnet, LonTalk and TCP/IP) that the BMS has knowledge of, regardless of where the point is connected on the BAS network or where it is acquired from.

The BAS network controller must act directly as the WEB server. It must directly generate the HTML code to the requesting user (i.e. WEB browser), eliminating the need for and reliance on any PC-based WEB server hardware or software. To simplify graphic image space allocation, HTML graphic images, if desired, shall be stored on any shared network device. The BAS WEB server shall have the ability to acquire any necessary graphics using standard pathing syntax within the HTML code mounted within the BAS WEB server. External WEB server hardware and software are not acceptable.

#### C. Hardware Specifications

##### 1. Memory:

A minimum of 64MB of RAM shall be provided for NCUs with expansion up to 128 MB. The 64 MB versions shall include a floating-point math co-processor.

##### 2. Communication Ports:

Each NCU shall provide communication to both the Workstation(s) and the field buses. In addition, each NCU must have at least 3 other communications ports that support a telephone modem, portable service tool, serial printer and connection to third party controllers such as a chiller control panel. On a LAN/WAN system the NCU shall be provided with a 10Mbps plug-in Ethernet TCP/IP network interface card (NIC).

##### 3. Input/Output (I/O):

Each NCU shall support the addition of the following types of inputs and outputs:

- Digital Inputs for status/alarm contacts
- Counter Inputs for summing pulses from meters.
- Thermistor inputs for measuring temperatures in space, ducts and thermowells.
- Analog inputs for pressure, humidity, flow and position measurements.
- Digital Outputs for on/off equipment control.
- Analog Outputs for valve and damper position control, and capacity control of primary equipment including all air handler and fan coil control valves

##### 4. Modular Expandability:

The system shall employ a modular I/O design to allow easy expansion. Input and output capacity is to be provided through plug-in modules of various types or DIN-mountable IOU modules. It shall be possible to combine I/O modules as desired to meet the I/O requirements for individual control applications.

##### 5. Hardware Override Switches:

All digital output units shall include three position manual override switches to allow selection of the ON, OFF, or AUTO output state. These switches shall be built into the unit and shall provide feedback to the controller so that the position of the override switch can be obtained through software. In addition each analog output shall be equipped with an override potentiometer to allow manual adjustment of the analog output signal over its full range, when the 3 position manual override switch is placed in the ON position.

6. Local Status Indicator Lamps:

Provide as a minimum LED indication of CPU status, Ethernet LAN status, and field bus status. For each output, provide LED indication of the value of the output (On/Off). For each output module provide an LED which gives a visual indication of whether any outputs on the module are manually overridden.

7. Real Time Clock (RTC):

Each NCU shall include a battery-backed, real time clock, accurate to 10 seconds per day. The RTC shall provide the following: time of day, day, month, year, and day of week. In normal operation the system clock will be based on the frequency of the AC power. The system shall automatically correct for daylight savings time and leap years and be Year 2000 compliant.

8. Power Supply:

The power supply for the NCUs shall be auto sensing, 120-220VAC, 60/50 Hz power, with a tolerance of +/- 20%. Line voltage below the operating range of the system shall be considered outages. The controller shall contain over voltage surge protection, and require no additional AC power signal conditioning. Optionally, if indicated on the drawings, the power supply shall accept an input voltage of (-48 VDC).

9. Automatic Restart After Power Failure:

Upon restoration of power after an outage, the ECU shall automatically and without human intervention: update all monitored functions; resume operation based on current, synchronized time and status, and implement special start-up strategies as required.

10. Battery backup:

Each NCU with the standard 120-220VAC power supply shall include a programmable DC power backup system rated for a minimum of 72 hours of battery backup to maintain all volatile memory or, a minimum of 2 hours of full UPS including modem power. This power backup system shall be configurable such that at the end of a settable timeframe (such as 1 hour) of running on full UPS, the unit will shut off full UPS and switch to memory retention-only mode for the remainder of the battery power. The system shall allow the simple addition of more batteries to extend the above minimum battery backup times.

D. Software Specifications

1. General.

The NCU shall contain flash ROM as the resident operating system. Application software will be RAM resident. Application software will only be limited by the amount of RAM memory. There will be no restrictions placed on the type of application programs in the system. Each NCU shall be capable of parallel processing, executing all control programs simultaneously. Any program may affect the operation of any other program. Each program shall have the full access of all I/O facilities of the processor. This execution of control function shall not be interrupted due to normal user

communications including interrogation, program entry, printout of the program for storage, etc.

2. User Programming Language:

The application software shall be user programmable. This includes all strategies, sequences of operation, control algorithms, parameters, and setpoints. The source program shall be English language-based and programmable by the user. The language shall be structured to allow for the easy configuration of control programs, schedules, alarms, reports, telecommunications, local displays, mathematical calculations, passwords, and histories. The language shall be self-documenting. Users shall be able to place comments anywhere in the body of a program. Program listings shall be configurable by the user in logical groupings.

E. Control Software:

1. The NCU shall have the ability to perform the following pre-tested control algorithms:

- a. Proportional, Integral plus Derivative Control (PID)
- b. Self Tuning PID
- c. Two Position Control
- d. Digital Filter
- e. Ratio Calculator
- f. Equipment Cycling Protection

2. Mathematical Functions:

- a. Each controller shall be capable of performing basic mathematical functions (+, -, \*, /), squares, square roots, exponential, logarithms, Boolean logic statements, or combinations of both. The controllers shall be capable of performing complex logical statements including operators such as >, <, =, and, or, exclusive or, etc. These must be able to be used in the same equations with the mathematical operators and nested up to five parentheses deep.

3. Energy Management Applications:

- a. NCUs shall have the ability to perform any or all of the following energy management routines:
- b. Time of Day Scheduling
- c. Calendar Based Scheduling
- d. Holiday Scheduling
- e. Temporary Schedule Overrides
- f. Optimal Start
- g. Optimal Stop
- h. Night Setback Control
- i. Enthalpy Switchover (Economizer)
- j. Peak Demand Limiting
- k. Temperature Compensated Duty Cycling
- l. CFM Tracking
- m. Heating/Cooling Interlock
- n. Free Cooling
- o. Hot Water Reset
- p. HW water Reset

- q. Boiler Sequencing
  - r. Domestic hot water use
4. History Logging:
- a. Each controller shall be capable of logging any system variable over user defined time intervals ranging from 1 second to 1440 minutes. Any system variables (inputs, outputs, math calculations, flags, etc.) can be logged in history. A maximum of 32767 values can be stored in each log. Each log can record either the instantaneous, average, minimum or maximum value of the point. Logs can be automatic or manual. Logged data shall be downloadable to the Operator Workstation for long term archiving based upon user-defined time intervals, or manual command.
5. Alarm Management:
- a. For each system point, alarms can be created based on high/low limits or conditional expressions. All alarms will be tested each scan of the NCU and can result in the display of one or more alarm messages or reports. Up to 8 alarms can be configured for each point in the controller. Messages and reports can be sent to a local terminal, to the front-end workstation(s), or via modem to a remote-computing device. Alarms will be generated based on their priority. A minimum of 255 priority levels shall be provided. If communication with the Operator Workstation is temporarily interrupted, the alarm will be buffered in the NCU. When communications return, the alarm will be transmitted to the Operator Workstation if the point is still in the alarm condition.
6. Reporting.
- a. The NCU shall be able to generate user-definable reports to a locally connected printer or terminal. The reports shall contain any combination of text and system variables. Report templates shall be able to be created by users in a word processing environment. Reports can be displayed based on any logical condition or through a user command.

### **1.15 Standalone Digital Control Units (SDCUs)**

**A. General:**

- 1. Standalone Digital Control Units shall provide control of HVAC and lighting. Each controller shall have its own control programs and will continue to operate in the event of a failure or communication loss to its associated NCU.

**B. Memory:**

- 1. Control programs shall be stored in battery backed-up RAM and EPROM. Each controller shall have a minimum of 32K bytes of user RAM memory and 128K bytes of EPROM.

**C. Communication Ports:**

- 1. SDCUs shall provide a communication port to the field bus. In addition, a port shall be provided for connection of a portable service tool to support local commissioning and parameter changes with or without the NCU online. It shall be possible from a service

port on any SDCU to view, enable/disable, and modify values of any point or program on any controller on the local field bus, any NCU or any SDCU on a different field bus.

D. Input/Output:

1. Each SDCU shall support the addition of the following types of inputs and outputs:

- a. Digital Inputs for status/alarm contacts
- b. Counter Inputs for summing pulses from meters.
- c. Thermistor Inputs for measuring temperatures in space, ducts and thermowells.
- d. Analog inputs for pressure, humidity, flow and position measurements.
- e. Digital Outputs for on/off equipment control.
- f. Analog Outputs for valve and damper position control, and capacity control of primary equipment.

E. Expandability:

1. Input and output capacity shall be expandable through the use of plug-in modules. A minimum of two modules shall be added to the base SDCU before additional power is required.

F. Networking:

1. Each SDCU will be able to exchange information on a peer to peer basis with other Standalone Digital Control Units during each field bus scan. Each SDCU shall be capable of storing and referencing global variables (on the LAN) with or without any workstations online. Each SDCU shall be able to have its program viewed and/or enabled/disabled either locally through a portable service tool or through a workstation connected to an NCU.

G. Indicator Lamps:

1. SDCUs will have as a minimum, LED indication of CPU status, and field bus status.

H. Real Time Clock (RTC):

1. An SDCU shall have a real time clock in either hardware or software. The accuracy shall be within 10 seconds per day. The RTC shall provide the following information: time of day, day, month, year, and day of week. Each SDCU shall receive a signal, every hour, over the network from the NCU which synchronizes all SDCU real time clocks.

I. Automatic Restart After Power Failure:

1. Upon restoration of power, the SDCU shall automatically and without human intervention, update all monitored functions, resume operation based on current, synchronized time and status, and implement special start-up strategies as required.

J. Battery Back Up:

1. Each SDCU shall have at least 3 years of battery back up to maintain all volatile memory.

K. Alarm Management:

1. For each system point, alarms can be created based on high/low limits or conditional expressions. All alarms will be tested each scan of the SDCU and can result in the display of one or more alarm messages or reports. Up to 8 alarms can be configured for each point in the controller enabling the escalation of the alarm priority (urgency) based upon which alarm(s) is/are triggered. Alarm messages can be sent to a local terminal or modem connected to an NCU or to the Operator's Workstation(s). Alarms will be generated based on their priority. A minimum of 255 priority levels shall be provided. If communication with the NCU is temporarily interrupted, the alarm will be buffered in the SDCU. When communications return, the alarm will be transmitted to the NCU if the point is still in the alarm condition.

L. Air Handler Controllers

1. AHU Controllers shall be capable of meeting the requirements of the sequence of operation found in the Execution portion of this specification and for future expansion.
2. AHU Controllers shall support all the necessary point inputs and outputs as required by the sequence and operate in a standalone fashion.
3. AHU Controllers shall be fully user programmable to allow for modification of the application software.
4. An LCD display shall be optionally available for readout of point values and to allow operators to change setpoints and system parameters.
5. A manual override switch shall be provided for all digital and analog outputs on the AHU Controller. The position of the switch shall be monitored in software and available for operator displays and alarm notification.

M. VAV Terminal Unit Controllers

1. VAV Terminal Unit Controllers shall support, but not be limited to the control of the following configurations of VAV boxes to address current requirements as described in the Execution portion of this specification, and for future expansion:
  - a. Single Duct Cooling Only
  - b. Single Duct Cooling with Reheat (Hot Water)
2. VAV Controllers for single duct applications will come equipped with a built-in actuator for modulation of the air damper. The actuator shall have a minimum torque rating of 35 in.-lb., and contain an override mechanism for manual positioning of the damper during startup and service. VAV Controllers shall contain an integral velocity sensor accurate to +/- 5% of the full range of the box's CFM rating. Each controller shall perform the sequence of operation described in Part 3 of this specification, and have the capability for time of day scheduling, occupancy mode control, after hours operation, lighting control, alarming, and trending. VAV Controllers shall be able to communicate with any other Standalone Digital Control Unit on the same field bus with or without communication to the NCU managing the field bus. Systems that fail to provide this (true peer-to-peer) capability will be limited to a maximum of 32 VAV controllers per field bus.
3. Unitary Controllers

- a. Unitary Controllers shall support, but not be limited to, the control of the following systems as described in the Execution portion of this specification, and for future expansion:
  - 1) Finned tube radiation
  - 2) Unit and cabinet heaters
- b. The I/O of each Unitary Controller shall contain the sufficient quantity and types as required to meet the sequence of operation found in the Execution portion of this specification. In addition, each controller shall have the capability for time of day scheduling, occupancy mode control, after hour operation, lighting control, alarming, and trending.

N. Lighting Controllers (Not Used)

1. Lighting controllers shall provide direct control of 20 Amp, 277 VAC lighting circuits using mechanically held, latching relays. Controllers will contain from 8 to 48 circuits per enclosure. Each controller shall also contain inputs for direct connection to light switches and motion detectors. Each controller shall have the capability for time of day scheduling, occupancy mode control, after hour operation, alarming, and trending.

O. Display Controllers

1. Display controllers are standalone, touch screen based operator interfaces. The controller shall be designed for flush mounting in a finished space, with a minimum display size of 9 x 9 inches. Software shall be user programmable allowing for custom graphical images that simulate floor plans, menus, equipment schematics along with associated real time point values coming from any NCU on the network. The touch screen display shall contain a minimum of 64 possible touch cells that permit user interaction for changing screens, modifying set-points or operating equipment. Systems that do not offer a display controller as specified must provide a panel mounted computer with touch screen capability as an alternative. All air handling units shall use display controllers.

## 1.16 Operator Workstation Requirements

A. General.

The BAS workstation software shall be configurable as a multi-workstation system where the database is located on a central file server in the physical plant. The client software on multi-workstation system shall access the file server database program via an Ethernet TCP/IP network running at either 10MBPS or 100MBPS. All Workstations shall be Pentium II based personal computers operating under the Microsoft NT operating system. The application software shall be capable of communication to all Network Control Units and Standalone Digital Control Units, feature high-resolution color graphics, alarming, reporting, and be user configurable for all data collection and data presentation functions.

For multi-workstation systems, a minimum of 256 workstations shall be allowed on the Ethernet network along with the central file server. In this client/server configuration, any changes or additions made from one workstation will automatically appear on all other workstations without the requirement for manual copying of files. Multi-workstation systems with no central database will not be acceptable. Multi-workstation systems with distributed/tiered file servers and a central (master) database will not be acceptable.

B. Workstation Requirements

The workstation shall consist of the following:

3.6 GHz Intel Core i7 processor with 64GB of RAM  
Microsoft Windows operating system (latest version compatible with BMS software)  
Serial port, parallel port  
10/100MBPS Ethernet NIC  
500 GB hard disk  
CD-ROM drive  
High resolution (minimum 1080 x 1920), 17" flat panel display  
Mouse  
Full function keyboard  
Audio sound card and speakers  
License agreement for all applicable software.

C. File Server Hardware Requirements.

The file server computer shall contain of the following:

3.6 GHz Intel Core 2 Duo processor with 64GB of RAM  
Microsoft Windows operating system (latest version compatible with BMS software)  
10/100MBPS Ethernet NIC  
500 GB hard disk  
CD-ROM drive  
Mouse  
Full function keyboard  
License agreement for all applicable software.  
Provide one Windows 2000-compatible 56 Kbaud modem.

D. Printer

Provide an a printer shall be a HP LaserJet.

E. Monitor;

1. The monitor shall be flat screen minimum of 17" , LED type, 1920x1080 resolution, 16:9 aspect ratio, VGA.

F. Workstation Software

1. General Description

The software architecture must be object-oriented in design, a true 32-bit application suite utilizing Microsoft's OLE, COM, DCOM and ODBC technologies. These technologies make it easy to fully utilize the power of the operating system to share, among applications (and therefore to the users of those applications), the wealth of data available from the BAS.

The workstation functions shall include monitoring and programming of all DDC controllers. Monitoring consists of alarming, reporting, graphic displays, long term data storage, automatic data collection, and operator-initiated control actions such as schedule and setpoint adjustments.

Programming of controllers shall be capable of being done either off-line or on-line from any operator workstation. All information will be available in graphic or text displays.

Graphic displays will feature animation effects to enhance the presentation of the data, to alert operators of problems, and to facilitate location of information throughout the DDC system. All operator functions shall be selectable through a mouse.

2. System Database

The files server database engine must be Microsoft SQL Server, or another ODBC-compliant, relational database program. This ODBC (Open Database Connectivity)-compliant database engine allows for an owner to utilize “their” choice of database and due to it’s “open” architecture, allows an owner to write custom applications and/or reports which communicate directly with the database avoiding data transfer routines to update other applications. The system database shall contain all point configurations and programs in each of the controllers that have been assigned to the network. In addition, the database will contain all workstation files including color graphic, alarm reports, text reports, historical data logs, schedules, and polling records.

3. User Interface

The BAS workstation software shall allow the creation of a custom, browser-style interface linked to the user that has logged into the workstation software. This interface shall support the creation of “hot-spots” that the user may link to view/edit any object in the system or run any object editor or configuration tool contained in the software. Furthermore, this interface must be able to be configured to become a user’s “PC Desktop” – with all the links that a user needs to run other applications. This, along with the Windows 10 user security capabilities, will enable a system administrator to setup workstation accounts that not only limit the capabilities of the user within the BAS software but may also limit what a user can do on the PC and/or LAN/WAN. This might be used to ensure, for example, that the user of an alarm monitoring workstation is unable to shutdown the active alarm viewer and/or unable to load software onto the PC.

4. User Security

The software shall be designed so that each user of the software can have a unique username and password. This username/password combination shall be linked to a set of capabilities within the software, set by and editable only by, a system administrator. The sets of capabilities shall range from View only, Acknowledge alarms, Enable/disable and change values, Program, and Administer. The system shall allow the above capabilities to be applied independently to each and every class of object in the system. The system must allow a minimum of 256 users to be configured per workstation. There shall be an inactivity timer adjustable in software that automatically logs off the current operator after the timer has expired.

5. Configuration Interface

The workstation software shall use a familiar Windows Explorer™-style interface for an operator or programmer to view and/or edit any object (controller, point, alarm, report, schedule, etc.) in the entire system. In addition, this interface shall present a “network map” of all controllers and their associated points, programs, graphics, alarms, and reports in an easy to understand structure. All object names shall be alphanumeric and use Windows long filename conventions. Object names shall not be required to be unique throughout the system. This allows consistency in point naming. For example, each VAV controller can have an input called Space Temperature and a setpoint called CFM Setpoint. The VAV controller name shall be unique such as VAV for Processing Area 021. Systems requiring unique object names throughout the system will not be acceptable.

The configuration interface shall also include support for template objects. These template objects shall be used as building blocks for the creation of the BAS database. The types of template objects supported shall include all data point types (input, output, string variables, setpoints, etc.), alarm algorithms, alarm notification objects, reports, graphics displays, schedules, and programs. Groups of template object types shall be able to be set up as template subsystems and systems. The template system shall prompt for data entry if necessary. The template system shall maintain a link to all "child" objects created by each template. If a user wishes to make a change to a template object, the software shall ask the user if he/she wants to update all of child objects with the change. This template system shall facilitate configuration and programming consistency and afford the user a fast and simple method to make global changes to the BAS.

6. Color Graphic Displays

The system shall allow for the creation of user defined, color graphic displays for the viewing of mechanical and electrical systems, or building schematics. These graphics shall contain point information from the database including any attributes associated with the point (engineering units, etc.). In addition operators shall be able to command equipment or change setpoints from a graphic through the use of the mouse. Requirements of the color graphic subsystem include:

- a. SVGA, bit-mapped displays. The user shall have the ability to import AutoCAD generated picture files as background displays.
- b. A built-in library of animated objects such as dampers, fans, pumps, buttons, knobs, gauges, and graphs which can be "dropped" on a graphic through the use of a software configuration "wizard". These objects shall enable operators to interact with the graphic displays in a manner that mimics their mechanical equivalents found on field installed control panels. Using the mouse, operators shall be able to adjust setpoints, start or stop equipment, modify PID loop parameters, or change schedules.
- c. Status changes or alarm conditions must be able to be highlighted by objects changing screen location, size, color, text, blinking or changing from one display to another.
- d. Graphic panel objects shall be able to be configured with multiple "tabbed" pages allowing an operator to quickly view individual graphics of equipment, which make up a subsystem or system.
- e. Ability to link graphic displays through user defined objects, alarm testing, or the result of a mathematical expression. Operators must be able to change from one graphic to another by selecting an object with a mouse - no menus will be required.
- f. Automatic monitoring

The software shall allow for the automatic collection of data and reports from any controller through either a hardwire or modem communication link. The frequency of data collection shall be completely user-configurable.

g. Alarm Management

The software shall be capable of accepting alarms directly from controllers, or generating alarms based on evaluation of data in controllers and comparing to limits or conditional equations configured through the software. Any alarm (regardless of its origination) will be integrated into the overall alarm management system and will appear in all standard alarm reports, be available for operator acknowledgment, and have the option for displaying graphics, or reports.

Alarm management features shall include:

- 1) A minimum of 255 alarm notification levels. Each notification level will establish a unique set of parameters for controlling alarm display, acknowledgment, keyboard annunciation, alarm printout and record keeping.
- 2) Automatic logging in the database of the alarm message, point name, point value, connected controller, timestamp, username and time of acknowledgement, username and time of alarm silence (soft acknowledgement)
- 3) Automatic printing of the alarm information or alarm report to an alarm printer or report printer.
- 4) Playing an audible beep or audio (wav) file on alarm initiation or return to normal.
- 5) Sending an email or alphanumeric page to anyone listed in a workstation's email account address list on either the initial occurrence of an alarm and/or if the alarm is repeated because an operator has not acknowledged the alarm within a user-configurable timeframe. The ability to utilize email and alphanumeric paging of alarms shall be a standard feature of the software integrated with the operating system's mail application interface (MAPI). No special software interfaces shall be required.
- 6) Individual alarms shall be able to be re-routed to a workstation or workstations at user-specified times and dates. For example, a critical high temp alarm can be configured to be routed to a Facilities Dept. workstation during normal working hours (7am-6pm, Mon-Fri) and to a Central Alarming workstation at all other times.
- 7) An active alarm viewer shall be included which can be customized for each user or user type to hide or display any alarm attributes.
- 8) The font type and color, and background color for each alarm notification level as seen in the active alarm viewer shall be customizable to allow easy identification of certain alarm types or alarm states.
- 9) The active alarm viewer can be configured such that an operator must type in text in an alarm entry and/or pick from a drop-down list of user actions for certain alarms. This ensures accountability (audit trail) for the response to critical alarms.

#### h. Custom Report Generation

The software will contain a built-in custom report generator, featuring word processing tools for the creation of custom reports. These custom reports shall be able to be set up to automatically run or be generated on demand. Each workstation shall be able to associate reports with any word processing or spreadsheet program loaded on the machine. When the report is displayed, it will automatically spawn the associated report editor such as MS Word™.

- 1) Reports can be of any length and contain any point attributes from any controller on the network.
- 2) The report generator will have access to the user programming language in order to perform mathematical calculations inside the body of the report, control the display output of the report, or prompt the user for additional information needed by the report.
- 3) It shall be possible to run other executable programs whenever a report is initiated.

- 4) Report Generator activity can be tied to the alarm management system, so that any of the configured reports can be displayed in response to an alarm condition.
- 5) Standard reports shall include:
  - a) Points in each controller.
  - b) Points in alarm
  - c) Disabled points
  - d) Overridden points
  - e) Operator activity report
  - f) Alarm history log.
  - g) Program listing by controller with status.
  - h) Network status of each controller

i. Spreadsheet-style reports

The software shall allow the simple configuration of row/column (spreadsheet-style) reports on any class of object in the system. These reports shall be user-configurable and shall be able to extract live (controller) data and/or data from the database. The user shall be able to set up each report to display in any text font, color and background color. In addition the report shall be able to be configured to filter data, sort data and highlight data which meets user-defined criteria.

j. HTML Reporting

The above spreadsheet-style reports shall be able to be run to an HTML template file. This feature will create an HTML "results" file in the directory of the HTML template. This directory can be shared with other computer users, which will allow those users with access to the directory to "point" their web browser at the file and view the report.

k. Scheduling- It shall be possible to configure and download from the workstation schedules for any of the controllers on the network.

- 1) Time of day schedules shall be in a calendar style and shall be programmable for a minimum of one year in advance. Each standard day of the week and user-defined day types shall be able to be associated with a color so that when the schedule is viewed it is very easy, at-a-glance, to determine the schedule for a particular day even from the yearly view. To change the schedule for a particular day, a user shall simply click on the day and then click on the day type.
- 2) Each schedule will appear on the screen viewable as the entire year, monthly, week and day. A simple mouse click shall allow switching between views. It shall also be possible to scroll from one month to the next and view or alter any of the schedule times.
- 3) Schedules will be assigned to specific controllers and stored in their local RAM memory. Any changes made at the workstation will be automatically updated to the corresponding schedule in the controller.

l. Programmer's Environment

The programmer's environment will include access to a superset of the same programming language supported in the controllers. Here the programmer will be able to configure application software off-line (if desired) for custom program development, write global control programs, system reports, wide area networking data collection routines, and custom alarm management software. On the same screen as the program

editor, the programming environment shall include dockable debug and watch bars for program debugging and viewing updated values and point attributes during programming. In addition a wizard tool shall be available for loading programs from a library file in the program editor.

m. Saving/Reloading

The workstation software shall have an application to save and restore field controller memory files. This application shall not be limited to saving and reloading an entire controller – it must also be able to save/reload individual objects in the controller. This allows off-line debugging of control programs, for example, and then reloading of just the modified information.

n. Data Logging

The workstation software shall have the capability to easily configure groups of data points with trend logs and display the trend log data. A group of data points shall be created by drag-and-drop method of the points into a folder. The trend log data shall be displayed through a simply menu selection. This data shall be able to be saved to file and/or printed.

o. Audit Trail

The workstation software shall automatically log and timestamp every operation that a user performs at a workstation, from logging on and off a workstation to changing a point value, modifying a program, enabling/disabling an object, viewing a graphic display, running a report, modifying a schedule, etc.

p. Fault Tolerant File Server Operation

The system shall provide the option to provide fault tolerant operation in the event of the loss of the CPU, disk drives, or other hardware required to maintain the operational integrity of the system. Operational integrity includes all user interfaces, monitoring of alarm points and access points, and executing access control functions.

The switchover mechanism provided shall be automatic. Should the failure be caused by hardware, then the system shall immediately switch to the Backup computer. Should the system failure be caused by software (instruction or data), the system shall not pass the faulted code to the Backup computer, otherwise the Backup shall fail in the same manner of the Primary computer.

Switchover to the Backup computer shall be initiated and effective (complete) in a manner and time frame that precludes the loss of event data, and shall be transparent to the system users, except for an advisory alarm message indicating that the switchover has occurred.

When the system fails-over from the Primary to the Backup computer, no alarm or other event shall be lost, and the Backup computer shall take control of all system functions.

A single component failure in the system shall not cause the entire system to fail. All system users shall be informed of any detectable component failure via an alarm event. System users shall not be logged off as a result of a system failure or switchover.

The Primary computer shall provide continual indication that the Backup computer is unavailable until such time that the fault has been purged.

## 1.17 Portable Operator's Terminal

- A. Provide one 15" full screen, laptop portable operator terminal shall communicate directly to all controllers. The laptop software shall enable users to monitor both instantaneous and historical

point data, modify control parameters, and enable/disable any point or program in any controller on the network.

1. The laptop computer will be a Intel Core 2 Duo-based portable computer with a minimum of 4GB of RAM memory, and a 160GB hard disk drive, running Windows ver 7 or Windows XP.
2. The laptop service tool will connect to any Ethernet controller or standalone controller via a dedicated service port. From this single connection, the user shall be able to communicate with any other controller on the LAN.
3. The laptop service tool will limit operator access by passwords. The service tool must support, at a minimum, the following password-protected user types: Administrator, Modify Parameters, View Only.
4. The laptop software shall include built-in menus for viewing points by controller, enabling, disabling and viewing programs, configuring controllers, and communicating to other controllers on the network.

### 1.18 DDC Sensors and Point Hardware

#### A. Temperature Sensors

1. All temperature devices shall use precision thermistors accurate to +/- 1 degree F over a range of -30 to 230 degrees F. Space temperature sensors shall be accurate to +/- .5 degrees F over a range of 40 to 100 degrees F.
2. Space sensors shall have off white enclosure and shall be mounted on a standard electrical box. Space sensors shall use surface mounted finished cast electrical box for surface mounting with metal "wire-mold" to conceal wiring for all solid masonry partitions. For space sensors located on gypsum board partitions, wiring shall be concealed inside the walls with recessed flush mounted electrical boxes. In general, control wiring shall run from the ceiling plenum to the box which shall be wall mounted next to the door or as shown on plan. (This shall be the standard for this project)
3. The space temperature/CO sensor housing shall utilize buttons for adjusting the space temperature set-point, as well as a push button for selecting after hours operation, fan speed and all and other operator selectable parameters. Operators shall be able to adjust set points directly from the sensor. All space sensors, (located in public location, office, class rooms), shall incorporate either an LED or LCD display for viewing the space temperature, set-point and other operator selectable parameters. Space sensors located in store rooms, MER, and unoccupied space are not required have LED or LCD display.
4. Duct temperature sensors shall incorporate a thermistor bead embedded at the tip of a stainless steel tube. Probe style duct sensors are useable in air handling applications where the coil or duct area is less than 14 square feet.
5. Averaging sensors shall be employed in ducts which are larger than 14 square feet. The averaging sensor tube must contain at least one thermistor for every 3 feet, with a minimum tube length of 12 feet.
6. Immersion sensors shall be employed for measurement of temperature in all chilled and hot water applications as well as refrigerant applications. Thermal wells shall be brass or

stainless steel for non-corrosive fluids below 250 degrees F and 300 series stainless steel for all other applications.

7. A pneumatic signal shall not be allowed for sensing temperature.

B. Humidity Sensors

1. Humidity devices shall be accurate to +/- 5% at full scale for space and +/- 3% for duct and outside air applications. Suppliers shall be able to demonstrate that accuracy is NIST traceable.
2. Provide a hand held field calibration tool that both reads the output of the sensor and contains a reference sensor for ongoing calibration.

C. Pressure Sensors

1. Air pressure measurements in the range of 0 to 10" water column will be accurate to +/- 1% using a solid-state sensing element. Acceptable manufacturers include Modus Instruments and Mamac.
2. Differential pressure measurements of liquids or gases shall be accurate to +/- 0.5% of range. The housing shall be Nema 4 rated.

D. Current and KW Sensors

1. Current status switches shall be used to monitor fans, pumps, motors and electrical loads. Current switches shall be available in solid and split core models, and offer either a digital or an analog signal to the automation system. Acceptable manufacturer is Veris or approved equal.
2. Measurement of three phase power shall be accomplished with a kW/kWH transducer. This device shall utilize direct current transformer inputs to calculate the instantaneous value (kW) and a pulsed output proportional to the energy usage (kWH). Provide Veris Model 6000 Power Transducer or approved equal.

E. Flow Sensors

1. Provide an insertion vortex flowmeter for measurement of liquid, gas or steam flows in pipe sizes above 3 inches.
2. Install the flow meter on an isolation valve to permit removal without process shutdown.
3. Sensors shall be manufactured by EMCO or approved equal.

F. Electric/Pneumatic Transducers

1. Electric to pneumatic transducers shall operate from either a PWM or analog signal. E/P transducers shall be rated for 0 - 20 psi operation and accurate to 2% of full scale. E/P transducers shall have a maximum air consumption of 100 SCIM.
2. E/P transducers may be installed at the end device (damper or valve), or mounted separately in a field interface panel, or as part of the controller. All transducers will be calibrated. Panel mounted transducers shall be Sensycon or approved equal.

G. Electric/Pneumatic Solenoid Valves

Electric solenoid operated pneumatic valves (EP's) shall have a three port operation: common, normally open and normally closed. They shall be rated for 50 psig when used for 25 psig or less applications, or rated for 150 psig when used for 100 psig or less applications. The coils

shall be equipped with transient suppression devices to limit transients to 150 percent of the rated coil voltage.

### **1.19 Control Valves**

- A. Provide automatic control valves suitable for the specified controlled media (water). Provide valves which mate and match the material of the connected piping. Equip control valves with the actuators of required input power type and control signal type to accurately position the flow control element and provide sufficient force to achieve required leakage specification.
- B. Control valves shall meet the heating and cooling loads specified, and close off against the differential pressure conditions within the application. Valves should be sized to operate accurately and with stability from 10 to 100% of the maximum design flow.
- C. Trim material shall be stainless steel for steam and high differential pressure applications.
- D. Electric actuation should be provided on all terminal unit reheat applications.

### **1.20 Dampers**

- A. Automatic dampers, furnished by the Building Automation Contractor shall be single or multiple blade as required. Dampers are to be installed by the HVAC Contractor under the supervision of the BAS Contractor. All blank-off plates and conversions necessary to install smaller than duct size dampers are the responsibility of the Sheet Metal Contractor.
- B. Damper frames are to be constructed of 13 gauge galvanized sheet steel mechanically joined with linkage concealed in the side channel to eliminate noise as friction. Compressible spring stainless steel side seals, and acetal or bronze bearings shall also be provided.
- C. Damper blade width shall not exceed eight inches. Seals and 3/8 inch square steel zinc plated pins are required. Blade rotation is to be parallel or opposed as shown on the schedules.
- D. For high performance applications, control dampers will meet or exceed the UL Class I leakage rating.
- E. Control and smoke dampers shall be Ruskin, or approved equal.
- F. Provide opposed blade dampers for modulating applications and parallel blade for two position control.

### **1.21 Damper Actuators**

- A. Electronic Actuators – the actuator shall be direct coupled over the shaft, enabling it to be mounted directly to the damper shaft without the need for connecting linkage. The actuator shall have electronic overload circuitry to prevent damage. For power-failure/safety applications, an internal mechanical, spring return mechanism shall be built into the actuator housing. Non-spring return actuators shall have an external manual gear release to allow positioning of the damper when the actuator is not powered.

**1.22 Smoke Detectors**

- A. Air duct smoke detectors shall be by Air Products & Controls or approved equal. The detectors shall operate at air velocities from 300 feet per minute to 4000 feet per minute.
- B. The smoke detector shall utilize a photoelectric detector head.
- C. The housing shall permit mechanical installation without removal of the detector cover.
- D. The detectors shall be listed by Underwrites Laboratories and meet the requirements of UL 268A.

**1.23 Airflow Measuring Stations**

- A. Provide a thermal anemometer using instrument grade self heated thermistor sensors with thermistor temperature sensors.
- B. The flow station shall operate over a range of 0 to 5,000 feet/min with an accuracy of +/- 2% over 500 feet/min and +/- 10 ft/min for reading less than 500 feet/min.
- C. The output signal shall be linear with field selectable ranges including 0-5 VDC, 0-10VDC and 4-20 mA.
- D. Furnish Ebtron Series 3000 airflow stations or approved equal.

**PART 2 - EXECUTION****2.1 Contractor Responsibilities****A. General**

Installation of the building automation system shall be performed by the Contractor or a subcontractor. However, all installation shall be under the personal supervision of the Contractor. The Contractor shall certify all work as proper and complete. Under no circumstances shall the design, scheduling, coordination, programming, training, and warranty requirements for the project be delegated to a subcontractor.

**B. Access to Site**

- 1. Unless notified otherwise, entrance to building is restricted. No one will be permitted to enter the building unless their names have been cleared with the Owner or the Owner's Representative.

**C. Code Compliance**

- 1. All wiring shall be installed in accordance with all applicable electrical codes and will comply with equipment manufacturer's recommendations.

**D. Cleanup**

- 1. At the completion of the work, all equipment pertinent to this contract shall be checked and thoroughly cleaned, and all other areas shall be cleaned around equipment provided under this contract.

## 2.2 Wiring, Conduit, and Cable

- A. All wire will be copper and meet the minimum wire size and insulation class listed below:

Wire Class	Wire Size	Isolation Class
Power	12 Gauge	600 Volt
Class One	14 Gauge Std.	600 Volt
Class Two	18 Gauge Std.	300 Volt
Class Three	18 Gauge Std.	300 volt
Communications	Per Mfr.	Per Mfr.

- B. Power and Class One wiring may be run in the same conduit. Class Two and Three wiring and communications wiring may be run in the same conduit.
- C. Where different wiring classes terminate within the same enclosure, maintain clearances and install barriers per the National Electric Code.
- D. Where wiring is required to be installed in conduit, EMT shall be used. Conduit shall be minimum 1/2 inch galvanized EMT. Set screw fittings are acceptable for dry interior locations. Watertight compression fittings shall be used for exterior locations and interior locations subject to moisture. Provide conduit sealoff fitting where exterior conduits enter the building or between areas of high temperature/moisture differential.
- E. Flexible metallic conduit (max. 3 feet) shall be used for connections to motors, actuators, controllers, and sensors mounted on vibration producing equipment. Liquid-tight flexible conduit shall be use in exterior locations and interior locations subject to moisture.
- F. Junction boxes shall be provided at all cable splices, equipment termination, and transitions from EMT to flexible conduit. Interior dry location J-boxes shall be galvanized pressed steel, nominal four-inch square with blank cover. Exterior and damp location JH-boxes shall be cast alloy FS boxes with threaded hubs and gasketed covers.
- G. Where the space above the ceiling is a supply or return air plenum, the wiring shall be plenum rated. Teflon wiring can be run without conduit above suspended ceilings. EXCEPTION: Any wire run in suspended ceilings that is used to control outside air dampers or to connect the system to the fire management system shall be in conduit.
- H. Coaxial cable shall conform to RG62 or RG59 rating. Provide plenum rated coaxial cable when running in return air plenums.
- I. Fiber optic cable shall include the following sizes; 50/125, 62.5/125 or 100/140.
- J. Only glass fiber is acceptable, no plastic.
- K. Fiber optic cable shall only be installed and terminated by an experienced contractor. The BAS contractor shall submit to the Engineer the name of the intended contractor of the fiber optic cable with his submittal documents.
- L. Hardware Installation

### **2.3 Installation Practices for Wiring**

- A. All controllers are to be mounted vertically and per the manufacturer's installation documentation.
- B. The 120VAC power wiring to each Ethernet or Remote Site controller shall be a dedicated run, with a separate breaker. Each run will include a separate hot, neutral and ground wire. The ground wire will terminate at the breaker panel ground. This circuit will not feed any other circuit or device.
- C. A true earth ground must be available in the building. Do not use a corroded or galvanized pipe, or structural steel.
- D. Wires are to be attached to the building proper at regular intervals such that wiring does not droop. Wires are not to be affixed to or supported by pipes, conduit, etc.
- E. Conduit in finished areas, will be concealed in ceiling cavity spaces, plenums, furred spaces and wall construction. Exception; metallic surface raceway may be used in finished areas on masonry walls. All surface raceway in finished areas must be color matched to the existing finish within the limitations of standard manufactured colors.
- F. Conduit, in non-finished areas where possible, will be concealed in ceiling cavity spaces, plenums, furred spaces, and wall construction. Exposed conduit will run parallel to or at right angles to the building structure.
- G. Wires are to be kept a minimum of three (3) inches from hot water, steam, or condensate piping.
- H. Where sensor wires leave the conduit system, they are to be protected by a plastic insert.
- I. Wire will not be allowed to run across telephone equipment areas.

### **2.4 Installation Practices for Field Devices**

- A. Well-mounted sensors will include thermal conducting compound within the well to insure good heat transfer to the sensor.
- B. Actuators will be firmly mounted to give positive movement and linkage will be adjusted to give smooth continuous movement throughout 100 percent of the stroke.
- C. Relay outputs will include transient suppression across all coils. Suppression devices shall limit transients to 150% of the rated coil voltage.
- D. Water line mounted sensors shall be removable without shutting down the system in which they are installed.
- E. For duct static pressure sensors, the high pressure port shall be connected to a metal static pressure probe inserted into the duct pointing upstream. The low pressure port shall be left open to the plenum area at the point that the high pressure port is tapped into the ductwork.
- F. For building static pressure sensors, the high pressure port shall be inserted into the space via a metal tube. Pipe the low pressure port to the outside of the building.

## 2.5 Enclosures

- A. For all I/O requiring field interface devices, these devices where practical will be mounted in a field interface panel (FIP). The Contractor shall provide an enclosure which protects the device(s) from dust, moisture, conceals integral wiring and moving parts.
- B. FIPs shall contain power supplies for sensors, interface relays and contactors, safety circuits, and I/P transducers.
- C. The FIP enclosure shall be of steel construction with baked enamel finish, NEMA 1 rated with a hinged door and keyed lock. The enclosure will be sized for twenty percent spare mounting space. All locks will be keyed identically.
- D. All wiring to and from the FIP will be to screw type terminals. Analog or communications wiring may use the FIP as a raceway without terminating. The use of wire nuts within the FIP is prohibited.
- E. All outside mounted enclosures shall meet the NEMA-4 rating.
- F. The wiring within all enclosures shall be run in plastic track. Wiring within controllers shall be wrapped and secured.

## 2.6 Identification

- A. Identify all control wires with labeling tape or sleeves using either words, letters, or numbers that can be exactly cross-referenced with as-built drawings.
- B. All field enclosures, other than controllers, shall be identified with a bakelite nameplate. The lettering shall be in white against a black or blue background.
- C. Junction box covers will be marked to indicate that they are a part of the BAS system.
- D. All I/O field devices (except space sensors) that are not mounted within FIP's shall be identified with name plates.
- E. All I/O field devices inside FIP's shall be labeled.

## 2.7 Location

- A. The location of sensors is per mechanical and architectural drawings.
- B. [Space humidity](#), [CO](#) or temperature sensors will be mounted away from machinery generating heat, direct light and diffuser air streams.
- C. Outdoor air sensors will be mounted on the north building face directly in the outside air. Install these sensors such that the effects of heat radiated from the building or sunlight is minimized.
- D. Field enclosures shall be located immediately adjacent to the controller panel(s) to which it is being interfaced.

## 2.8 Software Installation

### A. General.

The Contractor shall provide all labor necessary to install, initialize, start-up and debug all system software as described in this section. This includes any operating system software or other third party software necessary for successful operation of the system.

### B. Database Configuration.

The Contractor will provide all labor to configure those portions of the database that are required by the points list and sequence of operation.

### C. Color Graphic Slides.

Unless otherwise directed by the owner, the Contractor will provide color graphic displays as depicted in the mechanical drawings for each system and floor plan. For each system or floor plan, the display shall contain the associated points identified in the point list and allow for setpoint changes as required by the owner. Graphically represent each and every piece of equipment in the class room building, new and existing, all input and put status point, and functional points. This shall include the new fans, chillers, and convectors, existing boilers, water, fuel, and ejection pumps, fan coil units, convectors, air handlers and fans.

### D. Reports.

The Contractor will configure reports for all of the equipment listed in section 1.3D. report shall be configured for all input and output points monitored and controlled. As well as the following

Space Temperature / CO / Humidity Report

Domestic water use.

### E. Documentation

As built software documentation will include the following:

1. Descriptive point lists
2. Application program listing
3. Application programs with comments.
4. Printouts of all reports.
5. Alarm list.
6. Printouts of all graphics

### F. Commissioning and System Startup

### G. Point to Point Checkout.

Each I/O device (both field mounted as well as those located in FIPs) shall be inspected and verified for proper installation and functionality. A checkout sheet itemizing each device shall be filled out, dated and approved by the Project Manager for submission to the owner or owner's representative.

### H. Controller and Workstation Checkout.

A field checkout of all controllers and front end equipment (computers, printers, modems, etc.) shall be conducted to verify proper operation of both hardware and software. A checkout sheet

itemizing each device and a description of the associated tests shall be prepared and submitted to the owner or owner's representative by the completion of the project.

I. System Acceptance Testing

All application software will be verified and compared against the sequences of operation. Control loops will be exercised by inducing a setpoint shift of at least 10% and observing whether the system successfully returns the process variable to setpoint. Record all test results and attach to the Test Results Sheet.

J. Test each alarm in the system and validate that the system generates the appropriate alarm message, that the message appears at all prescribed destinations (workstations or printers), and that any other related actions occur as defined (i.e. graphic panels are invoked, reports are generated, etc.). Submit a Test Results Sheet to the owner.

K. Perform an operational test of each unique graphic display and report to verify that the item exists, that the appearance and content are correct, and that any special features work as intended. Submit a Test Results Sheet to the owner.

L. Perform an operational test of each third party interface that has been included as part of the automation system. Verify that all points are properly polled, that alarms have been configured, and that any associated graphics and reports have been completed. If the interface involves a file transfer over Ethernet, test any logic that controls the transmission of the file, and verify the content of the specified information.

**END OF SECTION 23 09 01.11**

## SECTION 230923.11 CONTROL VALVES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes control valves and actuators for DDC systems.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Cv: Design valve coefficient.
- B. DDC: Direct-digital control.
- C. NBR: Nitrile butadiene rubber.
- D. PTFE: Polytetrafluoroethylene
- E. RMS: Root-mean-square value of alternating voltage, which is the square root of the mean value of the square of the voltage values during a complete cycle.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product, including the following:
  - 1. Construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
  - 2. Operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished accessories indicating process operating range, accuracy over range, control signal over range, default control signal with loss of power, calibration data specific to each unique application, electrical power requirements, and limitations of ambient operating environment, including temperature and humidity.
  - 3. Product description with complete technical data, performance curves, and product specification sheets.
  - 4. Installation, operation, and maintenance instructions, including factors affecting performance.
- B. Shop Drawings:
  - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting details.

2. Include details of product assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, and required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
4. Include diagrams for pneumatic signal and main air tubing.

C. Delegated-Design Submittal:

1. Schedule and design calculations for control valves and actuators, including the following:
  - a. Flow at project design and minimum flow conditions.
  - b. Pressure differential drop across valve at project design flow condition.
  - c. Maximum system pressure differential drop (pump close-off pressure) across valve at project minimum flow condition.
  - d. Design and minimum control valve coefficient with corresponding valve position.
  - e. Maximum close-off pressure.
  - f. Leakage flow at maximum system pressure differential.
  - g. Torque required at worst case condition for sizing actuator.
  - h. Actuator selection indicating torque provided.

## 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Plan drawings and corresponding product installation details, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
1. Control valve installation location shown in relationship to room, duct, pipe, and equipment.
  2. Size and location of wall access panels for control valves installed behind walls.
  3. Size and location of ceiling access panels for control valves installed above inaccessible ceilings.

## 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For control valves to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. ASME Compliance: Fabricate and label products to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code where required by authorities having jurisdiction.

- C. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional, to size products where indicated as delegated design.
- D. Ground Fault: Products shall not fail due to ground fault condition when suitably grounded.
- E. Backup Power Source: Systems and equipment served by a backup power source shall have associated control valve actuators served from a backup power source.
- F. Environmental Conditions:
  - 1. Provide electric control valve actuators, with protective enclosures satisfying the following minimum requirements unless more stringent requirements are indicated. Electric control valve actuators not available with integral enclosures, complying with requirements indicated, shall be housed in protective secondary enclosures.
    - a. Hazardous Locations: Explosion-proof rating for condition.
- G. Body & Trim. Body and trim style and materials shall be in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations for design conditions and service shown in compliance with the following at a minimum:
  - 1. Valve pattern, three-way or straight through, shall be as indicated on Drawings.
  - 2. Modulating two-way pattern control valves shall have equal percentage flow-throttling characteristics unless otherwise indicated.
  - 3. Modulating three-way pattern water valves shall have linear flow-throttling characteristics. The total flow through the valve shall remain constant regardless of the valve's position
  - 4. **Valve bodies shall meet or exceed pressure and temperature class rating based upon design operating temperature and 150% design operating pressure. Unless otherwise specified or scheduled, minimum body rating for any valve is 125 psi and a maximum fluid temperature of 350°F.**
  - 5. Valves shall have stainless-steel stems and stuffing boxes with extended necks to clear the piping insulation.
  - 6. Globe valves shall have replaceable seats.
- H. Determine control valve sizes and flow coefficients by ISA 75.01.01.
  - 1. Water Valves. Unless otherwise specified or scheduled, water valves shall follow the following criteria:
    - a. Two-position service: Line size.
    - b. Two-way modulating service: Pressure drop shall be equal to twice the pressure drop through the heat exchanger (coil, load, etc.), 50% of the pressure difference between the supply and return mains, or 5 psi (Maximum).
    - c. Three-way modulating service: Pressure drop shall be equal to twice the pressure drop through the heat exchanger (coil, load, etc.), (5 psi) maximum.
    - d. Valves 1/2" through 2" shall be bronze or cast brass body ANSI Class 250, spring-loaded, PTFE packing quick opening for two-position service.
    - e. Valves larger than 2 1/2" and shall be cast iron ANSI Class 125 with guided plug and PTFE packing.
    - f. Valves 1/2" through 2" shall be ANSI/ASME B1.20.1 (NPT) threaded connections.
    - g. Valves 2 1/2" to 3" shall use flanged connections.

2. Steam Valves. Body and trim style and materials shall be in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations for design conditions and service shown in compliance with the following at a minimum:
  - a. Linear percentage ports for modulating service.
  - b. Two-position service: Pressure drop 10% to 20% of inlet pressure.
  - c. Modulating service: 15 psig or less; pressure drop 80% of inlet pressure.
  - d. Modulating service: 16-50 psig or less; pressure drop 50% of inlet pressure.
  - e. Modulating service: Greater than 50 psig; pressure drop as scheduled
- I. Control valve characteristics and rangeability of 50:1 and shall comply with ISA 75.11.01.
- J. Control valve shutoff classifications shall be FCI 70-2, Class IV. Close-Off/Differential Pressure Rating. All valves shall be guaranteed to have not more than 1% leakage of design flow rate at the pump shut-off pressure. All valve actuators and trim shall be furnished to provide the following minimum close-off pressure ratings unless otherwise specified or scheduled:
  1. Two-way water valves: 150% of total system (pump) head.
  2. Three-way water valves: 300% of pressure differential between ports A and B at design flow or 100% of total system (pump) head (whichever is greater).
  3. Steam valves: 150% of operating (inlet) pressure.
- K. Fail positions unless otherwise indicated:
  1. Chilled Water: close
  2. Condenser Water: close
  3. Heating Hot Water: Open.
  4. Steam: Open.
- L. General Characteristics:
  1. In water systems, use ball- or globe-style control valves for two-position control for valves NPS 2 and smaller and butterfly style for valves larger than NPS 2. Butterfly valves shall be for open close service only.
  2. In steam systems, use ball- or globe-style control valves regardless of size.
  3. Pneumatic, two-position control valves shall provide a smooth opening and closing characteristic slow enough to avoid water hammer. Valves with pneumatic actuators shall have an adjustable opening time (valve full closed to full open) and an adjustable closing time (valve full open to full closed) ranging from zero to 10 seconds. Opening and closing times shall be independently adjustable. (Not Used This Project)
  4. Control valve, pneumatic-control signal shall not exceed 200 feet. For longer distances, provide an electric/electronic control signal to the valve and an electric solenoid valve or electro-pneumatic transducer at the valve to convert the control signal to pneumatic. (Not Used This Project).
  5. Valves for chilled water shall use all internal trim,(including seats, rings, modulating plugs and springs), of 316 stainless steel, regardless of body style.
  6. Valves for hot water service between 210F and 250F shall have all internal trim (including seats, rings, modulating plugs and springs) of Type 316 Stainless Steel
  7. Valves for hot water service below 210F shall have all internal trim (including seats, rings, modulating plugs and springs) of Brass, Bronze or Type 316 Stainless Steel

## 2.2 BALL-STYLE CONTROL VALVES

### A. General:

1. All control ball valves shall feature characterized flow guides when used for modulating applications.

### B. Ball Valves with Single Port and Characterized Disk:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
  - a. Belimo Aircontrols (USA), Inc
2. Pressure Rating for NPS 1 and Smaller: Nominal 600 WOG.
3. Pressure Rating for NPS 1-1/2 through NPS 2: Nominal 400 WOG.
4. Close-off Pressure: 200 psig.
5. Process Temperature Range: Zero to 212 deg F.
6. Body and Tail Piece: Cast bronze ASTM B 61, ASTM B 62, ASTM B 584, or forged brass with nickel plating.
7. End Connections: Threaded (NPT) ends.
8. Ball: Chrome-plated brass or bronze or 300 series stainless steel.
9. Stem and Stem Extension:
  - a. Material to match ball.
  - b. Blowout-proof design.
  - c. Sleeve or other approved means to allow valve to be opened and closed without damaging the insulation or the vapor barrier seal.
10. Ball Seats: Reinforced PTFE.
11. Stem Seal: Reinforced PTFE packing ring with a threaded packing ring follower to retain the packing ring under design pressure with the linkage removed. Alternative means, such as EPDM O-rings, are acceptable if an equivalent cycle endurance can be demonstrated by testing.
12. Flow Characteristic: Equal percentage.

### C. Ball Valves with Two Ports and Characterized Disk:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
  - a. Belimo Aircontrols (USA), Inc.
2. Pressure Rating for NPS 1 and Smaller: Nominal 600 WOG.
3. Pressure Rating for NPS 1-1/2 through NPS 2: Nominal 400 WOG.
4. Close-off Pressure: 200 psig.
5. Process Temperature Range: Zero to 212 deg F.
6. Body and Tail Piece: Cast bronze ASTM B 61, ASTM B 62, ASTM B 584, or forged brass with nickel plating.
7. End Connections: Threaded (NPT) ends.
8. Ball: Chrome-plated brass or bronze or 300 series stainless steel].
9. Stem and Stem Extension:

- a. Material to match ball.
  - b. Blowout-proof design.
  - c. Sleeve or other approved means to allow valve to be opened and closed without damaging the insulation or the vapor barrier seal.
10. Ball Seats: Reinforced PTFE.
  11. Stem Seal: Reinforced PTFE packing ring with a threaded packing ring follower to retain the packing ring under design pressure with the linkage removed. Alternative means, such as EPDM O-rings, are acceptable if an equivalent cycle endurance can be demonstrated by testing.
  12. Flow Characteristics for A-Port: Equal percentage.
  13. Flow Characteristics for B-Port: Modified for constant common port flow.

D. Ball Valves with Single Port and Segmented Ball:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
  - a. Valve Solutions, Inc.
2. ASME B16.10 face-to-face dimensions.
3. Valves NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded (NPT) ends.
4. Valves NPS 2-1/2 through NPS 6: Flanged ends suitable for mating to ASME B16.5 flanges.
5. Body: Carbon or stainless steel.
6. Ball and Shaft: Stainless steel.
7. Shaft and Segmented Ball: Pinned and welded.
8. Ball Seat: Graphite.
9. Packing: PTFE V-rings and graphite packing follower.
10. Replaceable seat, ball, and shaft packing.
11. Label each valve with following:
  - a. Manufacturer's name, model number, and serial number.
  - b. Body size.
  - c. Flow directional arrow.

E. Ball Valves with Segmented Ball, Three-Way Pattern:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
  - a. Valve Solutions, Inc.
2. Arrangement: Two single-port valves mated to a fabricated tee with interconnecting mechanical linkage.
3. Performance:
  - a. Process Temperature Rating: Minus 20 to plus 450 deg F.
  - b. ASME B16.34, Class 300.
  - c. Leakage: FCI 70-2, Class IV.
  - d. Rangeability: 300 to 1.

- e. Rotation: Zero to 90 degrees.
  - f. Equal percentage flow characteristic.
- 4. Face-to-Face Dimensions: ASME B16.10.
  - 5. Valves NPS 3 through NPS 6: Flanged ends suitable for mating to ASME B16.5 flanges.
  - 6. Body: Carbon or stainless steel.
  - 7. Ball and Shaft: Stainless steel.
  - 8. Shaft and Segmented Ball: Pinned and welded.
  - 9. Ball Seat: Graphite.
  - 10. Packing: PTFE V-rings and graphite packing follower.
  - 11. Replaceable seat, ball, and shaft packing.
  - 12. Label each valve with following:
    - a. Manufacturer's name, model number, and serial number.
    - b. Body size.
    - c. Flow directional arrow.

F. Ball Valves with Full Ball and Characterized V-Notch:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
  - a. Flow-Tek, Inc.
- 2. Performance:
  - a. Process Temperature Rating: Minus 20 to plus 500 deg F.
  - b. ASME B16.34, Class 600 for NPS 2 and smaller; Class 150 or Class 300 for larger than NPS 2.
  - c. Leakage: FCI 70-2, Class VI, bi-directional.
  - d. Rangeability: Varies from 200 to 1 up to 800 to 1 based on notch pattern of ball.
  - e. Rotation: Zero to 90 degrees.
  - f. Equal percentage flow characteristic.
  - g. Full port.
- 3. Face-to-Face Dimension: ASME B16.10 long pattern.
- 4. Valves NPS 2 and Smaller: ASME B1.20.1 threaded (NPT) ends and three-piece body.
- 5. Valves NPS 2-1/2 through NPS 12: Flanged ends suitable for mating to ASME B16.5 flanges and two-piece body.
- 6. Hole in the stem slot of each ball equalizes pressure between the body cavity and the line media flow.
- 7. Replaceable seat, ball, and shaft packing.
- 8. Body: Carbon or stainless steel.
- 9. Ball and Shaft: Stainless steel.
- 10. Ball Seat: RPTFE.
- 11. Stem Seals for Valves NPS 2 and Smaller: Live-loaded, self-adjusting, primary and secondary sealing using belleville washers.
  - a. Primary Seal: Combination of thrust washer and thrust washer protector.
  - b. Secondary Seal: Adjustable stem packing composed of RPTFE V-rings.

12. Stem Seals for Valves Larger than NPS 2: Independent packing gland, adjusted without removing mounting hardware or operator, and contoured to uniformly distribute load across packing.
  - a. Primary Seal: Combination of thrust washer and thrust washer protector.
  - b. Secondary Seal: Adjustable stem packing composed of RPTFE V-rings.
13. Label each valve with following:
  - a. Manufacturer's name, model number, and serial number.
  - b. Body size.
  - c. Flow directional arrow.

G. Pressure-Independent Ball Valves NPS 2 and Smaller:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Belimo Aircontrols (USA), Inc.
  - b. HCI; Hydronics Components Inc.
2. Integral Pressure Regulator: Located upstream of ball to regulate pressure, to maintain a constant pressure differential while operating within a pressure differential range of 5 to 50 psig.
3. Body: Forged brass, nickel plated, and with threaded ends.
4. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
5. Stem and Stem Extension: Chrome-plated brass, blowout-proof design.
6. Stem sleeve or other approved means to allow valve to be opened and closed without damaging field-applied insulation and insulation vapor barrier seal.
7. Ball Seats: Reinforced PTFE.
8. Stem Seal: Reinforced PTFE packing ring stem seal with threaded packing ring follower to retain the packing ring under design pressure with the linkage removed. Alternative means, such as EPDM O-rings, are acceptable if equivalent cycle endurance can be achieved.
9. Flow Characteristic: Equal percentage.

## 2.3 BUTTERFLY-STYLE CONTROL VALVES

A. General:

1. Unless otherwise indicated, butterfly valves shall have a minimum range ability of 10:1. All valves shall be guaranteed to have not more than 1% leakage of design flow rate at the pump shut-off pressure
2. Flanges shall meet all ANSI 125 and ANSI 150 standards.
3. Valve shall have a long stem design to accommodate 2 inches insulation.
- 4.

B. Two-Way Butterfly Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:

- a. Keystone; Tyco Flow Control.
  2. Body: Cast iron ASTM A 126, Class B, ductile iron ASTM A 536 or cast steel ASTM A 216/A 216M WCB fully lugged, suitable for mating to ASME B16.5 flanges.
  3. Disc: 316 stainless steel.
  4. Shaft: 316 or 17-4 PH stainless steel.
  5. Seat: Reinforced EPDM or reinforced PTFE with retaining ring.
  6. Shaft Bushings: Reinforced PTFE or stainless steel.
  7. Replaceable seat, disc, and shaft bushings.
  8. Corrosion-resistant nameplate indicating:
    - a. Manufacturer's name, model number, and serial number.
    - b. Body size.
    - c. Body and trim materials.
    - d. Flow arrow.
- C. Three-Way Butterfly Valves:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
    - a. Keystone; Tyco Flow Control.
  2. Arrangement: Two valves mated to a fabricated tee with interconnecting mechanical linkage.
  3. Performance:
    - a. Bi-directional bubble tight shutoff at 250 psig.
    - b. Comply with MSS SP-67 or MSS SP-68.
    - c. Rotation: Zero to 90 degrees.
    - d. Linear or modified equal percentage flow characteristic.
  4. Body: Cast iron ASTM A 126, Class B, ductile iron ASTM A 536 or cast steel ASTM A 216/A 216M WCB fully lugged, suitable for mating to ASME B16.5 flanges.
  5. Disc: 316 stainless steel.
  6. Shaft: 316 or 17-4 PH stainless steel.
  7. Seat: Reinforced EPDM or reinforced PTFE seat with retaining ring.
  8. Shaft Bushings: Reinforced PTFE or stainless steel.
  9. Replaceable seat, disc, and shaft bushings.
  10. Corrosion-resistant nameplate indicating:
    - a. Manufacturer's name, model number, and serial number.
    - b. Body size.
    - c. Body and trim materials.
    - d. Flow arrow.

## 2.4 GLOBE-STYLE CONTROL VALVES

### A. General Globe-Style Valve Requirements:

1. Globe-style control valve body dimensions shall comply with ISA 75.08.01.
2. Construct the valves to be serviceable from the top.
3. For cage guided valves, trim shall be field interchangeable for different valve flow characteristics, such as equal percentage, linear, and quick opening.
4. Reduced trim for one nominal size smaller shall be available for industrial valves NPS 1 and larger.
5. Replaceable seats and plugs.
6. Furnish each control valve with a corrosion-resistant nameplate indicating the following:
  - a. Manufacturer's name, model number, and serial number.
  - b. Body and trim size.
  - c. Arrow indicating direction of flow.

B. Two-Way Globe Valves NPS 2 and Smaller:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
  - a. Johnson Controls, Inc.
2. Globe Style: Single port.
3. Body: Cast bronze or forged brass with ASME B16.5, Class 250 rating.
4. End Connections: Threaded.
5. Bonnet: Screwed.
6. Packing: PTFE V-ring.
7. Plug: Top guided.
8. Plug, Seat, and Stem: Brass or stainless steel.
9. Process Temperature Range: 35 to 248 deg F.
10. Ambient Operating Temperature: 35 to 150 deg F.
11. Leakage: FCI 70-2, Class IV.
12. Rangeability: 25 to 1.
13. Equal percentage flow characteristic.

C. Three-Way Globe Valves NPS 2 and Smaller:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
  - a. Johnson Controls, Inc.
2. Globe Style: Mix flow pattern.
3. Body: Cast bronze or forged brass with ASME B16.5, Class 250 rating.
4. End Connections: Threaded.
5. Bonnet: Screwed.
6. Packing: PTFE V-ring.
7. Plug: Top guided.
8. Plug, Seat, and Stem: Brass or stainless steel.
9. Process Temperature Range: 35 to 248 deg F.
10. Ambient Operating Temperature: 35 to 150 deg F.
11. Leakage: FCI 70-2, Class IV.
12. Rangeability: 25 to 1.

13. Linear flow characteristic.

D. Two-Way Globe Valves NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 6:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
  - a. Johnson Controls, Inc.
2. Globe Style: Single port.
3. Body: Cast iron complying with ASME B61.1, Class 125.
4. End Connections: Flanged, suitable for mating to ASME B16.5, Class 150 flanges.
5. Bonnet: Bolted.
6. Packing: PTFE cone-ring.
7. Plug: Top or bottom guided.
8. Plug, Seat, and Stem: Brass or stainless steel.
9. Process Temperature Rating: 35 to 281 deg F.
10. Leakage: 0.1 percent of maximum flow.
11. Rangeability: Varies with valve size between 6 and 10 to 1.
12. Modified linear flow characteristic.

E. Three-Way Globe Valves NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 6:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
  - a. Johnson Controls, Inc.
2. Globe Style: Mix flow pattern.
3. Body: Cast iron complying with ASME B61.1, Class 125.
4. End Connections: Flanged suitable for mating to ASME B16.5, Class 150 flanges.
5. Bonnet: Bolted.
6. Packing: PTFE cone-ring.
7. Plug: Top or bottom guided.
8. Plug, Seat, and Stem: Brass or stainless steel.
9. Process Temperature Rating: 35 to 281 deg F.
10. Leakage: 0.1 percent of maximum flow.
11. Rangeability: Varies with valve size between 6 and 10 to 1.
12. Modified linear flow characteristic.

## 2.5 SOLENOID VALVES

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:

1. ASCO Valve, Inc.

B. Description:

1. Action: Either normally open or normally closed in the event of electrical power failure as required by the application.

2. Size to close against the system pressure.
3. Manual override capable.
4. Heavy-duty assembly.
5. Body: Brass or stainless steel.
6. Seats and Discs: NBR or PTFE.
7. Solenoid Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 4.

## 2.6 SELF-CONTAINED TEMPERATURE REGULATING VALVE

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:

1. Jordan Valve; Richards Industries Company.

B. Description:

1. Self-contained and self-operated temperature regulating valve. Direct acting or reverse acting as required by application.
2. Direct Acting: A rise in temperature at the sensing bulb vaporizes some of the liquid in the bulb, forcing the remaining liquid through a capillary to apply pressure at the diaphragm, in turn closing the valve. The valve shall fail open.
3. Reverse Acting: A rise in temperature at the sensing bulb vaporizes some of the liquid in the bulb, forcing the remaining liquid through a capillary to apply pressure at the diaphragm, in turn opening the valve. The valve shall fail close.
4. Body: Carbon steel.
5. Trim and Seats: 300 series stainless steel.
6. Yoke: Cast iron.
7. Actuator: 300 series stainless steel.
8. End Connections: Threaded.
9. Capillary, Bulb, and Armor: 300 series stainless steel.
10. Thermal Fill Material: Match to the temperature range.
11. Thermowell: Type 316 stainless-steel thermowell sized to fit the bulb and pipe.

C. Operational Characteristics: Control flow from between 5 to 100 percent of rated capacity.

D. Interchangeable trim for one size smaller.

E. Valve Leakage: Comply with FCI 70-2, Class IV.

F. Temperature Range: Match application.

1. Drains from Hot Equipment to Sanitary Sewer System: 105 to 165 deg F.

G. Valve Size: Size to pass the design flow required with not more than 95 percent of the stem lift while operating at design pressure.

## 2.7 ELECTRIC AND ELECTRONIC CONTROL VALVE ACTUATORS

- A. Actuators for Hydronic Control Valves: Capable of closing valve against system pump shutoff head.
- B. Actuators for Steam Control Valves: Shutoff against 1.5 times steam design pressure.
- C. Position indicator and graduated scale on each actuator.
- D. Type: Motor operated, with or without gears, electric and electronic.
- E. Voltage: 24-V ac.
- F. Deliver torque required for continuous uniform movement of controlled device from limit to limit when operated at rated voltage.
- G. Function properly within a range of 85 to 120 percent of nameplate voltage.
- H. Construction:
  - 1. For Actuators Less Than 100 W: Fiber or reinforced nylon gears with steel shaft, copper alloy or nylon bearings, and pressed steel enclosures.
  - 2. For Actuators from 100 to 400 W: Gears ground steel, oil immersed, shaft hardened steel running in bronze, copper alloy or ball bearings. Operator and gear trains shall be totally enclosed in dustproof cast-iron, cast-steel or cast-aluminum housing.
  - 3. For Actuators Larger Than 400 W: Totally enclosed reversible induction motors with auxiliary hand crank and permanently lubricated bearings.
  - 4. All control valves shall have a visual position indicator.
  - 5. All non-spring return actuators shall have an external clutch/manual gear release to allow manual positioning of the valve when the actuator is not powered. Spring return actuators with more than 60-in-LB torque capacity shall have a manual crank for this purpose. In lieu of a manual positioning device, it will be acceptable for the contractor to provide a full line size bypass around the control valve. Three bypass shut off valves shall be provided to allow the control valve to be isolated while the open stop valve in the bypass allows flow around the control valve.
- I. Field Adjustment:
  - 1. Spring Return Actuators: Easily switchable from fail open to fail closed in the field without replacement.
  - 2. Gear Type Actuators: External manual adjustment mechanism to allow manual positioning when the actuator is not powered.
- J. Two-Position Actuators: Single direction, spring return or reversing type.
- K. Modulating Actuators:
  - 1. Operation: Capable of stopping at all points across full range, and starting in either direction from any point in range.
  - 2. Control Input Signal:

- a. Three Point, Tristate, or Floating Point: Clockwise and counter-clockwise inputs. One input drives actuator to open position and other input drives actuator to close position. No signal of either input remains in last position.
- b. Proportional: Actuator drives proportional to input signal and modulates throughout its angle of rotation. Suitable for zero- to 10- or 2- to 10-V dc 4- to 20-mA signals.
- c. Pulse Width Modulation (PWM): Actuator drives to a specified position according to pulse duration (length) of signal from a dry contact closure, triac sink, or source controller.
- d. Programmable Multi-Function:
  - 1) Control Input, Position Feedback, and Running Time: Factory or field programmable.
  - 2) Diagnostic: Feedback of hunting or oscillation, mechanical overload, mechanical travel, and mechanical load limit.
  - 3) Service Data: Include, at a minimum, number of hours powered and number of hours in motion.
3. All modulating actuators shall have an external, built-in switch to allow the reversing of direction of rotation

L. Position Feedback:

1. Equip where indicated two-position actuators with limits switches or other positive means of a position indication signal for remote monitoring of open and close position.
2. Equip where indicated, equip modulating actuators with a position feedback through current or voltage signal for remote monitoring.
3. Provide a position indicator and graduated scale on each actuator indicating open and closed travel limits.

M. Fail-Safe:

1. Where indicated, provide actuator to fail to an end position.
2. Internal spring return mechanism to drive controlled device to an end position (open or close) on loss of power.
3. Batteries, capacitors, and other non-mechanical forms of fail-safe operation are acceptable only where uniquely indicated.
4. Any mechanical equipment with direct introduction of outside air shall require fail-safe spring return valve actuators. Terminal equipment (VAV ATU, &c.) without direct introduction of outside air are permitted to have actuators that maintain their last commanded position when power is lost to the actuator. Equipment isolation and differential or temperature pressure bypass valves shall not be required to be provided with a spring return actuator provided that a failure of the valve to return to its "fail-safe" position will not incur damage to property or the system it serves.

N. Integral Overload Protection:

1. Provide against overload throughout the entire operating range in both directions.
2. Electronic overload, digital rotation sensing circuitry, mechanical end switches, or magnetic clutches are acceptable methods of protection.

O. Valve Attachment:

1. Unless otherwise required for valve interface, provide an actuator designed to be directly coupled to valve shaft without the need for connecting linkages.
2. Attach actuator to valve drive shaft in a way that ensures maximum transfer of power and torque without slippage.
3. Bolt and set screw method of attachment is acceptable only if provided with at least two points of attachment.

P. Temperature and Humidity:

1. Temperature: Suitable for operating temperature range encountered by application with minimum operating temperature range of minus 20 to plus 120 deg F.
2. Humidity: Suitable for humidity range encountered by application; minimum operating range shall be from 5 to 95 percent relative humidity, non-condensing.

Q. Enclosure:

1. Suitable for ambient conditions encountered by application.
2. NEMA 250, Type 2 for indoor and protected applications.
3. NEMA 250, Type 4 or Type 4X for outdoor and unprotected applications.
4. Provide actuator enclosure with heater and control where required by application.
5. Actuators used in wet conditions and/or in or near outdoor air streams shall have NEMA 2 housings.

R. Stroke Time:

1. Operate valve from fully closed to fully open within 60 75 90 150 Insert number seconds.
2. Operate valve from fully open to fully closed within 60 seconds.
3. Move valve to failed position within 15 seconds.
4. Select operating speed to be compatible with equipment and system operation.

S. Sound:

1. Spring Return: 62 dBA.
2. Non-Spring Return: 45 dBA.

## 2.8 POWER SUPPLIES AND LINE FILTERING

A. Power Supplies & Control Transformers. Control transformers and power supplies shall be UL-Listed. Provide Class 2 current-limiting type or over-current protection in both primary and secondary circuits for Class 2 service not to exceed 100 VA in accordance with the applicable following requirements or as directed by the AHJ.

1. NEC 2011 (NFPA 70) Chapter 7 Article 725 – Class 1, Class 2 and Class 3 Remote-Control, Signaling and Power-Limited Circuits.
2. NEC 2011 (NFPA 70) Chapter 9 Table 11(A) and Table 11(B).
3. Canadian Electrical Code, Part 1 (CSA C22.1-12) Rule 16-200.

B. DC Power Supplies. DC power supply output shall match output current and voltage requirements. Power supply shall be half-wave rectified type with the following minimum specifications:

1. Output ripple: 5.0 mV maximum peak-to-peak.

2. Regulation: 1.0% line and load combined.
  3. Response: 100 ms for 50% load changes.
  4. Built-in overvoltage and overcurrent protection and able to withstand a 150% current overload for a minimum of three (3) seconds without tripping or failure.
- C. Power Line Filtering. Provide transient voltage and surge suppression for all workstations and controllers either internally or as an external component.
- D. Valve Actuators shall be modulating, floating (tri-state) with feedback signal, two-position and spring return fail safe as called out in the control sequence of operation or indicated on the drawings. All modulating valves shall be positive positioning, and respond to a [0-10VDC] [2-10 VDC] [4-20 mA with a load resistor] with the exception that terminal unit zone valves may use an actuator that responds to a floating or tri-state with feedback signal.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine roughing-in for valves installed in piping to verify actual locations of piping connections before installation.
- C. Prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### 3.2 CONTROL VALVE APPLICATIONS

- A. Unless otherwise noted, controls valves shall be globe pattern.
- B. Do not use butterfly valves for steam service or modulating applications.

#### 3.3 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Furnish and install products required to satisfy most stringent requirements indicated.
- B. Install products level, plumb, parallel, and perpendicular with building construction.
- C. Properly support instruments, tubing, piping, wiring, and conduits to comply with requirements indicated. Brace all products to prevent lateral movement and sway or a break in attachment when subjected to a force.
- D. Provide ceiling, floor, roof, and wall openings and sleeves required by installation. Before proceeding with drilling, punching, or cutting, check location first for concealed products that could potentially be damaged. Patch, flash, grout, seal, and refinish openings to match adjacent condition.

- E. Firestop penetrations made in fire-rated assemblies and seal penetrations made in acoustically rated assemblies.
- F. Fastening Hardware:
  - 1. Stillson wrenches, pliers, and other tools that will cause injury to or mar surfaces of rods, nuts, and other parts are prohibited for assembling and tightening nuts.
  - 2. Tighten bolts and nuts firmly and uniformly. Do not overstress threads by excessive force or by oversized wrenches.
  - 3. Lubricate threads of bolts, nuts, and screws with graphite and oil before assembly.
- G. Install products in locations that are accessible and that will permit calibration and maintenance from floor, equipment platforms, or catwalks. Where ladders are required for Owner's access, confirm unrestricted ladder placement is possible under occupied condition.
- H. Corrosive Environments:
  - 1. Use products that are suitable for environment to which they will be subjected.
  - 2. If possible, avoid or limit use of materials in corrosive environments, including, but not limited to, the following:
    - a. Laboratory exhaust airstreams.
    - b. Process exhaust airstreams.
  - 3. Use Type 316 stainless-steel tubing and fittings when in contact with a corrosive environment.
  - 4. When conduit is in contact with a corrosive environment, use Type 316 stainless-steel conduit and fittings or conduit and fittings that are coated with a corrosive-resistant coating that is suitable for environment.
  - 5. Where control devices are located in a corrosive environment and are not corrosive resistant from manufacturer, field install products in a NEMA 250, Type 4X enclosure constructed of Type 316L stainless steel.

### 3.4 ELECTRIC POWER

- A. Furnish and install electrical power to products requiring electrical connections.
- B. Furnish and install circuit breakers. Comply with requirements in Section 262816 "Enclosed Switches and Circuit Breakers."
- C. Furnish and install power wiring, as per electrical specifications
- D. Furnish and install raceways as per electrical specifications.
- E. Electrical subcontractor shall provide all required line voltage. The mechanical subcontractor shall provide all low voltage wiring and power supply transformers in coordination with the controls subcontractor and control actuator requirements.

### 3.5 CONTROL VALVES

- A. Install pipe reducers for valves smaller than line size. Position reducers as close to valve as possible but at distance to avoid interference and impact to performance. Install with manufacturer-recommended clearance.
- B. Install flanges or unions to allow drop-in and -out valve installation.
- C. Where indicated, install control valve with three-valve bypass manifold to allow for control valve isolation and removal without interrupting system flow by providing manual throttling valve in bypass pipe.
- D. Install drain valves in piping upstream and downstream of each control valve installed in a three-valve manifold and for each control valve larger than NPS 4.
- E. Install pressure temperature taps in piping upstream and downstream of each control valve larger than NPS 2.
- F. Valve Orientation:
  - 1. Where possible, install globe and ball valves installed in horizontal piping with stems upright and not more than 15 degrees off of vertical, not inverted.
  - 2. Install valves in a position to allow full stem movement.
  - 3. Where possible, install butterfly valves that are installed in horizontal piping with stems in horizontal position and with low point of disc opening with direction of flow.
- G. Clearance:
  - 1. Locate valves for easy access and provide separate support of valves that cannot be handled by service personnel without hoisting mechanism.
  - 2. Install valves with at least 12 inches of clear space around valve and between valves and adjacent surfaces.
- H. Threaded Valves:
  - 1. Note internal length of threads in valve ends, and proximity of valve internal seat or wall, to determine how far pipe should be threaded into valve.
  - 2. Align threads at point of assembly.
  - 3. Apply thread compound to external pipe threads, except where dry seal threading is specified.
  - 4. Assemble joint, wrench tight. Apply wrench on valve end as pipe is being threaded.
- I. Flanged Valves:
  - 1. Align flange surfaces parallel.
  - 2. Assemble joints by sequencing bolt tightening to make initial contact of flanges and gaskets as flat and parallel as possible. Use suitable lubricants on bolt threads. Tighten bolts gradually and uniformly with a torque wrench.

### 3.6 CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect electrical devices and components to electrical grounding system. Comply with electrical specifications

### 3.7 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Each piece of wire, cable, and tubing shall have the same designation at each end for operators to determine continuity at points of connection. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 230553.
- B. Install engraved phenolic nameplate with valve identification on valve.

### 3.8 CLEANING

- A. Remove grease, mastic, adhesives, dust, dirt, stains, fingerprints, labels, and other foreign materials from exposed interior and exterior surfaces.
- B. Wash and shine glazing.
- C. Polish glossy surfaces to a clean shine.

### 3.9 CHECKOUT PROCEDURES

- A. Control Valve Checkout:
  - 1. Check installed products before continuity tests, leak tests, and calibration.
  - 2. Check valves for proper location and accessibility.
  - 3. Check valves for proper installation for direction of flow, elevation, orientation, insertion depth, or other applicable considerations that will impact performance.
  - 4. For pneumatic products, verify air supply for each product is properly installed.
  - 5. For pneumatic valves, verify that pressure gauges are provided in each air line to valve actuator and positioner.
  - 6. Verify that control valves are installed correctly for flow direction.
  - 7. Verify that valve body attachment is properly secured and sealed.
  - 8. Verify that valve actuator and linkage attachment are secure.
  - 9. Verify that actuator wiring is complete, enclosed, and connected to correct power source.
  - 10. Verify that valve ball, disc, and plug travel are unobstructed.
  - 11. After piping systems have been tested and put into service, but before insulating and balancing, inspect each valve for leaks. Adjust or replace packing to stop leaks. Replace the valve if leaks persist.

### 3.10 ADJUSTMENT, CALIBRATION, AND TESTING

- A. Stroke and adjust control valves following manufacturer's recommended procedure, from 100 percent open to 100 percent closed back to 100 percent open.

- B. Stroke control valves with pilot positioners. Adjust valve and positioner following manufacturer's recommended procedure, so valve is 100 percent closed, 50 percent closed, and 100 percent open at proper air pressures.
- C. Check and document open and close cycle times for applications with a cycle time of less than 30 seconds.
- D. For control valves equipped with positive position indication, check feedback signal at multiple positions to confirm proper position indication.

END OF SECTION 230923.11

## SECTION 230923.12 - CONTROL DAMPERS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes the following types of control dampers and actuators for DDC systems:
  - 1. Rectangular control dampers.
  - 2. General control-damper actuator requirements.
  - 3. Electric and electronic actuators.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. DDC: Direct-digital control.
- B. RMS: Root-mean-square value of alternating voltage, which is the square root of the mean value of the square of the voltage values during a complete cycle.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product, including the following:
  - 1. Construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
  - 2. Operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished accessories indicating process operating range, accuracy over range, control signal over range, default control signal with loss of power, calibration data specific to each unique application, electrical power requirements, and limitations of ambient operating environment, including temperature and humidity.
  - 3. Product description with complete technical data, performance curves, and product specification sheets.
  - 4. Installation instructions, including factors affecting performance.
- B. Shop Drawings:
  - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting details.
  - 2. Include details of product assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
  - 3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

4. Include diagrams for air and process signal tubing.
5. Include diagrams for pneumatic signal and main air tubing.

C. Delegated-Design Submittal:

1. Schedule and design calculations for control dampers and actuators, including the following.
  - a. Flow at project design and minimum flow conditions.
  - b. Face velocity at project design and minimum airflow conditions.
  - c. Pressure drop across damper at project design and minimum airflow conditions.
  - d. AMCA 500D damper installation arrangement used to calculate and schedule pressure drop, as applicable to installation.
  - e. Maximum close-off pressure.
  - f. Leakage airflow at maximum system pressure differential (fan close-off pressure).
  - g. Torque required at worst case condition for sizing actuator.
  - h. Actuator selection indicating torque provided.

## 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Plan drawings and corresponding product installation details, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
1. Product installation location shown in relationship to room, duct, and equipment.
  2. Size and location of wall access panels for control dampers and actuators installed behind walls.
  3. Size and location of ceiling access panels for control dampers and actuators installed above inaccessible ceilings.

## 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For control dampers to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE AND GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. ASME Compliance: Fabricate and label products to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code where required by authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Ground Fault: Products shall not fail due to ground fault condition when suitably grounded.

- D. Backup Power Source: Systems and equipment served by a backup power source shall have associated control damper actuators served from a backup power source.
- E. All Automatic Control Dampers provided as a part of this Specification shall bear the AMCA Seal as an indication that they comply with all requirements of the AMCA Certified Ratings Programs.
- F. Maximum leakage rate through any 48 inches by 48 inches closed damper in any application shall not exceed 10.0 cfm per sq. ft. of damper face area at 4 inches of water pressure differential and a maximum closing torque of 4 inch-lbs./sq. ft. of damper face area. Damper leakage ratings shall be certified in accordance with AMCA Standard 500-D.
- G. Environmental Conditions:
  - 1. Provide electric control-damper actuators, with protective enclosures satisfying the following minimum requirements unless more stringent requirements are indicated. Electric control-damper actuators not available with integral enclosures, complying with requirements indicated, shall be housed in protective secondary enclosures.
    - a. Hazardous Locations: Explosion-proof rating for condition.
    - b. All outdoor air damper components shall be suitable for applications operating in the temperature range of -40F to 167F.
- H. Selection Criteria:
  - 1. Fail positions unless otherwise indicated:
    - a. Supply Air: Open.
    - b. Return Air: Open.
    - c. Outdoor Air: Close.
    - d. Mixed Air: Open.
    - e. Exhaust Air: Close.
  - 2. Dampers shall have stable operation throughout full range of operation, from design to minimum airflow over varying pressures and temperatures encountered.
  - 3. Select modulating dampers for a pressure drop of 5 percent of fan total static pressure unless otherwise indicated.
  - 4. Two-position dampers shall be full size of duct or equipment connection unless otherwise indicated.
  - 5. Unless otherwise indicated, use parallel blade configuration for two-position control, equipment isolation service. Use opposed blade configuration for modulating, mixing and any application of upstream critical components.
  - 6. Pneumatic, two-position control dampers shall provide a smooth opening and closing characteristic slow enough to avoid excessive pressure. Dampers with pneumatic actuators shall have an adjustable opening time (valve full closed to full open) and an adjustable closing time (valve full open to full closed) ranging from zero to 10 seconds. Opening and closing times shall be independently adjustable. (Not Used For This Project)
  - 7. Control-damper, pneumatic-control signal shall not exceed 200 feet. For longer distances, provide an electric/electronic control signal to the damper and an electric solenoid valve or electro-pneumatic transducer at the damper to convert the control signal to pneumatic. (Not Used For This Project)

## 2.2 RECTANGULAR CONTROL DAMPERS

### A. General Requirements:

1. Unless otherwise indicated, use parallel blade configuration for two-position control, equipment isolation service, and when mixing two airstreams. For other applications, use opposed blade configuration.
2. Factory assemble multiple damper sections to provide a single damper assembly of size required by the application.

### B. Rectangular Dampers with Aluminum Airfoil Blades:

1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. **Ruskin Company.**
  - b. Arrow louver and Damper co.
  - c. Nailer Hart
  - d. Greenheck
2. **Performance:**
  - a. Leakage: AMCA 511, Class 1A. Leakage shall not exceed 3 cfm/sq. ft. against 1-in. wg differential static pressure.
  - b. Pressure Drop: 0.05-in. wg at 1500 fpm across a 24-by-24-inch damper when tested according to AMCA 500-D, figure 5.3.
  - c. Velocity: Up to 6000 fpm.
  - d. Temperature: Minus 40 to plus 185 deg F.
  - e. Pressure Rating: Damper close-off pressure equal to fan shutoff pressure with a maximum blade deflection of 1/200 of blade length.
  - f. Damper shall have AMCA seal for both air leakage and air performance.
3. **Construction:**
  - a. **Frame:**
    - 1) Material: ASTM B 211, Alloy 6063 T5 extruded-aluminum profiles, 0.07 inch thick.
    - 2) Hat-shaped channel with integral flange(s). Mating face shall be a minimum of 1 inch.
    - 3) Width not less than 5 inches.
  - b. **Blades:**
    - 1) Hollow, airfoil, extruded aluminum.
    - 2) Parallel or opposed blade configuration as required by application.
    - 3) Material: ASTM B 211, Alloy 6063 T5 aluminum, 0.07 inch thick.
    - 4) Width not to exceed 6 inches.
    - 5) Length as required by close-off pressure, not to exceed 48 inches.

- c. Seals:
    - 1) Blades: Replaceable, mechanically attached extruded silicone, vinyl, or plastic composite.
    - 2) Jambs: Stainless steel, compression type.
  - d. Axles: 0.5-inch- diameter stainless steel, mechanically attached to blades.
  - e. Bearings:
    - 1) Molded synthetic or stainless-steel sleeve mounted in frame.
    - 2) Where blade axles are installed in vertical position, provide thrust bearings.
  - f. Linkage:
    - 1) Concealed in frame.
    - 2) Constructed of aluminum and galvanized plated or stainless steel.
    - 3) Hardware: Stainless steel.
  - g. Transition:
    - 1) For round and flat oval duct applications, provide damper assembly with integral transitions to mate to adjoining field connection.
    - 2) Factory mount damper in a sleeve with a close transition to mate to field connection.
    - 3) Damper size and sleeve shall be connection size plus 2 inches.
    - 4) Sleeve length shall be not less than 12 inches for dampers without jackshafts and shall be not less than 16 inches for dampers with jackshafts.
    - 5) Sleeve material shall match adjacent duct.
  - h. Additional Corrosion Protection for Corrosive Environments: **(Not Used)**
    - 1) Provide anodized finish for aluminum surfaces in contact with airstream. Anodized finish shall be a minimum of 0.0007 inch thick.
    - 2) Axles, damper linkage, and hardware shall be constructed of Type 316L stainless steel.
4. Airflow Measurement:
- a. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - 1) **Ruskin Company.**
  - b. Where indicated, provide damper assembly with integral airflow monitoring.
  - c. Zero- to 10-V dc or 4- to 20-mA scaled output signal for remote monitoring of actual airflow.
  - d. Accuracy shall be within 5 percent of the actual flow rate between the range of minimum and design airflow. For applications with a large variation in range between the minimum and design airflow, configure the damper sections and flow measurement assembly as required to comply with the stated accuracy over the entire modulating range.

- e. Provide a straightening device as part of the flow measurement assembly to achieve the specified accuracy with configuration indicated.
- f. Suitable for operation in untreated and unfiltered air.
- g. Provide temperature and altitude compensation and correction to maintain accuracy over temperature range encountered at site altitude.
- h. Provide automatic zeroing feature.

5. Airflow Control:

- a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - 1) Ruskin Company.
- b. Where indicated, provide damper assembly with integral airflow measurement and control.
- c. A factory-furnished and -calibrated controller shall be programmed, in nonvolatile EPROM, with application-specific airflow set point and range.
- d. The controller and actuator shall communicate to control the desired airflow.
- e. The controller shall receive a zero- to 10-V dc input signal and report a zero- to 20-mA output signal that is proportional to the airflow.
- f. Airflow measurement and control range shall be suitable for operation between 150 to 2000 fpm.
- g. Ambient Operating Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 140 deg F.
- h. Ambient Operating Humidity Range: 5 to 95 percent relative humidity, non-condensing.
- i. Provide unit with control transformer rated for not less than 85 VA. Provide transformer with primary and secondary protection and primary disconnecting means. Coordinate requirements with field power connection.
- j. Provide screw terminals for interface to field wiring.
- k. Factory mount electronics within a NEMA 250, Type 1 painted steel enclosure.

C. Industrial-Duty Rectangular Dampers with Steel Airfoil Blades:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
  - a. Ruskin Company.
  - b. Arrow Louver and Damper Co.
  - c. Nailer Hart
  - d. Greenheck
- 2. Performance:
  - a. Leakage: Leakage shall not exceed 3 cfm/sq. ft. against 1-in. wg differential static pressure.
  - b. Pressure Drop: 0.06-in. wg at 2000 fpm across a 48-by-48-inch damper when tested according to AMCA 500-D, figure 5.3.
  - c. Velocity: Up to 4000 fpm.
  - d. Temperature: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.

- e. Pressure Rating: Damper close-off pressure equal to fan shutoff pressure with a maximum blade deflection of 1/200 of blade length, minimum 10-in. wg.
- 3. Construction:
  - a. Frame:
    - 1) Material: Galvanized or stainless steel, 0.11 inch thick.
    - 2) C-shaped channel. Mating face shall be a minimum of 1 inch.
    - 3) Width not less than 3 inches.
  - b. Blades:
    - 1) Hollow, airfoil, galvanized or stainless steel.
    - 2) Parallel or opposed blade configuration as required by application.
    - 3) Material: Galvanized or stainless steel, 0.06 inch thick.
    - 4) Width not to exceed 6 inches.
    - 5) Length not to exceed 48 inches.
  - c. Seals:
    - 1) Blades: Replaceable, mechanically attached EPDM or extruded silicone.
    - 2) Jambs: Stainless steel, double compression type.
  - d. Axles: 0.5- or 0.75-inch- diameter stainless steel, mechanically attached to blades and continuous from end to end.
  - e. Bearings:
    - 1) Stainless-steel sleeve type mounted in frame.
    - 2) Where blade axles are installed in vertical position, provide thrust bearings.
  - f. Linkage:
    - 1) Face linkage exposed to airstream.
    - 2) Constructed of plated or stainless steel.
    - 3) Hardware: Stainless steel.
- D. Insulated Rectangular Dampers:
  - 1. Performance:
    - a. Leakage: AMCA 511, Class 1A. Leakage shall not exceed 3 cfm/sq. ft. against 1-in. wg differential static pressure and shall not exceed 4.9 cfm/sq. ft. against 4-in. wg differential static pressure at minus 40 deg F.
    - b. Pressure Drop: 0.1-in. wg at 1500 fpm across a 24-by-24-inch damper when tested according to AMCA 500-D, figure 5.3.
    - c. Velocity: Up to 4000 fpm.
    - d. Temperature: Minus 100 to plus 185 deg F.
    - e. Pressure Rating: Damper close-off pressure equal to fan shutoff pressure with a maximum blade deflection of 1/200 of blade length.
    - f. Damper shall have AMCA seal for both air leakage and air performance.

## 2. Construction:

## a. Frame:

- 1) Material: ASTM B 211, Alloy 6063 T5 extruded-aluminum profiles, 0.08 inch thick.
- 2) C-shaped channel with integral flange(s). Mating face shall be a minimum of 1 inch.
- 3) Width not less than 4 inches.
- 4) Entire frame shall be thermally broken by means of polyurethane resin pockets, complete with thermal cuts.
- 5) Damper frame shall be insulated with polystyrofoam on four sides.

## b. Blades:

- 1) Hollow shaped, extruded aluminum.
- 2) Blades shall be internally insulated with expanded polyurethane foam and shall be thermally broken. Complete blade shall have an insulating factor of R-2.29 and a temperature index of 55.
- 3) Parallel or opposed blade configuration as required by application.
- 4) Material: ASTM B 211, Alloy 6063 T5 aluminum, 0.08 inch thick.
- 5) Width not to exceed 6 inches.
- 6) Length as required by close-off pressure, not to exceed 48 inches.

## c. Seals: Blade and frame seals shall be of flexible silicone and secured in an integral slot within the aluminum extrusions.

## d. Axles: 0.44-inch- diameter plated or stainless steel, mechanically attached to blades.

## e. Bearings:

- 1) Bearings shall be composed of a Celcon inner bearing fixed to axle, rotating within a polycarbonate outer bearing inserted in the frame, resulting in no metal-to-metal or metal-to-plastic contact.
- 2) Where blade axles are installed in vertical position, provide thrust bearings.

## f. Linkage:

- 1) Concealed in frame.
- 2) Constructed of aluminum and plated or stainless steel.
- 3) Hardware: Stainless steel.

## g. Transition:

- 1) For round and flat oval duct applications, provide damper assembly with integral transitions to mate to adjoining field connection.
- 2) Factory mount damper in a sleeve with a close transition to mate to field connection.
- 3) Damper size and sleeve shall be connection size plus 2 inches.
- 4) Sleeve length shall be not less than 12 inches for dampers without jackshafts and shall be not less than 16 inches for dampers with jackshafts.
- 5) Sleeve material shall match adjacent duct.

h. Additional Corrosion Protection for Corrosive Environments:

- 1) Provide anodized finish for aluminum surfaces in contact with airstream. Anodized finish shall be a minimum of 0.0007 inch thick.
- 2) Axles, damper linkage, and hardware shall be constructed of Type 316L stainless steel.

2.3 GENERAL, OPERATING LINKAGES AND DAMPER ACCESSORIES

- A. All operating linkages and/or damper accessories required for installation and application in accordance with specification design intent and manufacturer's installation procedures shall be provided
- B. Operating linkages provided external to dampers (crank arms, connecting rods, shaft extensions, &c.) for transmitting motion from the actuator/operator to dampers shall be designed as to functionally operate a load equal to or in excess of 300% of the maximum required operating force for the damper.
- C. Crank arms and connecting rods shall be adjustable. Linkages shall be brass, bronze, zinc-coated steel, or stainless steel.
- D. Adjustments of Crank Arms shall control the position of the damper
- E. Use of Operating Linkages external to damper drive shaft shall neither delay nor impede operation of the damper in a manner of performance less than a direct-coupled damper actuator. Operating linkages shall not under any circumstances be permitted to flex, warp, shift &c. under normal operation of connected damper sections.

2.4 GENERAL, CONTROL-DAMPER ACTUATORS REQUIREMENTS

- A. A. Control damper actuators shall be electronic direct-coupled OR pneumatic pilot/positioned type. Actuators shall have a means for reversing drive direction and a manual override accessible at the front cover
- B. Actuators shall operate related damper(s) with sufficient reserve power to provide smooth modulating action or two-position action and proper speed of response at velocity and pressure conditions to which the damper is subjected.
- C. Actuators shall produce sufficient power and torque to close off against the maximum system pressures encountered. Actuators shall be sized to close off against the fan shutoff pressure as a minimum requirement.
- D. The total damper area operated by an actuator shall not exceed 80 percent of manufacturer's maximum area rating.
- E. Provide one actuator for each damper assembly where possible. Multiple actuators required to drive a single damper assembly shall operate in unison.

- F. Avoid the use of excessively oversized actuators which could overdrive and cause linkage failure when the damper blade has reached either its full open or closed position.
- G. Use jackshafts and shaft couplings in lieu of blade-to-blade linkages when driving axially aligned damper sections.
- H. Provide mounting hardware and linkages for connecting actuator to damper. Single bolt or setscrew type fasteners are not acceptable.
- I. Select actuators to fail in desired position in the event of a power failure. For spring return fail-safe applications, an internal mechanical spring return mechanism shall be built into the actuator housing. Non-mechanical forms of fail-safe operation are not acceptable.
- J. Actuator Fail Positions: As indicated below refer to sequence of operations for additional information regarding specific equipment:
  - 1. Exhaust Air: Close.
  - 2. Outdoor Air: Close.
  - 3. Supply Air: Open.
  - 4. Return Air: Open.
- K. All non-spring return actuators shall have an external manual clutch/gear release to allow manual positioning of the damper when the actuator is not powered. Spring return actuators with more than 60 in-LB torque capacity shall have a manual crank for this purpose.

## 2.5 ELECTRIC AND ELECTRONIC ACTUATORS

- A. Type: Motor operated, with or without gears, electric and electronic.
- B. Voltage:
  - 1. 24 V.
  - 2. Actuator shall deliver torque required for continuous uniform movement of controlled device from limit to limit when operated at rated voltage.
  - 3. Actuator shall function properly within a range of 85 to 120 percent of nameplate voltage.
- C. Construction:
  - 1. Less Than 100 W: Fiber or reinforced nylon gears with steel shaft, copper alloy or nylon bearings, and pressed steel enclosures.
  - 2. 100 up to 400 W: Gears ground steel, oil immersed, shaft-hardened steel running in bronze, copper alloy, or ball bearings. Operator and gear trains shall be totally enclosed in dustproof cast-iron, cast-steel, or cast-aluminum housing.
  - 3. Greater Than 400 W: Totally enclosed reversible induction motors with auxiliary hand crank and permanently lubricated bearings.
- D. Field Adjustment:

1. Spring return actuators shall be easily switchable from fail open to fail closed in the field without replacement.
  2. Provide gear-type actuators with an external manual adjustment mechanism to allow manual positioning of the damper when the actuator is not powered.
- E. Two-Position Actuators: Single direction, spring return or reversing type.
- F. Modulating Actuators:
1. Capable of stopping at all points across full range, and starting in either direction from any point in range.
  2. Control Input Signal:
    - a. Three Point, Tristate, or Floating Point: Clockwise and counter-clockwise inputs. One input drives actuator to open position, and other input drives actuator to close position. No signal of either input remains in last position.
    - b. Proportional: Actuator drives proportional to input signal and modulates throughout its angle of rotation. Suitable for zero- to 10- or 2- to 10-V dc and 4- to 20-mA signals.
    - c. Pulse Width Modulation (PWM): Actuator drives to a specified position according to a pulse duration (length) of signal from a dry-contact closure, triac sink or source controller.
    - d. Programmable Multi-Function: (Not Used)
      - 1) Control input, position feedback, and running time shall be factory or field programmable.
      - 2) Diagnostic feedback of hunting or oscillation, mechanical overload, mechanical travel, and mechanical load limit.
      - 3) Service data, including at a minimum, number of hours powered and number of hours in motion.
- G. Position Feedback:
1. Equip where indicated, equip two-position actuators with limits switches or other positive means of a position indication signal for remote monitoring of open and close position.
  2. Equip where indicated, equip modulating actuators with a position feedback through current or voltage signal for remote monitoring.
  3. Provide a position indicator and graduated scale on each actuator indicating open and closed travel limits.
- H. Fail-Safe:
1. Where indicated, provide actuator to fail to an end position.
  2. Internal spring return mechanism to drive controlled device to an end position (open or close) on loss of power.
  3. Batteries, capacitors, and other non-mechanical forms of fail-safe operation are acceptable only where uniquely indicated.
- I. Integral Overload Protection:
1. Provide against overload throughout the entire operating range in both directions.

2. Electronic overload, digital rotation sensing circuitry, mechanical end switches, or magnetic clutches are acceptable methods of protection.

J. Damper Attachment:

1. Unless otherwise required for damper interface, provide actuator designed to be directly coupled to damper shaft without need for connecting linkages.
2. Attach actuator to damper drive shaft in a way that ensures maximum transfer of power and torque without slippage.
3. Bolt and set screw method of attachment is acceptable only if provided with at least two points of attachment.

K. Temperature and Humidity:

1. Temperature: Suitable for operating temperature range encountered by application with minimum operating temperature range of minus 20 to plus 120 deg F.
2. Humidity: Suitable for humidity range encountered by application; minimum operating range shall be from 5 to 95 percent relative humidity, non-condensing.

L. Enclosure:

1. Suitable for ambient conditions encountered by application.
2. NEMA 250, Type 2 for indoor and protected applications.
3. NEMA 250, Type 4 or Type 4X for outdoor and unprotected applications.
4. Provide actuator enclosure with a heater and controller where required by application.

M. Stroke Time:

1. Operate damper from fully closed to fully open within 60 75 90 150
2. Operate damper from fully open to fully closed within 60 75 90 150
3. Move damper to failed position within 15 30 seconds.
4. Select operating speed to be compatible with equipment and system operation.
5. Actuators operating in smoke control systems comply with governing code and NFPA requirements.

N. Sound:

1. Spring Return: 62 dBA.
2. Non-Spring Return: 45 dBA.

## 2.6 POWER SUPPLIES AND LINE FILTERING

A. Power Supplies & Control Transformers. Control transformers and power supplies shall be UL-Listed. Provide Class 2 current-limiting type or over-current protection in both primary and secondary circuits for Class 2 service not to exceed 100 VA in accordance with the applicable following requirements or as directed by the AHJ.

1. NEC 2011 (NFPA 70) Chapter 7 Article 725 – Class 1, Class 2 and Class 3 Remote-Control, Signaling and Power-Limited Circuits.
2. NEC 2011 (NFPA 70) Chapter 9 Table 11(A) and Table 11(B).
3. Canadian Electrical Code, Part 1 (CSA C22.1-12) Rule 16-200.

- B. DC Power Supplies. DC power supply output shall match output current and voltage requirements. Power supply shall be half-wave rectified type with the following minimum specifications:
  - 1. Output ripple: 5.0 mV maximum peak-to-peak.
  - 2. Regulation: 1.0% line and load combined.
  - 3. Response: 100 ms for 50% load changes.
  - 4. Built-in overvoltage and overcurrent protection and able to withstand a 150% current overload for a minimum of three (3) seconds without tripping or failure.
- C. Power Line Filtering. Provide transient voltage and surge suppression for all workstations and controllers either internally or as an external component.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine roughing-in for dampers and instruments installed in duct systems to verify actual locations of connections before installation.
- C. Prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 CONTROL-DAMPER APPLICATIONS

- A. Control Dampers:
  - a. Use opposed blade type dampers for all modulating damper applications
  - b. Use parallel blade type damper for all open closed applications.
  - c. Damper actuation stroke time shall be adjustable
  - d. Damper position feedback is required for all dampers that are part of a smoke purge or smoke control system.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Furnish and install products required to satisfy most stringent requirements indicated.
- B. Properly support dampers and actuators, tubing, wiring, and conduit to comply with requirements indicated. Brace all products to prevent lateral movement and sway or a break in attachment when subjected to a force.
- C. Provide ceiling, floor, roof, and wall openings and sleeves required by installation. Before proceeding with drilling, punching, or cutting, check location first for concealed products that could potentially be damaged. Patch, flash, grout, seal, and refinish openings to match adjacent condition.

- D. Seal penetrations made in fire-rated and acoustically rated assemblies.
- E. Fastening Hardware:
  - 1. Stillson wrenches, pliers, or other tools that will cause injury to or mar surfaces of rods, nuts, and other parts are prohibited for assembling and tightening nuts.
  - 2. Tighten bolts and nuts firmly and uniformly. Do not overstress threads by excessive force or by oversized wrenches.
  - 3. Lubricate threads of bolts, nuts, and screws with graphite and oil before assembly.
- F. Install products in locations that are accessible and that will permit calibration and maintenance from floor, equipment platforms, or catwalks. Where ladders are required for Owner's access, confirm unrestricted ladder placement is possible under occupied condition.
- G. Corrosive Environments:
  - 1. Use products that are suitable for environment to which they will be subjected.
  - 2. If possible, avoid or limit use of materials in corrosive environments, including, but not limited to, the following:
    - a. Laboratory exhaust airstreams.
    - b. Process exhaust airstreams.
  - 3. Use Type 316 stainless-steel tubing and fittings when in contact with a corrosive environment.
  - 4. When conduit is in contact with a corrosive environment, use Type 316 stainless-steel conduit and fittings or conduit and fittings that are coated with a corrosive-resistant coating that is suitable for environment.
  - 5. Where actuators are located in a corrosive environment and are not corrosive resistant from manufacturer, field install products in a NEMA 250, Type 4X enclosure constructed of Type 316L stainless steel.

### 3.4 ELECTRIC POWER

- A. Furnish and install electrical power to products requiring electrical connections.
- B. Furnish and install circuit breakers. Comply with requirements of the electrical specifications.
- C. Furnish and install power wiring. Comply with requirements of the electrical specifications.
- D. Furnish and install raceways. Comply with requirements of the electrical specifications.
- E. Electrical subcontractor shall provide all required line voltage. The mechanical subcontractor shall provide all low voltage wiring and power supply transformers in coordination with the controls subcontractor and control actuator requirements.

### 3.5 CONTROL DAMPERS

- A. Install smooth transitions, not exceeding 30 degrees, to dampers smaller than adjacent duct. Install transitions as close to damper as possible but at distance to avoid interference and impact to performance. Consult manufacturer for recommended clearance.
- B. Clearance:
  - 1. Locate dampers for easy access and provide separate support of dampers that cannot be handled by service personnel without hoisting mechanism.
  - 2. Install dampers with at least 24 inches of clear space on sides of dampers requiring service access.
- C. Service Access:
  - 1. Dampers and actuators shall be accessible for visual inspection and service.
  - 2. Install access door(s) in duct or equipment located upstream of damper to allow service personnel to hand clean any portion of damper, linkage, and actuator. Comply with requirements in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."
- D. Install dampers straight and true, level in all planes, and square in all dimensions. Install supplementary structural steel reinforcement for large multiple-section dampers if factory support alone cannot handle loading.
- E. Attach actuator(s) to damper drive shaft.
- F. For duct-mounted and equipment-mounted dampers installed outside of equipment, install a visible and accessible indication of damper position from outside.

### 3.6 CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect electrical devices and components to electrical grounding system. Comply with requirements in Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

### 3.7 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Each piece of wire, cable, and tubing shall have the same designation at each end for operators to determine continuity at points of connection. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 230553.
- B. Install engraved phenolic nameplate with damper identification on damper.

### 3.8 CHECKOUT PROCEDURES

- A. Control-Damper Checkout:
  - 1. Check installed products before continuity tests, leak tests, and calibration.
  - 2. Check dampers for proper location and accessibility.

3. Check instrument tubing for proper isolation, fittings, slope, dirt legs, drains, material, and support.
4. For pneumatic products, verify air supply for each product is properly installed.
5. For pneumatic dampers, verify that pressure gages are provided in each airline to damper actuator and positioner.
6. Verify that control dampers are installed correctly for flow direction.
7. Verify that proper blade alignment, either parallel or opposed, has been provided.
8. Verify that damper frame attachment is properly secured and sealed.
9. Verify that damper actuator and linkage attachment are secure.
10. Verify that actuator wiring is complete, enclosed, and connected to correct power source.
11. Verify that damper blade travel is unobstructed.

### 3.9 ADJUSTMENT, CALIBRATION, AND TESTING:

- A. Stroke and adjust control dampers following manufacturer's recommended procedure, from 100 percent open to 100 percent closed back to 100 percent open.
- B. Stroke control dampers with pilot positioners. Adjust damper and positioner following manufacturer's recommended procedure, so damper is 100 percent closed, 50 percent closed, and 100 percent open at proper air pressure.
- C. Check and document open and close cycle times for applications with a cycle time of less than 30 seconds.
- D. For control dampers equipped with positive position indication, check feedback signal at multiple positions to confirm proper position indication.

END OF SECTION 230923.12

## SECTION 230993 SEQUENCE OF OPERATION

### PART 1 GENERAL

#### 1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Sequence of operation:
  - 1. Summer winter change over
  - 2. Boiler Plant
  - 3. Hot Water Variable Speed Pumping System Control.
  - 4. Split System Air Handling Units
  - 5. RTU
  - 6. Return Fans
  - 7. Unit Heater
  - 8. Air Conditioning Condensate Pumps
  - 9. Miscellaneous Plumbing Equipment
  - 10. Miscellaneous.

#### 1.02 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Section 23 0901 - Digital Control Equipment.
- B. Section 230900 - Instruments and Control for HVAC.

#### 1.03 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. This Section defines the manner and method by which controls function. Requirements for each type of control system operation are specified. Equipment, devices, and system components required for control systems are specified in other Sections.
- B. Provide DDC based electronic controls, panels, wiring and all accessories required to achieve the specified control sequences and establish a complete independent system for all new equipment and existing equipment. In general the equipment shall be controlled through Standalone Digital Control Units (SDCUs).

Provide the necessary quantity and types of SDCUs to meet the requirements of the project for mechanical equipment control including air handlers, central plant control, and terminal unit control. Each SDCU will operate completely standalone, containing all of the I/O and programs to control its associated equipment.

Certain controls are specified to be furnished with the equipment. This contractor shall provide all components to communicate with factory furnished controls and connect them to the building automation control system. This contractor shall be responsible to review equipment submittals and review the controls provided with all packaged equipment to insure that the equipment is ordered with the appropriate gateways and MPTP controllers for integration to the BMS system. The contractor shall also provide all controls, wiring and auxiliaries required to operate equipment not furnished with factory controls. Work required includes, but is not limited to the following:

1. Control wiring between factory mounted unit panels and factory supplied remote panels.
  2. Installation and wiring for factory supplied devices requiring field installation.
  3. Panel mounted transformers and control power wiring for all controllers and control devices.
  4. Control wiring to each remote device (room thermostats, outdoor air sensors, static pressure controllers, control actuators, control panels, etc.).
  6. All control valves, motorized dampers thermostats, relays, sensors, etc. unless furnished as an integral part of the equipment.
  7. All interlock control wiring (24 volt and 120 volt) between units, fans, etc.
- C. All control and interlock wiring shall be run in EMT for indoor locations and in galvanized conduit for outdoor locations.
- D. All new controllers, hardware and accessories shall be ANDOVER CONTINUUM SERIES VERSION 1.9. OR LATER all new hardware, software and programming shall be compatible with the existing campus system.
- E. General System Description: The building equipment shall be controlled via a central Andover BMS system. Heating of the building will be accomplished through the central hot water boiler and associated terminal equipment including, cabinet unit heaters, and hot water coils associated with air handling units. Hot water pump shall be variable speed and modulated via differential pressure sensors in the building. Cooling shall be accomplished primarily through seven packaged rooftop units with DX coils, and two indoor air handling units with DX coils and remote condensing units. Rooftop units serving library shall be shall have demand controlled ventilation. Refer to specific equipment sequences for detailed operation.

#### 1.04 SUBMITTALS FOR REVIEW

- A. Division 1 - Submittals: Procedures for submittals.
- B. Shop Drawings: Indicate mechanical system controlled and control system components.
1. Label with settings, adjustable range of control and limits. Include written description of control sequence.
  2. Include flow diagrams for each control system, graphically depicting control logic.
  3. Include draft copies of graphic displays indicating mechanical system components, control system components, and controlled function status and value.
  4. Submit a complete written sequence of operation for each and every controlled piece of equipment.

#### 1.05 SUBMITTALS AT PROJECT CLOSEOUT

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data.
- B. Project Record Documents: Record actual locations of components and set-points of controls, including changes to sequences made after submission of shop drawings.

## 1.06 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Design system under direct supervision of a Professional Engineer experienced in design of this Work and licensed in the State of New York.

## PART 2 PRODUCTS - Not Used

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.01 Summer/Winter Change Over

The Building Management System (BMS) shall index the hot system and cooling equipment into either summer or winter control based upon outdoor air temperature. Below 65 F, (adjustable), outside air temperature, the air conditioning shall be disabled. Above 55F, (adjustable), outside air temperature the hot water system shall disabled. Between those temperature economizers shall be used when outdoor air enthalpy permits. The system operator shall have capacity of over riding the system for manual change over. A minimum time delay, (24 hrs adjustable), between summer/winter changes over shall prevent cycling between the 2 modes. During heating mode, the DX cooling shall be locked out except for supplemental cooling systems.

### 3.02 Boiler Plant:

Boiler shall be operated through an application specific unitary controller that will sequence boilers, pumps dampers, valves and fans. Refer to section 235216 for all safeties and combustion control sequences. The controller shall be microprocessor-based system engineered and programmed exclusively for the operation of multiple hot water boilers.

The communications protocol for the boiler controls shall be based on ASHRA/ANSI BACNET Standard 135-1995. Provide required modules to allow open communication, integration and interoperability with other DDC system. The BMS contractor and boiler manufacturer shall coordinate their work to insure compatibility prior to installation.

The BMS system shall enable the hot water system, and change the system from cooling to heating operation based on outdoor air temperature. Set point shall be 55 degrees, adjustable for heating. The hot water primary, (HWP-1), circulation pump shall be interlocked to run continuously when respective boiler is started. Furnish a flow switch in each of the primary supply water headers arranged to prevent boiler operation if flow is not proved.

The BMS shall sequence the hot water boilers to maintain the secondary hot water loop temperature set-point. The set-point shall be reset by the outdoor air temperature sensor. Reset schedule to be 180 F to 120 F hot water supply temperature as outside air varies from 10 F to 55 F. adjustable). Lead boiler selection shall be selected by the BMS according to a rotating seven-day schedule for equal running time.

The secondary pumps shall be arranged to operate when the heat plant is enabled. Refer to the Hot Water Variable Speed Pumping System Control paragraph for HWP-2 and P-3 sequence.

The glycol makeup pumps shall be arranged to automatically maintain hot water system pressure in the boiler system. The make up water pumps shall be arranged to alternate through

the alternating pump controller.  
BMS status and alarms;  
Common failure alarm for each boiler.  
High temperature  
Low temperature  
Fuel oil pump failure  
Primary pump failure  
Secondary pump failure  
Make up pump failure  
Low water level  
High water level  
Temperature out of bounds

### 3.03 Hot Water Pumping System Control

When the heating is enabled the lead, variable speed pump will be enabled to operate at its lowest speed setting, (35% of maximum flow). If the lead variable speed drive pump fails to operate the lag variable speed pump will start and an alarm will be generated at the pump control panel and the BMS. Furnish a flow switch in the header of each secondary pump with adjustable time delay. The BMS system shall rotate the lead and lag pumps for equal running time on a weekly or daily basis, (adjustable).

Differential pressure, shall be measured across the supply and return of the two-pipe secondary system using a five-point manifold differential pressure sensor. The differential pressure will be measured at the end of the piping loop generally located in the ceiling of the second floor. The pump will be controlled to maintain the differential pressure at (28 psi adjustable). If the differential pressure drops below set point, the pump speed shall increase proportionately, if differential pressure rises above set point, the pump speed shall be decreased proportionately. The minimum speed set point shall be determined such that the speed corresponds to 30% of the maximum flow at 28 psi differential. The actual set point shall be determined in the field when all water balancing has been completed. DP set point shall be determined when design flow is achieved at the lowest available pump speed. Furnish and install a 2 1/2" differential by pass valve on HW system in the boiler room arranged to open and allow minimum flow through the secondary pumps, if the pumps slow to minimum speed and DP is still above 28psi setpoint.

### 3.04 Split System Air Handling Unit: AHU-1 and AHU-2

The units shall be supplied with, and operated through a unit mounted DDC unitary control panel, capable of providing set-point adjustments and all programming control sequences.

The protocol shall be BacNet MSTP. Controls shall include all motorized dampers and valves, damper motors, motor starters, wiring, fans and sensors and all hardware accessories for a complete system. Furnish wall mounted room thermostats with automatic summer/winter change over, and temperature adjustments.

**Units Off:** The outside air intake and relief air dampers shall be closed, and the return air damper shall be full open. The automatic 3-way valve on the heating coil shall be open. Supply and return Fans shall be stopped

**Summer Operation:** Upon start up, the control circuits energized. The supply fan shall run continuously; the return fan RF-1 shall run continuously; the energy recovery ventilator ERV-1 shall run continuously. The outside air intake, and relief air dampers shall open to minimum

position the return damper shall open to the maximum position.

AHU-1 and AHI-2 - A temperature sensor in the unit discharge duct shall be reset by a return air temperature sensor, (master-sub-master), arranged to modulate the DX coil capacity to maintain a constant discharge air temperature. Set the discharge temperature at 55°F to 60°F range (adjustable). The discharge air temperature set-point shall be determined through a comparison of the return air temperature and SA set-point, and shall be reset according or cooling demand. Hot water heating coil control valve shall be closed. VAV boxes shall operate in the summer mode.

**Winter Operation:** Upon start up, the control circuits shall be energized. The supply fan shall run continuously; the return fan RF-1 shall run continuously. The outside air intake, and relief air dampers shall open to minimum position the return damper shall open to the maximum position.

AHU-1 and AHU-2 - The heating coil valve shall be arranged to maintain a discharge temperature at 65°F to 75°F range (adjustable).

**Economizer Operation:** On a call for cooling when outdoor air conditions permit, (56 deg adjustable), and below the an enthalpy controller shall modulate the outside air intake, exhaust and return air dampers, to maintain SA temp set point. Override DCV as required. Heating coil control valve shall be closed. Control action shall be that an increase in SA temperature will cause the outside air and exhaust air dampers to modulate towards the open position and the return air damper to modulate towards the closed position. A drop in below set point temperature will cause the reverse to take place. When the outdoor air damper reaches the fully open position a further call for cooling shall cause DX system to operate. When ambient conditions are no longer suitable for economizer operation the unit controls shall revert to normal summer operation. The spill fan shall run continuously.

**Morning Warm-up Operation:** Units shall start and operate for a predetermined period as programmed into the unit controllers. During this cycle outside intake and exhaust air dampers shall remain closed, and return air damper shall be full open. The heating valve shall modulate to maintain set point. When the zone temperature(s) comes to within 2 degrees of set point the unit shall operate in occupied mode. Return fan RF-1 shall run, 100% RA.

**Morning Cool-Down Operation:** Unit shall start and operate for a predetermined period as programmed into the unit controllers. During this cycle outside intake and spill air dampers shall remain closed, and return air damper shall remain open. The cooling coil shall modulate to maintain discharge air temperature set point. When the zone temperature comes to within 2 degrees of set point the unit shall operate in occupied mode. Return fan RF-1 shall run, 100% RA.

**Unoccupied Operation:** Unit supply/return fans and heating coils and DX cooling shall cycle on a call for cooling or heating. During this cycle the unit shall operate with 100% re-circulated air. Unit controls shall allow complete shutdown if desired. Set point shall be 68° in the heating season and 85 in the cooling season. Return fan RF-1 shall run, 100% RA.

**Limit Controls:** Provide a High/low limit control(s) in the supply fan discharge arranged to override temperature controls and prevent discharge temperature from dropping below 50°F and

rising above 110°F(adjustable). Provide limit control on fan speed for CV units to limit speed reduction to 75% of air flow.

**Freezestat:** Provide the AHU with a manual reset type freezestat, (set at 35° adjustable), arranged to shut down the unit and sound an audio and visual alarm at the BMS operator station should the set point be reached. The freezestat element shall be the capillary type with lowest point temperature sensing. It shall be resettable from the BMS.

**Static Pressure Controls Unit: AHU-1 and AHU-2**

Provide static pressure sensors in the supply ductwork for the unit located approximately two-thirds downstream of the unit in the SA duct. Sensors shall be arranged to vary the speed of the supply fan in response to supply duct static pressure. An increase in static pressure shall cause the fans to slow down a decrease shall cause the fans to speed up. The outside air dampers shall be arranged to modulate open from the minimum position proportionally as fan speed decreases. This shall be done through an air flow measuring station located in the outside air intake plenum to insure constant ventilation air rate (CFM) through the range of fan speeds. For those units that operate DCV mode during normal occupied hours this function shall be overridden by DCV control. Corresponding return or spill air fans in each RTU shall be arranged to maintain a positive pressure of .1" sp in their respective zones. On a drop-in zone pressure the fan shall be arranged to slow down, on a rise in SP above set point the fan shall be arranged to speed up. (open OAI damper)

**Demand Controlled Ventilation: (AHU-1 and AHU-2)** Furnish combination space temperature/CO2 sensors for where shown on plans. Furnish one CO2 sensor located outdoors on the roof. The outdoor air CO2 sensor shall be used to establish a base line for outdoor CO2 levels, approximately 400 PPM. The CO2 sensors in each space shall have a set point no greater than 400 PPM above the base line, approximately 800 PPM. The air-handling unit's unitary control panel shall calculate outside air intake damper positioning in response to space CO2 levels. Control action shall be that when the space CO2 level rises to within 100 PPM of set point, the outside air intake and spill dampers shall modulate toward open and the RA damper shall modulate toward closed. Upon a drop in space CO2 levels below set point, the opposite shall take place.

The outside air intake dampers normal minimum positions shall be 20% of the design outside air rate, or shall be established based on the schedules contained on the plans, whichever is higher. When operating in demand-controlled ventilation mode (normal occupied mode) the outside air damper position may be reset according demand with the above lower limit.

Pre-occupancy purge: Shall be automatically initiated by the building automation controls. For a period of 30 minutes prior to scheduled occupied hours, the unit shall operate under occupied mode at the full occupied outdoor air rate. After the 30 minute purge cycle the unit shall run under Demand Controlled ventilation mode.

Post-occupancy flush: Prior to entering unoccupied mode after scheduled occupied hours have elapsed, the unit shall run with the outside air damper open at minimum position until space CO2 concentrations are equal to outdoor air CO2 concentrations. When the CO2 concentrations match, the unit shall run in unoccupied mode.

**3.07 Cabinet Convectors: Conv-A**

Provide a control valve for all units and room thermostats where indicated on plan set at 72°F for each convector. Upon a drop-in space temperature below set-point the CV valve shall cycle open. On a rise in space temperature above set point the reverse shall take place. For those zones served by VAV boxes with reheat coils and convectors the controls shall be arranged to operate the VAV box CV and convector CV in sequence. All control valves positions shall be monitored and indicated on the BMS.

### 3.08 Toilet Fans and Return Fans:

Toilet exhaust fans TX-1 shall run as scheduled through the BMS system during occupied periods or as programmed.

Return fans RF-1 and RF -2 shall be interlocked to run with their corresponding SA fan. AHU-1 and AHU-2 respectively.

### 3.11 Air condition condensate pumps:

Provide connection to the overflow switch in each condensate pump tank arranged to annunciate an alarm at the BMS and shut down the respective AHU/AC unit.

Provide a secondary high level float switch in each packaged roof top unit condensate pan and each split system air handling unit condensate pan arranged to annunciate an alarm at the BMS and shut down the respective AHU/AC unit.

### 3.12 Miscellaneous Plumbing Equipment:

**Domestic hot water pump:** The BMS system shall be arranged to operate the domestic hot water recirculation pump. The pump shall be operated based on return water temperature. When return water temperature drops below setpoint (110 deg F) the pump shall be started.

**Domestic hot water mixing valves:** Domestic hot water mixing valves shall be 3-way mixing valves arranged to maintain the domestic water to the building at 120°F maximum. (adjustable), The actual setpoint shall be 110°F. The second 3-way mixing valve shall be at the kitchen. This shall be arranged to maintain the domestic water to the pot sinks at 140°F maximum. In both cases there shall be secondary aquastats on the respective hot water pipes arranged to close a solenoid valve in each of the respective hot water lines if water temperature rises above set point. Provide monitoring and set point adjustment at the BMS work station. Alarm high temperature at the BMS.

**Domestic Water Meters:** domestic water make up to the boiler plant and to the domestic hot water heaters shall be metered and recorded. The BMS shall have contain a record of water usage for each meter on monthly and total annul basis. The BMS shall aggregate water usage

### 3.13 Miscellaneous

All safety devices shall be interlocked with “hand” and “Automatic” positions in series with motor controller holding coil circuit. Interlocking with other fans and equipment of system shall be through “Automatic” position “Hand” position shall be for maintenance only. Remote starting shall be from through “automatic” position only.

All air handling units 2,000 cfm or greater shall have a duct mounted smoke detector arranged to stop the unit and position all dampers and valves in the “unit off” sequence as described in this section, upon detecting smoke.

All air handling units, unit ventilators, cabinet unit heaters, unit heaters, fans, and fan coil units, shall be interlocked to the building fire alarm system. Upon building fire alarm all units shall shut down and damper and valves shall go to “unit off” positions.

END OF SECTION

## SECTION 232113 - HYDRONIC PIPING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes pipe and fitting materials and joining methods for the following:

1. Hot-water heating piping.
2. Makeup-water piping.
3. Condensate-drain piping.
4. Air-vent piping.
5. Safety-valve-inlet and -outlet piping.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of the following:

1. Plastic pipe and fittings with solvent cement.
2. Pressure-seal fittings.
3. Chemical treatment.

- B. Sustainable Design Submittals:

1. Product Data: For adhesives, indicating VOC content.
2. Laboratory Test Reports: For adhesives, indicating compliance with requirements for low-emitting materials.
3. Environmental Product Declaration: For each product.
4. Health Product Declaration: For each product.
5. Sourcing of Raw Materials: Corporate sustainability report for each manufacturer.

- C. Delegated-Design Submittal:

1. Design calculations and detailed fabrication and assembly of pipe anchors and alignment guides, hangers and supports for multiple pipes, expansion joints and loops, and attachments of the same to the building structure.
2. Locations of pipe anchors and alignment guides and expansion joints and loops.
3. Locations of and details for penetrations, including sleeves and sleeve seals for exterior walls, floors, basement, and foundation walls.
4. Locations of and details for penetration and firestopping for fire- and smoke-rated wall and floor and ceiling assemblies.

5. For underground piping provide size and quantity of pipe expansion loops and thrust blocks.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Piping layout, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
  1. Suspended ceiling components.
  2. Other building services.
  3. Structural members.
- B. Qualification Data: For Installer.
- C. Welding certificates.
- D. Field quality-control reports.
- E. Water Analysis: Submit a copy of the water analysis to illustrate water quality available at Project site.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications:
  1. Installers of Pressure-Sealed Joints: Installers shall be certified by pressure-seal joint manufacturer as having been trained and qualified to join piping with pressure-seal pipe couplings and fittings.
- B. Steel Support Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
- C. Pipe Welding: Qualify procedures and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX.
  1. Comply with ASME B31.9, "Building Services Piping," for materials, products, and installation.
  2. Certify that each welder has passed AWS qualification tests for welding processes involved and that certification is current.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Hydronic piping components and installation shall be capable of withstanding the following minimum working pressure and temperature unless otherwise indicated:
  1. Hot-Water Heating Piping: 150 psig at 200 deg F.

2. Glycol -Water Piping: 150 psig at 150 deg F.
3. Makeup-Water Piping: 80 psig at 150 deg F.
4. Condensate-Drain Piping: 150 deg F.
5. Air-Vent Piping: 200 deg F.
6. Safety-Valve-Inlet and -Outlet Piping: Equal to the pressure of the piping system to which it is attached.

## 2.2 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS

- A. Drawn-Temper Copper Tubing: ASTM B 88, Type L.
- B. Annealed-Temper Copper Tubing: ASTM B 88, Type K.
- C. DWV Copper Tubing: ASTM B 306, Type DWV.
- D. Grooved, Mechanical-Joint, Wrought-Copper Fittings: ASME B16.22.
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
    - a. Anvil International.
    - b. Star Pipe Products.
    - c. Victaulic Company.
  2. Grooved-End Copper Fittings: ASTM B 75, copper tube or ASTM B 584, bronze casting.
  3. Grooved-End-Tube Couplings: Rigid pattern unless otherwise indicated; gasketed fitting. Ductile-iron housing with keys matching pipe and fitting grooves, prelubricated EPDM gasket rated for minimum 230 deg F for use with housing, and steel bolts and nuts.
- E. Copper or Bronze Pressure-Seal Fittings:
  1. Pro-press should be reviewed
  2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
    - a. Elkhart Products Corporation.
    - b. Mueller Industries, Inc.
    - c. NIBCO INC.
    - d. Viega LLC.
  3. Housing: Copper.
  4. O-Rings and Pipe Stops: EPDM.
  5. Tools: Manufacturer's special tools.
  6. Minimum 200-psig working-pressure rating at 250 deg F.
- F. Wrought-Copper Unions: ASME B16.22.

## 2.3 STEEL PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, black steel with plain ends; welded and seamless, Grade B, and wall thickness as indicated in "Piping Applications" Article.
- B. Cast-Iron Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.4; Classes 125 and 250 as indicated in "Piping Applications" Article.
- C. Malleable-Iron Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.3, Classes 150 and 300 as indicated in "Piping Applications" Article.
- D. Malleable-Iron Unions: ASME B16.39; Classes 150, 250, and 300 as indicated in "Piping Applications" Article.
- E. Cast-Iron Pipe Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.1, Classes 25, 125, and 250; raised ground face, and bolt holes spot faced as indicated in "Piping Applications" Article.
- F. Wrought-Steel Fittings: ASTM A 234/A 234M, wall thickness to match adjoining pipe.
- G. Wrought Cast- and Forged-Steel Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.5, including bolts, nuts, and gaskets of the following material group, end connections, and facings:
  - 1. Material Group: 1.1.
  - 2. End Connections: Butt welding.
  - 3. Facings: Raised face.
- H. Grooved Mechanical-Joint Fittings and Couplings:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Anvil International.
    - b. Grinnell G-Fire by Johnson Controls Company.
    - c. Victaulic Company.
  - 2. Joint Fittings: ASTM A 536, Grade 65-45-12 ductile iron; ASTM A 47/A 47M, Grade 32510 malleable iron; ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type F, E, or S, Grade B fabricated steel; or ASTM A 106/A 106M, Grade B steel fittings with grooves or shoulders constructed to accept grooved-end couplings; with nuts, bolts, locking pin, locking toggle, or lugs to secure grooved pipe and fittings.
  - 3. Couplings: Ductile- or malleable-iron housing and EPDM gasket of central cavity pressure-responsive design; with nuts, bolts, locking pin, locking toggle, or lugs to secure grooved pipe and fittings.
- I. Steel Pressure-Seal Fittings:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Victaulic Company.
    - b. Viega LLC.
    - c. Zern

## d. Propress

2. Housing: Steel.
3. O-Rings and Pipe Stop: EPDM.
4. Tools: Manufacturer's special tool.
5. Minimum 300-psig working-pressure rating at 230 deg F.

- J. Steel Pipe Nipples: ASTM A 733, made of same materials and wall thicknesses as pipe in which they are installed.

## 2.4 PLASTIC PIPE AND FITTINGS

1. CPVC Plastic Pipe Fittings: Socket-type pipe fittings, ASTM F 438 for Schedule 40 pipe; ASTM F 439 for Schedule 80 pipe.

- B. PVC Plastic Pipe: ASTM D 1785, with wall thickness as indicated in "Piping Applications" Article.

1. PVC Plastic Pipe Fittings: Socket-type pipe fittings, ASTM D 2466 for Schedule 40 pipe; ASTM D 2467 for Schedule 80 pipe.

## 2.5 JOINING MATERIALS

- A. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials: Suitable for chemical and thermal conditions of piping system contents.

1. ASME B16.21, nonmetallic, flat, asbestos free, 1/8-inch maximum thickness unless otherwise indicated.

- a. Full-Face Type: For flat-face, Class 125, cast-iron and cast-bronze flanges.
- b. Narrow-Face Type: For raised-face, Class 250, cast-iron and steel flanges.

- B. Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel, unless otherwise indicated.

- C. Plastic, Pipe-Flange Gasket, Bolts, and Nuts: Type and material recommended by piping system manufacturer unless otherwise indicated.

- D. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloys. Include water-flushable flux according to ASTM B 813.

- E. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8/A5.8M, BCuP Series, copper-phosphorus alloys for joining copper with copper; or BAg-1, silver alloy for joining copper with bronze or steel.

- F. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12M/D10.12 for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.

- G. Solvent Cements for Joining Plastic Piping:

1. PVC Piping: ASTM D 2564. Include primer according to ASTM F 656.

- a. PVC solvent cement shall have a VOC content of 510 g/L or less.
- b. Adhesive primer shall have a VOC content of 550 g/L or less.

H. Gasket Material: Thickness, material, and type suitable for fluid to be handled and working temperatures and pressures.

## 2.6 TRANSITION FITTINGS

### A. Plastic-to-Metal Transition Fittings:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Charlotte Pipe and Foundry Company.
  - b. IPEX USA LLC.
  - c. KBI (King Bros. Industries).
  - d. Viega LLC.
2. One-piece fitting with one threaded brass or copper insert and one solvent-cement-joint end of material and wall thickness to match plastic pipe material.

## 2.7 DIELECTRIC FITTINGS

A. General Requirements: Assembly of copper alloy and ferrous materials with separating nonconductive insulating material. Include end connections compatible with pipes to be joined.

### B. Dielectric Unions:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. WATTS.
  - b. Wilkins.
  - c. Zurn Industries, LLC.
2. Description:
  - a. Standard: ASSE 1079.
  - b. Pressure Rating: 150 psig 250 psig.
  - c. End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.

### C. Dielectric Flanges:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. WATTS.
  - b. Wilkins.
  - c. Zurn Industries, LLC.

## 2. Description:

- a. Standard: ASSE 1079.
- b. Factory-fabricated, bolted, companion-flange assembly.
- c. Pressure Rating: 150 psig minimum at 250 deg F.
- d. End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous; threaded solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.

## D. Dielectric Nipples:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

- a. Grinnell G-Fire by Johnson Controls Company.
- b. Matco-Norca.
- c. Victaulic Company.

## 2. Description:

- a. Standard: IAPMO PS 66.
- b. Electroplated steel nipple, complying with ASTM F 1545.
- c. Pressure Rating: 300 psig at 225 deg F.
- d. End Connections: Male threaded or grooved.
- e. Lining: Inert and noncorrosive, propylene.

## 2.8 BYPASS CHEMICAL FEEDER

## A. Description: Welded steel construction; 125-psig working pressure; 5-gal. capacity; with fill funnel and inlet, outlet, and drain valves.

1. Chemicals: Specially formulated, based on analysis of makeup water, to prevent accumulation of scale and corrosion in piping and connected equipment.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 PIPING APPLICATIONS

A. **Hot-water heating, Piping aboveground;** NPS 2 1/2 and smaller, shall be any of the following:

1. Type L, drawn-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and soldered, brazed, pressure-seal joints.
2. Schedule 40, Grade B, Type 96 steel pipe; Class 150, malleable-iron fittings; cast-iron flanges and flange fittings; and threaded joints.

B. **Hot-water heating, Piping aboveground;** NPS 3 and larger, shall be any of the following:

1. Type L, drawn-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and soldered, brazed joints.

2. Schedule 40 steel pipe, wrought-steel fittings and wrought-cast or forged-steel flanges and flange fittings, and welded and flanged joints.
  3. Schedule 40 steel pipe; grooved, mechanical joint coupling and fittings; and grooved, mechanical joints.
- C. **Hot-water heating, Piping below ground and within slabs (not used);** shall be either of the following:
1. Type K, annealed-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and brazed joints. Use the fewest possible joints.
- D. **Makeup-water piping installed aboveground** shall be either of the following:
1. Type L, drawn-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and soldered joints.
- E. **Makeup-Water Piping Installed Belowground and within Slabs (not used):** Type K, annealed-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and soldered joints. Use the fewest possible joints.
- F. **Condensate-Drain Piping For AC Units:** Type M copper, Type DWV, drawn-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and soldered joints or Schedule 40 PVC plastic pipe and fittings and solvent-welded joints.
- G. **Boiler Condensate-Drain Piping:** Schedule 40 PVC plastic pipe and fittings and solvent-welded joints.
- H. **Blowdown-Drain Piping:** Same materials and joining methods as for piping specified for the service in which blowdown drain is installed.
- I. **Air-Vent Piping:**
1. Inlet: Same as service where installed with metal-to-plastic transition fittings for plastic piping systems according to piping manufacturer's written instructions.
  2. Outlet: Type K, annealed-temper copper tubing with soldered or flared joints.
- J. **Safety-Valve-Inlet and -Outlet Piping for Hot-Water Piping:** Same materials and joining methods as for piping specified for the service in which safety valve is installed.
- 3.2 PIPING INSTALLATIONS
- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Coordination Drawings.
  - B. Install piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
  - C. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.

- D. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- E. Install piping to permit valve servicing.
- F. Install piping at indicated slopes.
- G. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- H. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- I. Install piping to allow application of insulation.
- J. Select system components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.
- K. Install groups of pipes parallel to each other, spaced to permit applying insulation and servicing of valves.
- L. Install drains, consisting of a tee fitting, NPS 3/4 ball valve, and short NPS 3/4 threaded nipple with cap, at low points in piping system mains and elsewhere as required for system drainage.
- M. Install piping at a uniform grade of 0.2 percent upward in direction of flow.
- N. Reduce pipe sizes using eccentric reducer fitting installed with level side up.
- O. Install branch connections to mains using tee fittings in main pipe, with the branch connected to the bottom of the main pipe. For up-feed risers, connect the branch to the top of the main pipe.
- P. Install valves according to Section 230523.101 "Valves for HVAC Piping," Section 230523.12
- Q. Install unions in piping, NPS 2 and smaller, adjacent to valves, at final connections of equipment, and elsewhere as indicated.
- R. Install flanges in piping, NPS 2-1/2 and larger, at final connections of equipment and elsewhere as indicated.
- S. Install shutoff valve immediately upstream of each dielectric fitting.
- T. Comply with requirements in Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment" for identifying piping.
- U. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Section 230517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for HVAC Piping."
- V. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Section 230517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for HVAC Piping."
- W. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Section 230518 "Escutcheons for HVAC Piping."

- X. For piping passing through equipment room walls to occupied spaces provide split seals for sound and vibration attenuation between rooms. Refer to section 232116.

### 3.3 DIELECTRIC FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Install dielectric fittings in piping at connections of dissimilar metal piping and tubing.
- B. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2 and Smaller: Use dielectric nipples, or unions.
- C. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Use dielectric flanges, or nipples.
- D. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 5 and Larger: Use dielectric flange kits.

### 3.4 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Install vibration isolation hangers or supports on all piping connected to motor driven equipment for a distance of 20' or the first two hangers. Refer to section 232112.13 Hydronic Piping specialties.
- B. ]Install the following pipe attachments:
  - 1. Adjustable steel clevis hangers for individual horizontal piping less than 20 feet long.
  - 2. Adjustable roller hangers and spring hangers for individual horizontal piping 20 feet or longer.
  - 3. Pipe Roller: MSS SP-58, Type 44 for multiple horizontal piping 20 feet or longer, supported on a trapeze.
  - 4. Spring hangers to support vertical runs.
  - 5. Provide copper-clad hangers and supports for hangers and supports in direct contact with copper pipe.
  - 6. On plastic pipe, install pads or cushions on bearing surfaces to prevent hanger from scratching pipe.
- C. Install hangers for drawn-temper copper piping with the following maximum spacing and minimum rod sizes:
  - 1. NPS 3/4: Maximum span, 6 feet; minimum rod size, 1/4 inch.
  - 2. NPS 1: Maximum span, 6 feet; minimum rod size, 1/4 inch.
  - 3. NPS 1-1/4: Maximum span, 7 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
  - 4. NPS 1-1/2: Maximum span, 8 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
  - 5. NPS 2: Maximum span, 8 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
  - 6. NPS 2-1/2: Maximum span, 9 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
  - 7. NPS 3 and Larger: Maximum span, 10 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
- D. Plastic Piping Hanger Spacing: Space hangers according to pipe manufacturer's written instructions for service conditions. Avoid point loading. Space and install hangers with the fewest practical rigid anchor points.
- E. Fiberglass Piping Hanger Spacing: Space hangers according to pipe manufacturer's written instructions for service conditions. Avoid point loading. Space and install hangers with the fewest practical rigid anchor points.

- F. Support vertical runs at roof, at each floor, and at 10-foot intervals between floors.

### 3.5 PIPE JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
- B. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.
- C. Soldered Joints: Apply ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux, unless otherwise indicated, to tube end. Construct joints according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook," using lead-free solder alloy complying with ASTM B 32.
- D. Brazed Joints: Construct joints according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," "Pipe and Tube" Chapter, using copper-phosphorus brazing filler metal complying with AWS A5.8/A5.8M.
- E. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
  - 1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dry seal threading is specified.
  - 2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.
- F. Welded Joints: Construct joints according to AWS D10.12M/D10.12, using qualified processes and welding operators according to "Quality Assurance" Article.
- G. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate gasket material, size, type, and thickness for service application. Install gasket concentrically positioned. Use suitable lubricants on bolt threads.
- H. Plastic Piping Solvent-Cemented Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces. Join pipe and fittings according to the following:
  - 1. Comply with ASTM F 402 for safe-handling practice of cleaners, primers, and solvent cements.
  - 2. PVC Pressure Piping: Join ASTM D 1785 schedule number, PVC pipe and PVC socket fittings according to ASTM D 2672. Join other-than-schedule number PVC pipe and socket fittings according to ASTM D 2855.
  - 3. PVC Nonpressure Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2855.
- I. Grooved Joints: Assemble joints with coupling and gasket, lubricant, and bolts. Cut or roll grooves in ends of pipe based on pipe and coupling manufacturer's written instructions for pipe wall thickness. Use grooved-end fittings and rigid, grooved-end-pipe couplings.
- J. Mechanically Formed, Copper-Tube-Outlet Joints: Use manufacturer-recommended tool and procedure, and brazed joints.
- K. Pressure-Sealed Joints: Use manufacturer-recommended tool and procedure. Leave insertion marks on pipe after assembly.

### 3.6 TERMINAL EQUIPMENT CONNECTIONS

- A. Sizes for supply and return piping connections shall be the same as or larger than equipment connections.
- B. Install control valves in accessible locations close to connected equipment.
- C. Install bypass piping with globe valve around control valve. If parallel control valves are installed, only one bypass is required.
- D. Install ports for pressure gages and thermometers at coil inlet and outlet connections. Comply with requirements in Section 230519 "Meters and Gages for HVAC Piping."

### 3.7 CHEMICAL TREATMENT

- A. Perform an analysis of makeup water to determine type and quantities of chemical treatment needed to keep system free of scale, corrosion, and fouling, and to sustain the following water characteristics:
  - 1. pH: 9.0 to 10.5.
  - 2. "P" Alkalinity: 100 to 500 ppm.
  - 3. Boron: 100 to 200 ppm.
  - 4. Chemical Oxygen Demand: Maximum of 100 ppm. Revise this value if closed system contains glycol.
  - 5. Corrosion Inhibitor:
    - a. Sodium Nitrate: 1000 to 1500 ppm.
    - b. Molybdate: 200 to 300 ppm.
    - c. Chromate: 200 to 300 ppm.
    - d. Sodium Nitrate Plus Molybdate: 100 to 200 ppm each.
    - e. Chromate Plus Molybdate: 50 to 100 ppm each.
  - 6. Soluble Copper: Maximum of 0.20 ppm.
  - 7. Tolyriazole Copper and Yellow Metal Corrosion Inhibitor: Minimum of 10 ppm.
  - 8. Total Suspended Solids: Maximum of 10 ppm.
  - 9. Ammonia: Maximum of 20 ppm.
  - 10. Free Caustic Alkalinity: Maximum of 20 ppm.
  - 11. Microbiological Limits:
    - a. Total Aerobic Plate Count: Maximum of 1000 organisms/mL.
    - b. Total Anaerobic Plate Count: Maximum of 100 organisms/mL.
    - c. Nitrate Reducers: 100 organisms/mL.
    - d. Sulfate Reducers: Maximum of zero organisms/mL.
    - e. Iron Bacteria: Maximum of zero organisms/mL.
- B. Install bypass chemical feeders in each hydronic system where indicated.
  - 1. Install in upright position with top of funnel not more than 48 inches above the floor.
  - 2. Install feeder in minimum NPS 3/4 bypass line, from main with full-size, full-port, ball valve in the main between bypass connections.

3. Install NPS 3/4 pipe from chemical feeder drain to nearest equipment drain and include a full-size, full-port, ball valve.
- C. Fill system with fresh water and add liquid alkaline compound with emulsifying agents and detergents to remove grease and petroleum products from piping. Circulate solution for a minimum of 24 hours, drain, clean strainer screens, and refill with fresh water.

### 3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Prepare hydronic piping according to ASME B31.9 and as follows:
  1. Leave joints, including welds, uninsulated and exposed for examination during test.
  2. Provide temporary restraints for expansion joints that cannot sustain reactions due to test pressure. If temporary restraints are impractical, isolate expansion joints from testing.
  3. Flush hydronic piping systems with clean water; then remove and clean or replace strainer screens.
  4. Isolate equipment from piping. If a valve is used to isolate equipment, its closure shall be capable of sealing against test pressure without damage to valve. Install blinds in flanged joints to isolate equipment.
  5. Install safety valve, set at a pressure no more than one-third higher than test pressure, to protect against damage by expanding liquid or other source of overpressure during test.
- B. Perform the following tests on hydronic piping:
  1. Use ambient temperature water as a testing medium unless there is risk of damage due to freezing. Another liquid that is safe for workers and compatible with piping may be used.
  2. While filling system, use vents installed at high points of system to release air. Use drains installed at low points for complete draining of test liquid.
  3. Isolate expansion tanks and determine that hydronic system is full of water.
  4. Subject piping system to hydrostatic test pressure that is not less than 1.5 times the system's working pressure. Test pressure shall not exceed maximum pressure for any vessel, pump, valve, or other component in system under test. Verify that stress due to pressure at bottom of vertical runs does not exceed 90 percent of specified minimum yield strength or 1.7 times the "SE" value in Appendix A in ASME B31.9, "Building Services Piping."
  5. After hydrostatic test pressure has been applied for at least 10 minutes, examine piping, joints, and connections for leakage. Eliminate leaks by tightening, repairing, or replacing components, and repeat hydrostatic test until there are no leaks.
  6. Prepare written report of testing.
- C. Perform the following before operating the system:
  1. Open manual valves fully.
  2. Inspect pumps for proper rotation.
  3. Set makeup pressure-reducing valves for required system pressure.
  4. Inspect air vents at high points of system and determine if all are installed and operating freely (automatic type), or bleed air completely (manual type).
  5. Set temperature controls so all coils are calling for full flow.
  6. Inspect and set operating temperatures of hydronic equipment, such as boilers, chillers, cooling towers, to specified values.

7. Verify lubrication of motors and bearings.

END OF SECTION 232113

## SECTION 232116 - HYDRONIC PIPING SPECIALTIES

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes special-duty valves and specialties for the following:

1. Hot-water heating piping.
2. Makeup-water piping.
3. Condensate-drain piping.
4. Blowdown-drain piping.
5. Air-vent piping.
6. Safety-valve-inlet and -outlet piping.
7. Vibration Isolation
8. Expansion fittings for hydronic piping
9. Pipe guides and anchors

## 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of the following:

1. Valves: Include flow and pressure drop curves based on manufacturer's testing for calibrated-orifice balancing valves and automatic flow-control valves.
2. Air-control devices.
3. Hydronic specialties.

## 1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For air-control devices, hydronic specialties, and special-duty valves to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

## 1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Differential Pressure Meter: For each type of balancing valve and automatic flow control valve, include flowmeter, probes, hoses, flow charts, and carrying case.

## 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Pipe Welding: Qualify procedures and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX.
  - 1. Safety valves and pressure vessels shall bear the appropriate ASME label. Fabricate and stamp air separators and expansion tanks to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Hydronic piping components and installation shall be capable of withstanding the following minimum working pressure and temperature unless otherwise indicated:
  - 1. Hot-Water Heating Piping: **150 psig at 200 deg F**
  - 2. Makeup-Water Piping: **80 psig at 150 deg F**
  - 3. Condensate-Drain Piping: **150 deg F**.
  - 4. Blowdown-Drain Piping: **200 deg F**
  - 5. Air-Vent Piping: **200 deg F**.
  - 6. Safety-Valve-Inlet and -Outlet Piping: Equal to the pressure of the piping system to which it is attached.

### 2.2 VALVES

- A. Gate, Globe, Check, Ball, and Butterfly Valves: Comply with requirements specified in Section 230523.10 "Valves for HVAC Piping,"
- B. Automatic Temperature-Control Valves, Actuators, and Sensors: Comply with requirements specified in Section 230923.11 "Control Valves."Section 15901 "Control Valves."

### 2.3 Bronze, Calibrated-Orifice, Balancing Valves:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
  - b. Bell & Gossett; a Xylem brand.
  - c. Nexus Valve, Inc.
  - d. TACO Comfort Solutions, Inc.
  - e. Tour & Andersson; available through Victaulic Company.
  - f. Victaulic Company.
- 2. Body: Bronze, ball or globe type with calibrated orifice or venturi.
- 3. Ball: Brass or stainless steel.
- 4. Seat: PTFE.

5. End Connections: Threaded or socket.
6. Pressure Gage Connections: Integral seals for portable differential pressure meter.
7. Handle Style: Lever, with memory stop to retain set position.
8. CWP Rating: Minimum **125 psig**
9. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F

B. Cast-Iron or Steel, Calibrated-Orifice, Balancing Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
  - b. Bell & Gossett; a Xylem brand.
  - c. Nexus Valve, Inc.
  - d. Tour & Andersson; available through Victaulic Company.
2. Body: Cast-iron or steel body, globe pattern with calibrated orifice or venturi.
3. Ball: Brass or stainless steel.
4. Stem Seals: EPDM O-rings.
5. Disc: Glass and carbon-filled PTFE.
6. Seat: PTFE.
7. End Connections: Flanged or grooved.
8. Pressure Gage Connections: Integral seals for portable differential pressure meter.
9. Handle Style: Lever, with memory stop to retain set position.
10. CWP Rating: Minimum **125 psig**
11. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F

C. Diaphragm-Operated, Pressure-Reducing Valves: ASME labeled.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. AMTROL, Inc.
  - b. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
  - c. Bell & Gossett; a Xylem brand.
  - d. Spence Engineering Company, Inc.
  - e. Watts; a Watts Water Technologies company.
2. Body: Bronze or brass.
3. Disc: Glass and carbon-filled PTFE.
4. Seat: Brass.
5. Stem Seals: EPDM O-rings.
6. Diaphragm: EPT.
7. Low inlet-pressure check valve.
8. Inlet Strainer: stainless steel, removable without system shutdown.
9. Valve Seat and Stem: Noncorrosive.
10. Valve Size, Capacity, and Operating Pressure: Selected to suit system in which installed, with operating pressure and capacity factory set and field adjustable.

## D. Diaphragm-Operated Safety Valves: ASME labeled.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. AMTROL, Inc.
  - b. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
  - c. Bell & Gossett; a Xylem brand.
  - d. Spence Engineering Company, Inc.
  - e. Watts; a Watts Water Technologies company.
2. Body: Bronze or brass.
3. Disc: Glass and carbon-filled PTFE.
4. Seat: Brass.
5. Stem Seals: EPDM O-rings.
6. Diaphragm: EPT.
7. Wetted, Internal Work Parts: Brass and rubber.
8. Inlet Strainer: stainless steel, removable without system shutdown.
9. Valve Seat and Stem: Noncorrosive.
10. Valve Size, Capacity, and Operating Pressure: Comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IV, and selected to suit system in which installed, with operating pressure and capacity factory set and field adjustable.

E. Automatic Flow-Control Valves: **(NOT USED)**

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Flow Design, Inc.
  - b. Griswold Controls.
  - c. Nexus Valve, Inc.
  - d. NuTech Hydronic Specialty Products.
2. Body: Brass or ferrous metal.
3. Piston and Spring Assembly: Stainless steel, tamper proof, self-cleaning, and removable.
4. Combination Assemblies: Include bronze or brass-alloy ball valve.
5. Identification Tag: Marked with zone identification, valve number, and flow rate.
6. Size: Same as pipe in which installed.
7. Performance: Maintain constant flow, plus or minus 5 percent over system pressure fluctuations.
8. Minimum CWP Rating: **175 psig**
9. Maximum Operating Temperature: **200 deg F**

## 2.4 AIR-CONTROL DEVICES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

- a. AMTROL, Inc.
- b. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
- c. Bell & Gossett; a Xylem brand.
- d. TACO Comfort Solutions, Inc.
- e. John Wood

B. Manual Air Vents:

1. Body: Bronze.
2. Internal Parts: Nonferrous.
3. Operator: Screwdriver or thumbscrew.
4. Inlet Connection: NPS 1/2
5. Discharge Connection: NPS 1/8.
6. CWP Rating: 150 psig
7. Maximum Operating Temperature: 225 deg F

C. Automatic Air Vents:

1. Body: Bronze or cast iron.
2. Internal Parts: Nonferrous.
3. Operator: Noncorrosive metal float.
4. Inlet Connection: NPS 1/2
5. Discharge Connection: NPS 1/4
6. CWP Rating: 150 psig
7. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F

D. Expansion Tanks:

1. Tank: Welded steel, rated for 125-psig working pressure and 375 deg F maximum operating temperature, with taps in bottom of tank for tank fitting and taps in end of tank for gage glass. Tanks shall be factory tested after taps are fabricated and shall be labeled according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1.
2. Air-Control Tank Fitting: Cast-iron body, copper-plated tube, brass vent tube plug, and stainless-steel ball check, 100-gal. unit only; sized for compression-tank diameter. Provide tank fittings for **125-psig** working pressure and **250 deg F** maximum operating temperature.
3. Tank Drain Fitting: Brass body, nonferrous internal parts; **125-psig** working pressure and **240 deg F** maximum operating temperature; constructed to admit air to compression tank, drain water, and close off system.
4. Gage Glass: Full height with dual manual shutoff valves, 3/4-inch- diameter gage glass, and slotted-metal glass guard.

E. Diaphragm or Bladder-Type Expansion Tanks as scheduled or noted on plans:

1. Tank: Welded steel, rated for **125-psig** working pressure and **375 deg F** maximum operating temperature. Factory test after taps are fabricated and supports installed and are labeled according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1.
2. Diaphragm or Bladder: Securely sealed into tank to separate air charge from system water to maintain required expansion capacity.
3. Air-Charge Fittings: Schrader valve, stainless steel with EPDM seats.

F. Tangential-Type Air Separators:

1. Tank: Welded steel; ASME constructed and labeled for **125-psig** minimum working pressure and **375 deg F** maximum operating temperature.
2. Air Collector Tube: Perforated stainless steel, constructed to direct released air into expansion tank.
3. Tangential Inlet and Outlet Connections: Threaded for **NPS 2** and smaller; flanged connections for **NPS 2-1/2** and larger.
4. Blowdown Connection: Threaded.
5. Size: Match system flow capacity.

G. In-Line Air Separators:

1. Tank: One-piece cast iron with an integral weir constructed to decelerate system flow to maximize air separation.
2. Maximum Working Pressure: Up to **175 psig**
3. Maximum Operating Temperature: Up to **300 deg F**

H. Air Purgers:

1. Body: Cast iron with internal baffles that slow the water velocity to separate the air from solution and divert it to the vent for quick removal.
2. Maximum Working Pressure: **150 psig**
3. Maximum Operating Temperature: **250 deg F**

## 2.5 HYDRONIC PIPING SPECIALTIES

A. Y-Pattern Strainers:

1. Body: ASTM A 126, Class B, cast iron with bolted cover and bottom drain connection.
2. End Connections: Threaded ends for NPS 2 and smaller; flanged ends for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
3. Strainer Screen: Stainless-steel, 20-mesh strainer, or perforated stainless-steel basket.
4. CWP Rating: **125 psig**

B. Basket Strainers:

1. Body: ASTM A 126, Class B, high-tensile cast iron with bolted cover and bottom drain connection.
2. End Connections: Threaded ends for NPS 2 and smaller; flanged ends for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
3. Strainer Screen: 40-mesh startup strainer, and perforated stainless-steel basket with 50 percent free area.
4. CWP Rating: **125 psig**

C. T-Pattern Strainers:

1. Body: Ductile or malleable iron with removable access coupling and end cap for strainer maintenance.
2. End Connections: Grooved ends.
3. Strainer Screen: 40-mesh startup strainer, and perforated stainless-steel basket with 57 percent free area.
4. CWP Rating: **750 psig**

## D. Stainless-Steel Bellow, Flexible Connectors:

1. Body: Stainless-steel bellows with woven, flexible, bronze, wire-reinforcing protective jacket.
2. End Connections: Threaded or flanged to match equipment connected.
3. Performance: Capable of 3/4-inch misalignment.
4. CWP Rating: **150 psig**
5. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F

## E. Spherical, Rubber, Flexible Connectors:

1. Rubber flexible connections shall be peroxide cured EPDM throughout with Kevlar tire cord reinforcement. The raised face rubber flanges must encase solid steel rings to prevent pull out. Flexible cable wire is not acceptable. Sizes 1-1/2" through 14" shall have a ductile iron external ring between the two spheres. Sizes 3/4" through 2" may have one sphere, bolted threaded flange assemblies and cable retention.
2. Minimum ratings shall be 250 psi at 170°F and 215 psi at 250°F. Higher published rated connectors may be used where required.
3. Safety factors shall be a minimum of 3/1. All flexible connections must be factory tested to 150% of maximum pressure for 12 minutes before shipment. The piping gap shall be equal to the length of the expansion joint under pressure. Control rods passing through 1/2" thick Neoprene washer bushings large enough to take the thrust at 1000psi of surface area may be used on unanchored piping where the manufacturer determines the condition exceeds the expansion joint rating without them.
4. All flexible joints shall be installed on the equipment side of the shut off valves. Expansion joints shall be SAFEFLEX SFDEJ, SFEJ, SFDCR or SFU and Control Rods CR as manufactured by Mason Industries, Inc
  - a. Body: Fiber-reinforced rubber body.
  - b. End Connections: Steel flanges drilled to align with Classes 150 and 300 steel flanges.
  - c. Performance: Capable of misalignment.
  - d. CWP Rating: **150 psig**
  - e. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F

## F. Braided Pipe Flexible Connection;

1. Flexible stainless steel hose shall have stainless steel braid and carbon steel fittings. Sizes 3" and larger shall be flanged. Smaller sizes may have male nipples. Minimum sizes listed below.

Flanged (Pipe Dia x Flexible Pipe Length)		
3" x 12"	6" x 18"	12" x 24"
4" x 12"	8" x 18"	14" x 30"
5" x 18"	10" x 18"	16" x 32"

Male Nipples (Pipe Dia x Flexible Pipe Length)		
1/2" x 12"	1-1/4" x 12"	2" x 12"
3/4" x 12"	1-1/2" x 12"	2-1/2" x 18"
1" x 12"		

2. At equipment connections, hoses shall be installed on the equipment side of the shut-off valves horizontal and parallel to the equipment shafts wherever possible. Hoses shall be type [FFL or type MN](#) as manufactured by Mason Industries, Inc
- G. [Vibration isolation pipe hangers](#); pre-compressed and locked at the rated deflection by means of a resilient up-stop to keep the piping or equipment at a fixed elevation during installation. The hangers shall be designed with a release mechanism to free the spring after the installation is complete and the hanger is subjected to its full load. Deflection shall be clearly indicated by means of a scale. Submittals shall include a drawing of the hanger showing the 30° capability. Hangers shall be type [PC30N](#) as manufactured by Mason Industries, Inc
- H. [Acoustic Split Seals](#); consist of pipe halves with minimum 3/4" thick neoprene sponge cemented to the inner faces. The seal shall be tightened around the pipe to eliminate clearance between the inner sponge face and the piping. Grout seals to make it integral with the floor, wall or ceiling in masonry construction. Seals shall project a minimum of 1" past either face of the wall. Where temperatures exceed 240F, 10 lb. density fiberglass may be used in lieu of the sponge. Seals shall be [Type SWS](#) as manufactured by Mason Industries, Inc.

## 2.6 [PACKLESS EXPANSION JOINTS](#)

- A. Metal, Compensator Packless Expansion Joints: Metraflex Model HPFF – for copper, Model HP for steel pipe
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. [Flexicraft Industries](#).
    - b. [Mason Industries, Inc.](#)
    - c. [Metraflex Company \(The\)](#).
  2. Minimum Pressure Rating: 175 psig unless otherwise indicated.
  3. Description: Totally enclosed, externally pressurized, multi-ply bellows isolated from fluid flow by an internal pipe sleeve and external housing.
  4. Joint Axial Movement: 2 inches of compression and 1/2 inch of extension.
  5. Configuration for Copper Tubing: Multi-ply, phosphor-bronze bellows with copper pipe ends.
    - a. End Connections for Copper Tubing NPS 2 and Smaller: Solder joint or threaded.
    - b. End Connections for Copper Tubing NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Threaded.
  6. Configuration for Steel Piping: Multi-ply, stainless-steel bellows; steel-pipe end connections; and carbon-steel shroud.
    - a. End Connections for Steel Pipe NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded.
    - b. End Connections for Steel Pipe NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Threaded Welded.

## 2.7 GROOVED-JOINT EXPANSION JOINTS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Anvil International.
  2. Grinnell G-Fire by Johnson Controls Company.
  3. Victaulic Company.
- B. Description: Factory-assembled expansion joint made of several grooved-end pipe nipples, couplings, and grooved joints.
- C. Standard: AWWA C606, for grooved joints.
- D. Nipples: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Schedule 40, Type E or S, steel pipe with grooved ends.
- E. Couplings: flexible type for steel-pipe dimensions. Include ferrous housing sections, Buna-N gasket suitable for diluted acid, alkaline fluids, and cold and hot water, and bolts and nuts.

## 2.8 ALIGNMENT GUIDES AND ANCHORS

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Advanced Thermal Systems, Inc.
  - b. Flexicraft Industries.
  - c. Mason Industries, Inc.
  - d. Metraflex Company (The).
2. Description: Steel, factory-fabricated alignment guide, with bolted two-section outer cylinder and base for attaching to structure; with two-section guiding slider for bolting to pipe.
3. Steel Shapes and Plates: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
4. Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.10 or ASTM A 183, steel hex head.
5. Washers: ASTM F 844, steel, plain, flat washers.
6. Mechanical Fasteners: Insert-wedge-type stud with expansion plug anchor for use in hardened concrete, with tension and shear capacities appropriate for application. Threaded stud, expansion plug, nuts and washers shall be zinc-coated carbon steel.
7. Chemical Fasteners: Insert-type stud, bonding-system anchor for use with hardened concrete, with tension and shear capacities appropriate for application.
  - a. Bonding Material: ASTM C 881/C 881M, Type IV, Grade 3, two-component epoxy resin suitable for surface temperature of hardened concrete where fastener is to be installed.
  - b. Stud: threaded stud washers and nuts shall be ASTM A 307, zinc-coated carbon steel.
  - c. Alignment Guides
    - 1) Horizontal split spider type guide – Metraflex – Style IV

- 2) Slide guide - – Metraflex – model PTFE
- 3) Pre-insulated guide – Metraflex – model PG PRE
- 4) Vertical glide riser - – Metraflex – model PGQ
- d. Anchors
  - 1) Anchor clamp – Metraflex – model PA
  - 2) Structural I Beam Anchors – Metraflex
  - 3) Pre-insulated Anchor – Metraflex – model PAPI
  - 4) Modular riser guide – Metraflex – modular riser with EPDM insert

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 VALVE APPLICATIONS

- A. Install shutoff-duty valves at each branch connection to supply mains and at supply connection to each piece of equipment.
- B. Install calibrated-orifice, balancing valves at each branch connection to return main.
- C. Install calibrated-orifice, balancing valves in the return pipe of each heating or cooling terminal.
- D. Install check valves at each pump discharge and elsewhere as required to control flow direction.
- E. Install safety valves at hot-water generators and elsewhere as required by ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code. Install drip-pan elbow on safety-valve outlet and pipe without valves to the outdoors; pipe drain to nearest floor drain or as indicated on Drawings. Comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1, for installation requirements.
- F. Install pressure-reducing valves at makeup-water connection to regulate system fill pressure.
- G. All valves and specialties installed in the system shall have a pressure rating that exceeds the system working pressure.

### 3.2 HYDRONIC SPECIALTIES INSTALLATION

- A. All valves and specialties installed in the system shall have a pressure rating that exceeds the system working pressure.
- B. Install manual air vents at high points in piping, at heat-transfer coils, and elsewhere as required for system air venting.
- C. Install automatic air vents at high points of system piping in mechanical equipment rooms only. Install manual vents at heat-transfer coils and elsewhere as required for air venting.
- D. Install piping from boiler air outlet, air separator, or air purger to expansion tank with a 2 percent upward slope toward tank.
- E. Install in-line air separators in pump suction. Install drain valve on air separators NPS 2 and larger.

- F. Install tangential air separator in pump suction. Install blowdown piping with gate or full-port ball valve; extend full size to nearest floor drain.
- G. Install steel braided flexible pipe connections at all coil connections and at all piping connections to motor driven equipment.
- H. Isolate piping from base mounted pumps with spherical rubber flexible connections
- I. Install vibration isolation hangers or supports on all piping connected to motor driven equipment for a distance of 20' or the first two hangers.
- J. Install expansion tanks above the air separator. Install tank fitting in tank bottom and charge tank. Use manual vent for initial fill to establish proper water level in tank.
  - 1. Install tank fittings that are shipped loose.
  - 2. Support tank from floor or structure above with sufficient strength to carry weight of tank, piping connections, fittings, plus tank full of water. Do not overload building components and structural members.
- K. Install expansion tanks on the floor. Vent and purge air from hydronic system, and **ensure that tank is properly charged with air to suit system Project requirements. System pressure shall be 5 psi minimum residual at the top of the system.**
- L. Install Acoustic split seals on all hydronic piping 2" and over, penetrating mechanical equipment room walls.
- M. Install Packless expansion fittings in all hydronic pipe sections, regardless of service, that is over 75' long straight run. Alternative pipe "expansion loop" may be used if space permits. Piping layout submittal shall indicate guide and ridged mount locations.

### 3.3 EXPANSION JOINT INSTALLATION

- A. Install expansion joints of sizes matching sizes of piping in which they are installed.
- B. Install grooved-joint expansion joints to grooved-end steel piping.
- C. Grooved end pipe applications can use multiple grooved coupling installed in an arrangement as approved by the manufacture for the specific application. The manufacture shall recommend the number, placement and arrangement in the piping systems. Submit to the engineer for review and approval.

### 3.4 PIPE LOOP AND SWING CONNECTION INSTALLATION

- A. Install pipe loops cold-sprung in tension or compression as required to partly absorb tension or compression produced during anticipated change in temperature.
- B. Connect risers and branch connections to terminal units with at least four pipe fittings, including tee in riser.
- C. Connect mains and branch connections to terminal units with at least four pipe fittings, including tee in main.

### 3.5 ALIGNMENT-GUIDE AND ANCHOR INSTALLATION

- A. Install alignment guides to guide expansion and to avoid end-loading and torsional stress.
- B. Install one guide(s) on each side of pipe expansion fittings and loops. Install guides nearest to expansion joint or loop not more than three pipe diameters from expansion joint.
- C. Attach guides to pipe, and secure guides to building structure.
- D. Install anchors at locations to prevent stresses from exceeding those permitted by ASME B31.9 and to prevent transfer of loading and stresses to connected equipment.
- E. Anchor Attachments:
  - 1. Anchor Attachment to Steel Pipe: Attach by welding. Comply with ASME B31.9 and ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX, "Welding and Brazing Qualifications."
  - 2. Anchor Attachment to Copper Tubing: Attach with pipe hangers. Use MSS SP-69, Type 24; U bolts bolted to anchor.
- F. Fabricate and install steel anchors by welding steel shapes, plates, and bars. Comply with ASME B31.9 and AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
  - 1. Anchor Attachment to Steel Structural Members: Attach by welding.
  - 2. Anchor Attachment to Concrete Structural Members: Attach by fasteners. Follow fastener manufacturer's written instructions.
- G. Use grout to form flat bearing surfaces for guides and anchors attached to concrete.

END OF SECTION 232116

## SECTION 232300 - REFRIGERANT PIPING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Refrigerant pipes and fittings.
  - 2. Refrigerant piping valves and specialties.
  - 3. Refrigerants.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of valve, refrigerant piping, and piping specialty.
  - 1. Include pressure drop, based on manufacturer's test data, for the following:
    - a. Thermostatic expansion valves.
    - b. Solenoid valves.
    - c. Hot-gas bypass valves.
    - d. Filter dryers.
    - e. Strainers.
    - f. Pressure-regulating valves.
- B. Sustainable Design Submittals:
  - 1. Product Data for EA Prerequisite "Fundamental Refrigerant Management": For refrigerants, indicating compliance with refrigerant management practices.
- C. Shop Drawings:
  - 1. Show piping size and piping layout, including oil traps, double risers, specialties, and pipe and tube sizes to accommodate, as a minimum, equipment provided, elevation difference between compressor and evaporator, and length of piping to ensure proper operation and compliance with warranties of connected equipment.
  - 2. Show interface and spatial relationships between piping and equipment.
  - 3. Shop Drawing Scale: 1/4 inch equals 1 foot.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Welding certificates.

- B. Field quality-control reports.

## 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For refrigerant valves and piping specialties to include in maintenance manuals.

## 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to 2010 ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX, "Welding and Brazing Qualifications."
- B. Comply with ASHRAE 15, "Safety Code for Refrigeration Systems."
- C. Comply with ASME B31.5, "Refrigeration Piping and Heat Transfer Components."

## 1.7 PRODUCT STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Store piping with end caps in place to ensure that piping interior and exterior are clean when installed.

# PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Line Test Pressure for Refrigerant R-134a:
  - 1. Suction Lines for Air-Conditioning Applications: 115 psig.
  - 2. Suction Lines for Heat-Pump Applications: 225 psig.
  - 3. Hot-Gas and Liquid Lines: 225 psig.
- B. Line Test Pressure for Refrigerant R-407C:
  - 1. Suction Lines for Air-Conditioning Applications: 230 psig.
  - 2. Suction Lines for Heat-Pump Applications: 380 psig.
  - 3. Hot-Gas and Liquid Lines: 380 psig.
- C. Line Test Pressure for Refrigerant R-410A:
  - 1. Suction Lines for Air-Conditioning Applications: 300 psig.
  - 2. Suction Lines for Heat-Pump Applications: 535 psig.
  - 3. Hot-Gas and Liquid Lines: 535 psig.

## 2.2 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS

- A. Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type L – Refer to section 3 for applications

- B. ASTM B 280, Type ACR. – Refer to section 3 for applications
- C. Wrought-Copper Fittings: ASME B16.22.
- D. Wrought-Copper Unions: ASME B16.22.
- E. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32. Use 95-5 tin antimony or alloy HB solder to join copper socket fittings on copper pipe.
- F. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8/A5.8M.
- G. Flexible Connectors:
  - 1. Body: Tin-bronze bellows with woven, flexible, tinned-bronze-wire-reinforced protective jacket.
  - 2. End Connections: Socket ends.
  - 3. Offset Performance: Capable of minimum 3/4-inch misalignment in minimum 7-inch-long assembly.
  - 4. Working Pressure Rating: Factory test at minimum 500 psig.
  - 5. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F.
- H. Flexible Connectors:
  - 1. Body: Stainless-steel bellows with woven, flexible, stainless-steel-wire-reinforced protective jacket.
  - 2. End Connections:
    - a. NPS 2 and Smaller: With threaded-end connections.
    - b. NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: With flanged-end connections.
  - 3. Offset Performance: Capable of minimum 3/4-inch misalignment in minimum 7-inch-long assembly.
  - 4. Pressure Rating: Factory test at minimum 500 psig.
  - 5. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F.

## 2.3 VALVES AND SPECIALTIES

- A. Manufactures:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Danfoss Inc.
    - b. Heldon Products; Henry Technologies.
    - c. Paul Mueller Company.
    - d. Danfoss Inc.
    - e. Parker Hannifin Corp.
    - f. Keep-Rite Co.
- B. Diaphragm Packless Valves:

1. Body and Bonnet: Forged brass or cast bronze; globe design with straight-through or angle pattern.
  2. Diaphragm: Phosphor bronze and stainless steel with stainless-steel spring.
  3. Operator: Rising stem and hand wheel.
  4. Seat: Nylon.
  5. End Connections: Socket, union, or flanged.
  6. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
  7. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F.
- C. Packed-Angle Valves:
1. Body and Bonnet: Forged brass or cast bronze
  2. Packing: Molded stem, back seating, and replaceable under pressure.
  3. Operator: Rising stem.
  4. Seat: Nonrotating, self-aligning polytetrafluoroethylene.
  5. Seal Cap: Forged-brass or valox hex cap.
  6. End Connections: Socket, union, threaded, or flanged.
  7. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
  8. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F.
- D. Check Valves:
1. Body: Ductile iron, forged brass, or cast bronze; globe pattern.
  2. Bonnet: Bolted ductile iron, forged brass, or cast bronze; or brass hex plug.
  3. Piston: Removable polytetrafluoroethylene seat.
  4. Closing Spring: Stainless steel.
  5. Manual Opening Stem: Seal cap, plated-steel stem, and graphite seal.
  6. End Connections: Socket, union, threaded, or flanged.
  7. Maximum Opening Pressure: 0.50 psig.
  8. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
  9. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F.
- E. Service Valves:
1. Body: Forged brass with brass cap including key end to remove core.
  2. Core: Removable ball-type check valve with stainless-steel spring.
  3. Seat: Polytetrafluoroethylene.
  4. End Connections: Copper spring.
  5. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
- F. Solenoid Valves: Comply with AHRI 760 and UL 429; listed and labeled by a National Recognized Testing Laboratory (NRTL).
1. Body and Bonnet: Plated steel.
  2. Solenoid Tube, Plunger, Closing Spring, and Seat Orifice: Stainless steel.
  3. Seat: Polytetrafluoroethylene.
  4. End Connections: Threaded.
  5. Electrical: Molded, watertight coil in NEMA 250 enclosure of type required by location with 1/2-inch conduit adapter, and 24-V ac coil.
  6. Working Pressure Rating: 400 psig.
  7. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F.
- G. Safety Relief Valves: Comply with 2010 ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code; listed and labeled by an NRTL.

1. Body and Bonnet: Ductile iron and steel, with neoprene O-ring seal.
  2. Piston, Closing Spring, and Seat Insert: Stainless steel.
  3. Seat: Polytetrafluoroethylene.
  4. End Connections: Threaded.
  5. Working Pressure Rating: 400 psig.
  6. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F.
- H. Thermostatic Expansion Valves: Comply with AHRI 750.
1. Body, Bonnet, and Seal Cap: Forged brass or steel.
  2. Diaphragm, Piston, Closing Spring, and Seat Insert: Stainless steel.
  3. Packing and Gaskets: Non-asbestos.
  4. Capillary and Bulb: Copper tubing filled with refrigerant charge.
  5. Suction Temperature: 40 deg F.
  6. Superheat: Adjustable or Nonadjustable.
  7. Reverse-flow option (for heat-pump applications).
  8. End Connections: Socket, flare, or threaded union.
  9. Working Pressure Rating: 700 psig.
- I. Hot-Gas Bypass Valves: Comply with UL 429; listed and labeled by an NRTL.
1. Body, Bonnet, and Seal Cap: Ductile iron or steel.
  2. Diaphragm, Piston, Closing Spring, and Seat Insert: Stainless steel.
  3. Packing and Gaskets: Non-asbestos.
  4. Solenoid Tube, Plunger, Closing Spring, and Seat Orifice: Stainless steel.
  5. Seat: Polytetrafluoroethylene.
  6. Equalizer: Internal or External.
  7. Electrical: Molded, watertight coil in NEMA 250 enclosure of type required by location with 1/2-inch conduit adapter and 24-V ac coil.
  8. End Connections: Socket.
  9. Throttling Range: Maximum 5 psig.
  10. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
  11. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F.
- J. Straight-Type Strainers:
1. Body: Brass or welded steel with corrosion-resistant coating.
  2. Screen: 100-mesh stainless steel.
  3. End Connections: Socket or flare.
  4. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
  5. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F.
- K. Angle-Type Strainers:
1. Body: Forged brass or cast bronze.
  2. Drain Plug: Brass hex plug.
  3. Screen: 100-mesh monel.
  4. End Connections: Socket or flare.
  5. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
  6. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F.
- L. Moisture/Liquid Indicators:
1. Body: Forged brass.

2. Window: Replaceable, clear, fused glass window with indicating element protected by filter screen.
  3. Indicator: Color coded to show moisture content in parts per million (ppm).
  4. Minimum Moisture Indicator Sensitivity: Indicate moisture above 60 ppm.
  5. End Connections: Socket or flare.
  6. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
  7. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F.
- M. Replaceable-Core Filter Dryers: Comply with AHRI 730.
1. Body and Cover: Painted-steel shell with ductile-iron cover, stainless-steel screws, and neoprene gaskets.
  2. Filter Media: 10 micron, pleated with integral end rings; stainless-steel support.
  3. Desiccant Media: Activated alumina or charcoal.
  4. Designed for reverse flow (for heat-pump applications).
  5. End Connections: Socket.
  6. Access Ports: NPS 1/4 connections at entering and leaving sides for pressure differential measurement.
  7. Maximum Pressure Loss: 2 psig.
  8. Rated Flow: .
  9. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
  10. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F.
- N. Permanent Filter Dryers: Comply with AHRI 730.
1. Body and Cover: Painted-steel shell.
  2. Filter Media: 10 micron, pleated with integral end rings; stainless-steel support.
  3. Desiccant Media: Activated alumina or charcoal.
  4. Designed for reverse flow (for heat-pump applications).
  5. End Connections: Socket.
  6. Access Ports: NPS 1/4 connections at entering and leaving sides for pressure differential measurement.
  7. Maximum Pressure Loss: 2 psig.
  8. Rated Flow: .
  9. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
  10. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F.
- O. Mufflers:
1. Body: Welded steel with corrosion-resistant coating.
  2. End Connections: Socket or flare.
  3. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
  4. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F.
- P. Receivers: Comply with AHRI 495.
1. Comply with 2010 ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code; listed and labeled by an NRTL.
  2. Comply with UL 207; listed and labeled by an NRTL.
  3. Body: Welded steel with corrosion-resistant coating.
  4. Tappings: Inlet, outlet, liquid level indicator, and safety relief valve.
  5. End Connections: Socket or threaded.
  6. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
  7. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F.

- Q. Liquid Accumulators: Comply with AHRI 495.
  - 1. Body: Welded steel with corrosion-resistant coating.
  - 2. End Connections: Socket or threaded.
  - 3. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
  - 4. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F.
- R. FLEXIBLE CONNECTORS
  - 1. Corrugated stainless steel bronze hose with single layer of stainless steel exterior braiding, minimum 6 inches long with copper tube ends; for maximum working pressure 500 psi.

## 2.4 REFRIGERANTS

- A. ASHRAE 34, R-134a: Tetrafluoroethane.
- B. ASHRAE 34, R-407C: Difluoromethane/Pentafluoroethane/1,1,1,2-Tetrafluoroethane.
- C. ASHRAE 34, R-410A: Pentafluoroethane/Difluoromethane.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PIPING APPLICATIONS FOR REFRIGERANT;

- A. Suction Lines NPS 1-1/2 and Smaller for Conventional Air-Conditioning Applications: Copper, Type ACR, annealed-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with brazed or soldered joints.
- B. Hot-Gas and Liquid Lines, and Suction Lines for Heat-Pump Applications: Copper, Type ACR, annealed-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with brazed or soldered joints.
- C. Safety-Relief-Valve Discharge Piping: Schedule 40, black-steel and wrought-steel fittings with welded joints or Type K or Type L, drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with soldered joints
  - 1. NPS 1-1/2 and Smaller: Copper, Type L, drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with soldered joints.

### 3.2 VALVE AND SPECIALTY APPLICATIONS

- A. Install diaphragm packless valves in suction and discharge lines of compressor.
- B. Install service valves for gage taps at inlet and outlet of hot-gas bypass valves and strainers if they are not an integral part of valves and strainers.
- C. Install a check valve at the compressor discharge and a liquid accumulator at the compressor suction connection.
- D. Except as otherwise indicated, install diaphragm packless or packed-angle valves on inlet and outlet side of filter dryers.

- E. Install a full-size, three-valve bypass around filter dryers.
- F. Install solenoid valves upstream from each expansion valve and hot-gas bypass valve. Install solenoid valves in horizontal lines with coil at top.
- G. Install thermostatic expansion valves as close as possible to distributors on evaporators.
  - 1. Install valve so diaphragm case is warmer than bulb.
  - 2. Secure bulb to clean, straight, horizontal section of suction line using two bulb straps. Do not mount bulb in a trap or at bottom of the line.
  - 3. If external equalizer lines are required, make connection where it will reflect suction-line pressure at bulb location.
- H. Install safety relief valves where required by 2010 ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code. Pipe safety-relief-valve discharge line to outside according to ASHRAE 15.
- I. Install moisture/liquid indicators in liquid line at the inlet of the thermostatic expansion valve or at the inlet of the evaporator coil capillary tube.
- J. Install strainers upstream from and adjacent to the following unless they are furnished as an integral assembly for the device being protected:
  - 1. Solenoid valves.
  - 2. Thermostatic expansion valves.
  - 3. Hot-gas bypass valves.
  - 4. Compressor.
- K. Install filter dryers in liquid line between compressor and thermostatic expansion valve, and in the suction line at the compressor.
- L. Install receivers sized to accommodate pump-down charge.
- M. Install flexible connectors at compressors.

### 3.3 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems; indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Shop Drawings.
- B. Install refrigerant piping according to ASHRAE 15 and in accordance the unit manufactures guidelines. Maintain refrigerant velocities within manufactures recommendations in order to keep oil entrained.
- C. Install piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.

- D. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- E. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- F. Install piping adjacent to machines to allow service and maintenance.
- G. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- H. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- I. Select system components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.
- J. Refer to Section 230923 "Direct Digital Control (DDC) System for HVAC" and Section 230993.11 "Sequence of Operations for HVAC DDC" for solenoid valve controllers, control wiring, and sequence of operation.
- K. Install piping as short and direct as possible, with a minimum number of joints, elbows, and fittings.
- L. Arrange piping to allow inspection and service of refrigeration equipment. Install valves and specialties in accessible locations to allow for service and inspection. Install access doors or panels as specified in Section 083113 "Access Doors and Frames" if valves or equipment requiring maintenance is concealed behind finished surfaces.
- M. Install refrigerant piping in protective conduit where installed belowground.
- N. Install refrigerant piping in rigid or flexible conduit in locations where exposed to mechanical injury.
- O. Slope refrigerant piping as follows:
  - 1. Install horizontal hot-gas discharge piping with a uniform slope downward away from compressor.
  - 2. Install horizontal suction lines with a uniform slope downward to compressor.
  - 3. Install traps and double risers to entrain oil in vertical runs.
  - 4. Liquid lines may be installed level.
- P. When brazing or soldering, remove solenoid-valve coils and sight glasses; also remove valve stems, seats, and packing, and accessible internal parts of refrigerant specialties. Do not apply heat near expansion-valve bulb.
- Q. Install piping with adequate clearance between pipe and adjacent walls and hangers or between pipes for insulation installation.
- R. Identify refrigerant piping and valves according to Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

- S. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Section 230517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for HVAC Piping."
- T. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Section 230517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for HVAC Piping."
- U. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Section 230518 "Escutcheons for HVAC Piping."
- V. Install refrigerant piping to allow expansion and contraction of piping without deformation or bending or sagging. Provide expansion fittings, bends or elbows to allow expansion in accordance with manufactures temperature operating range.

### 3.4 PIPE JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
- B. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.
- C. Fill pipe and fittings with an inert gas (nitrogen or carbon dioxide), during brazing or welding, to prevent scale formation.
- D. Soldered Joints: Construct joints according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."
- E. Brazed Joints: Construct joints according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," Chapter "Pipe and Tube."
  - 1. Use Type BCuP (copper-phosphorus) alloy for joining copper socket fittings with copper pipe.
  - 2. Use Type BAg (cadmium-free silver) alloy for joining copper with bronze or steel.
- F. Threaded Joints: Thread steel pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and to restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
  - 1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dry-seal threading is specified.
  - 2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.
- G. Steel pipe can be threaded, but threaded joints must be seal brazed or seal welded.
- H. Welded Joints: Construct joints according to AWS D10.12M/D10.12.
- I. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate gasket material, size, type, and thickness for service application. Install gasket concentrically positioned. Use suitable lubricants on bolt threads.

### 3.5 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Comply with requirements for pipe hangers and supports specified in Section 230529 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
- B. Install the following pipe attachments:
  - 1. Adjustable steel clevis hangers for individual horizontal runs less than 20 feet long.
  - 2. Roller hangers and spring hangers for individual horizontal runs 20 feet or longer.
  - 3. Pipe Roller: MSS SP-58, Type 44 for multiple horizontal piping 20 feet or longer, supported on a trapeze.
  - 4. Spring hangers to support vertical runs.
  - 5. Copper-clad hangers and supports for hangers and supports in direct contact with copper pipe.
- C. Install hangers for copper tubing with the following maximum spacing and minimum rod diameters:
  - 1. NPS 1/2: Maximum span, 60 inches; minimum rod, 1/4 inch.
  - 2. NPS 5/8: Maximum span, 60 inches; minimum rod, 1/4 inch.
  - 3. NPS 1: Maximum span, 72 inches; minimum rod, 1/4 inch.
  - 4. NPS 1-1/4: Maximum span, 96 inches; minimum rod, 3/8 inch.
  - 5. NPS 1-1/2: Maximum span, 96 inches; minimum rod, 3/8 inch.
  - 6. NPS 2: Maximum span, 96 inches; minimum rod, 3/8 inch.
  - 7. NPS 2-1/2: Maximum span, 108 inches; minimum rod, 3/8 inch.
  - 8. NPS 3: Maximum span, 10 feet; minimum rod, 3/8 inch.
  - 9. NPS 4: Maximum span, 12 feet; minimum rod, 1/2 inch.
- D. Install hangers for steel piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
  - 1. NPS 2: Maximum span, 10 feet; minimum rod, 3/8 inch.
  - 2. NPS 2-1/2: Maximum span, 11 feet; minimum rod, 3/8 inch.
  - 3. NPS 3: Maximum span, 12 feet; minimum rod, 3/8 inch.
  - 4. NPS 4: Maximum span, 14 feet; minimum rod, 1/2 inch.
- E. Support multifloor vertical runs at least at each floor.

### 3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections:
  - 1. Comply with ASME B31.5, Chapter VI.
  - 2. Test refrigerant piping, specialties, and receivers. Isolate compressor, condenser, evaporator, and safety devices from test pressure if they are not rated above the test pressure.
  - 3. Test high- and low-pressure side piping of each system separately at not less than the pressures indicated in "Performance Requirements" Article.
    - a. Fill system with nitrogen to the required test pressure.

- b. System shall maintain test pressure at the manifold gage throughout duration of test.
- c. Test joints and fittings with electronic leak detector or by brushing a small amount of soap and glycerin solution over joints.
- d. Remake leaking joints using new materials, and retest until satisfactory results are achieved.

B. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.7 SYSTEM CHARGING

A. Charge system using the following procedures:

- 1. Install core in filter dryers after leak test but before evacuation.
- 2. Evacuate entire refrigerant system with a vacuum pump to 500 micrometers. If vacuum holds for 12 hours, system is ready for charging.
- 3. Break vacuum with refrigerant gas, allowing pressure to build up to 2 psig.
- 4. Charge system with a new filter-dryer core in charging line.

### 3.8 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust thermostatic expansion valve to obtain proper evaporator superheat.
- B. Adjust high- and low-pressure switch settings to avoid short cycling in response to fluctuating suction pressure.
- C. Adjust set-point temperature of air-conditioning or chilled-water controllers to the system design temperature.
- D. Perform the following adjustments before operating the refrigeration system, according to manufacturer's written instructions:
  - 1. Open shutoff valves in condenser water circuit.
  - 2. Verify that compressor oil level is correct.
  - 3. Open compressor suction and discharge valves.
  - 4. Open refrigerant valves except bypass valves that are used for other purposes.
  - 5. Check open compressor-motor alignment and verify lubrication for motors and bearings.
- E. Replace core of replaceable filter dryer after system has been adjusted and after design flow rates and pressures are established.

END OF SECTION 232300

## SECTION 232513 - WATER TREATMENT FOR CLOSED-LOOP HYDRONIC SYSTEMS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes the following water treatment for closed-loop hydronic systems:
  - 1. Manual chemical-feed equipment.
  - 2. Chemicals.
  - 3. Glycol Automatic feed Unit
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 232533 "HVAC Makeup-Water Filtration Equipment" for water softeners, RO equipment, and filtration equipment.

## 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Low Voltage: As defined in NFPA 70 for circuits and equipment operating at less than 50 V or for remote-control, signaling power-limited circuits.
- B. RO: Reverse osmosis.
- C. TSS: Total suspended solids are solid materials, including organic and inorganic, that are suspended in the water. These solids may include silt, plankton, and industrial wastes.

## 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories for the following products:
  - 1. Bypass feeders.
  - 2. Water meters.
  - 3. Inhibitor injection timers.
  - 4. pH controllers.
  - 5. TSS controllers.
  - 6. Chemical solution tanks.
  - 7. Injection pumps.
  - 8. Chemical test equipment.
  - 9. Chemical material safety data sheets.

- B. Shop Drawings: Pretreatment and chemical treatment equipment showing tanks, maintenance space required, and piping connections to hydronic systems.
  - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.
  - 2. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

## 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Seismic Qualification Certificates: For components, from manufacturer.
  - 1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
  - 2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
  - 3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
- B. Water Analysis Provider Qualifications: Verification of experience and capability of HVAC water-treatment service provider.
- C. Field quality-control reports.
- D. Other Informational Submittals:
  - 1. Water-Treatment Program: Written sequence of operation on an annual basis for the application equipment required to achieve water quality defined in "Performance Requirements" Article.
  - 2. Water Analysis: Illustrate water quality available at Project site.

## 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For sensors, injection pumps, and controllers to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

## 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. HVAC Water-Treatment Service Provider Qualifications: An experienced HVAC water-treatment service provider capable of analyzing water qualities, installing water-treatment equipment, and applying water treatment as specified in this Section.

## 1.8 MAINTENANCE SERVICE

- A. Scope of Maintenance Service: Provide chemicals and service program to maintain water conditions required above to inhibit corrosion and scale formation for hydronic piping and equipment. Services and chemicals shall be provided for a period of one year from date of Substantial Completion and shall include the following:
  - 1. Initial water analysis and HVAC water-treatment recommendations.

2. Startup assistance for Contractor to flush the systems, clean with detergents, and initially fill systems with required chemical treatment prior to operation.
3. Periodic field service and consultation.
4. Customer report charts and log sheets.
5. Laboratory technical analysis.
6. Analyses and reports of all chemical items concerning safety and compliance with government regulations.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Aqua-Chem, Inc.
  2. Cascade Water Services, Inc.
  3. Metro Group, Inc. (The).
  4. Watcon, Inc.
  5. Water Services Inc.

### 2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Water quality for hydronic systems shall minimize corrosion, scale buildup, and biological growth for optimum efficiency of hydronic equipment without creating a hazard to operating personnel or the environment.
- B. Base HVAC water treatment on quality of water available at Project site, hydronic system equipment material characteristics and functional performance characteristics, operating personnel capabilities, and requirements and guidelines of authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Closed hydronic systems, including hot-water heating, shall have the following water qualities:
1. pH: Maintain a value within 9.0 to 10.5.
  2. "P" Alkalinity: Maintain a value within 100 to 500 ppm.
  3. Boron: Maintain a value within 100 to 200 ppm.
  4. Chemical Oxygen Demand: Maintain a maximum value of 100 ppm.
  5. Soluble Copper: Maintain a maximum value of 0.20 ppm.
  6. TSS: Maintain a maximum value of 10 ppm.
  7. Ammonia: Maintain a maximum value of 20 ppm.
  8. Free Caustic Alkalinity: Maintain a maximum value of 20 ppm.
  9. Microbiological Limits:
    - a. Total Aerobic Plate Count: Maintain a maximum value of 1000 organisms/mL.
    - b. Total Anaerobic Plate Count: Maintain a maximum value of 100 organisms/mL.
    - c. Nitrate Reducers: Maintain a maximum value of 100 organisms/mL.
    - d. Sulfate Reducers: Maintain a maximum value of zero organisms/mL.
    - e. Iron Bacteria: Maintain a maximum value of zero organisms/mL.

## 2.3 MANUAL CHEMICAL-FEED EQUIPMENT

- A. Bypass Feeders: Steel, with corrosion-resistant exterior coating, minimum 3-1/2-inch fill opening in the top, and NPS 3/4 bottom inlet and top side outlet. Quarter turn or threaded fill cap with gasket seal and diaphragm to lock the top on the feeder when exposed to system pressure in the vessel.

1. Capacity: 5 gal..
2. Minimum Working Pressure: 125 psig.

## 2.4 AUTOMATIC CHEMICAL-FEED EQUIPMENT (NOT USED)

- A. Water Meter:

1. AWWA C700, oscillating-piston, magnetic-drive, totalization meter.
2. Body: Bronze.
3. Minimum Working-Pressure Rating: 150 psig.
4. Maximum Pressure Loss at Design Flow: 3 psig.
5. Registration: Gallons or cubic feet.
6. End Connections: Threaded.
7. Controls: Flow-control switch with normally open contacts; rated for maximum 10 A, 250-V ac; and that will close at adjustable increments of total flow.
8. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

- B. Water Meter:

1. AWWA C701, turbine-type, totalization meter.
2. Body: Bronze.
3. Minimum Working-Pressure Rating: 100 psig.
4. Maximum Pressure Loss at Design Flow: 3 psig.
5. Registration: Gallons or cubic feet.
6. End Connections: Threaded.
7. Control: Low-voltage signal capable of transmitting 1000 feet.
8. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

- C. Water Meter:

1. AWWA C701, turbine-type, totalization meter.
2. Body: Bronze or Epoxy-coated cast iron.
3. Minimum Working-Pressure Rating: 150 psig.
4. Maximum Pressure Loss at Design Flow: 3 psig.
5. Registration: Gallons or cubic feet.
6. End Connections: Flanged.
7. Controls: Flow-control switch with normally open contacts; rated for maximum 10 A, 250-V ac; and that will close at adjustable increments of total flow.

8. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

D. Chemical Solution Tanks:

1. Chemical-resistant reservoirs fabricated from high-density opaque polyethylene with minimum 110 percent containment vessel.
2. Molded cover with recess for mounting pump.
3. Capacity: 50 gal..

E. Chemical Solution Injection Pumps:

1. Self-priming, positive displacement; rated for intended chemical with minimum 25 percent safety factor for design pressure and temperature.
2. Adjustable flow rate.
3. Metal and thermoplastic construction.
4. Built-in relief valve.
5. Fully enclosed, continuous-duty, single-phase motor. Comply with requirements in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
6. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

F. Chemical Solution Tubing: Polyethylene tubing with compression fittings and joints except ASTM A 269, Type 304, stainless steel for steam boiler injection assemblies.

G. Injection Assembly:

1. Quill: Minimum NPS 1/2 with insertion length sufficient to discharge into at least 25 percent of pipe diameter.
2. Ball Valve: Two-piece, stainless steel; selected to fit quill.
3. Packing Gland: Mechanical seal on quill of sufficient length to allow quill removal during system operation.
4. Assembly Pressure/Temperature Rating: Minimum 600 psig at 200 deg F.

## 2.5 CHEMICALS

- A. Chemicals shall be as recommended by water-treatment system manufacturer that are compatible with piping system components and connected equipment and that can attain water quality specified in "Performance Requirements" Article.

## 2.6 GLYCOL MAKE UP UNIT

- A. Factory packaged and assembled simplex or duplex pump, mixing tank, and expansion tank, with level and pump controls, starters and control wiring.
- B. Reservoir
1. Industrial grade polyethylene tank

2. Suited for glycol solution or potable water
  3. 55 gallon capacity
  4. 2" opening on top for ventilation/fill
  5. Observable fluid level with scale
  6. Removable Lid
  7. Y-strainer
- C. Pump
1. 10 GPM capacity at 30 psi, 1/2 HP,
  2. low pressure
  3. 5 GPM capacity at 60 psi, 3/4 HP, high pressure
  4. Operates as needed to restore system pressure with the solution contained in the unit's reservoir
  5. Pump isolation valves, check and balance valve
  6. Discharge pressure gage
  7. Motor contactor with pressure control
  8. System HOA switch with green running light
  9. Single power connectio
- D. Pressure Control
1. Cut off provides protection from excess pressure
  2. Cut in 3-10 psi, cut out 9-30 psi for GMU30
  3. Cut in 10-45 psi, cut out 20-60 psi for GMU60
- E. Level Control
1. Safely shuts down pump when solution level is low
  2. Remote alarm contact
  3. Red indicator light
- F. Valves
1. Shut-off
  2. Non-slam check
  3. Calibrated balance valve

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 WATER ANALYSIS

- A. Perform an analysis of supply water to determine quality of water available at Project site.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install chemical application equipment on concrete bases, level and plumb. Maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances. Arrange units so controls and devices that require servicing are accessible. Anchor chemical tanks and floor-mounting accessories to substrate.

- B. Install seismic restraints for equipment and floor-mounting accessories and anchor to building structure. Comply with requirements in Section 230548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC" for seismic restraints.
- C. Install water testing equipment on wall near water chemical application equipment.
- D. Install interconnecting control wiring for chemical treatment controls and sensors.
- E. Mount sensors and injectors in piping circuits.
- F. Bypass Feeders: Install in closed hydronic systems, including hot-water heating chilled water dual-temperature water and glycol cooling, and equipped with the following:
  - 1. Install bypass feeder in a bypass circuit around circulating pumps unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.
  - 2. Install water meter in makeup-water supply.
  - 3. Install test-coupon assembly in bypass circuit around circulating pumps unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.
  - 4. Install a gate or full-port ball isolation valves on inlet, outlet, and drain below the feeder inlet.
  - 5. Install a swing check on the inlet after the isolation valve.

### 3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Where installing piping adjacent to equipment, allow space for service and maintenance.
- B. Make piping connections between HVAC water-treatment equipment and dissimilar-metal piping with dielectric fittings. Comply with requirements in Section 232116 "Hydronic Piping Specialties."
- C. Install shutoff valves on HVAC water-treatment equipment inlet and outlet. Metal general-duty valves are specified in Section 230523.10 "Valves for HVAC Piping," Section 230523.12
- D. Comply with requirements in Section 221119 "Domestic Water Piping Specialties" for backflow preventers required in makeup-water connections to potable-water systems.
- E. Confirm applicable electrical requirements in electrical Sections for connecting electrical equipment.
- F. Ground equipment according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- G. Connect wiring according to Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.

- B. Perform the following tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative:
1. Inspect field-assembled components and equipment installation, including piping and electrical connections.
  2. Inspect piping and equipment to determine that systems and equipment have been cleaned, flushed, and filled with water, and are fully operational before introducing chemicals for water-treatment system.
  3. Place HVAC water-treatment system into operation and calibrate controls during the preliminary phase of hydronic systems' startup procedures.
  4. Do not enclose, cover, or put piping into operation until it is tested and satisfactory test results are achieved.
  5. Test for leaks and defects. If testing is performed in segments, submit separate report for each test, complete with diagram of portion of piping tested.
  6. Leave uncovered and unconcealed new, altered, extended, and replaced water piping until it has been tested and approved. Expose work that has been covered or concealed before it has been tested and approved.
  7. Cap and subject piping to static water pressure of 50 psig above operating pressure, without exceeding pressure rating of piping system materials. Isolate test source and allow test pressure to stand for four hours. Leaks and loss in test pressure constitute defects.
  8. Repair leaks and defects with new materials and retest piping until no leaks exist.
- C. Equipment will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.
- E. At four-week intervals following Substantial Completion, perform separate water analyses on hydronic systems to show that automatic chemical-feed systems are maintaining water quality within performance requirements specified in this Section. Submit written reports of water analysis advising Owner of changes necessary to adhere to "Performance Requirements" Article.
- F. Comply with ASTM D 3370 and with the following standards:
1. Silica: ASTM D 859.
  2. Acidity and Alkalinity: ASTM D 1067.
  3. Iron: ASTM D 1068.
  4. Water Hardness: ASTM D 1126.

### 3.5 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain HVAC water-treatment systems and equipment.
- B. Training: Provide a "how-to-use" self-contained breathing apparatus video that details exact operating procedures of equipment.

END OF SECTION 232513

## SECTION 23 29 13 - VARIABLE FREQUENCY DRIVES

### PART 1 GENERAL

#### 1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Variable frequency drives.

#### 1.02 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Section 23 21 23 - Hydronic Pumps.
- B. Section 16195 - Electrical Identification: Engraved nameplates.

#### 1.03 REFERENCES

- A. Division 1 - Reference Standards: Requirements for references and standards.
- B. NEMA ICS 3.1 - Safety Standards for Construction and Guide for Selection, Installation and Operation of Adjustable-Speed Drive Systems.
- C. NEMA ICS 7 - Industrial Control and Systems: Adjustable Speed Drives.
- D. NEMA 250 - Enclosures for Electrical Equipment (1000 Volts Maximum).
- E. NETA ATS - Acceptance Testing Specifications for Electrical Power Distribution Equipment and Systems (International Electrical Testing Association).
- F. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code.

#### 1.04 SUBMITTALS FOR REVIEW

- A. Division 1 - Submittals: Procedures for submittals.
- B. Product Data: Provide catalog sheets showing voltage, controller size, ratings and size of switching and over current protective devices, short circuit ratings, dimensions, and enclosure details.
- C. Shop Drawings: Indicate front and side views of enclosures with overall dimensions and weights shown; conduit entrance locations and requirements; and nameplate legends.

#### 1.05 SUBMITTALS FOR INFORMATION

- A. Division 1 - Submittals: Submittals for information.
- B. Test Reports: Indicate field test and inspection procedures and test results.

- C. Manufacturer's Instructions: Indicate application conditions and limitations of use stipulated by testing agency specified under Regulatory Requirements. Include instructions for storage, handling, protection, examination, preparation, and installation of Product.
- D. Manufacturer's Field Reports: Indicate start-up inspection findings.

#### 1.06 SUBMITTALS FOR CLOSEOUT

- A. Division 1 - Contract Closeout.
- B. Operation Data: NEMA ICS 3.1. Include instructions for starting and operating controllers, and describe operating limits that may result in hazardous or unsafe conditions.
- C. Maintenance Data: NEMA ICS 3.1. Include routine preventive maintenance schedule.
- D. Furnish two of each air filters.

#### 1.07 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

- A. Conform to requirements of NFPA 70.
- B. Products: Listed and classified by Underwriters Laboratories, Inc. as suitable for the purpose specified and indicated.

#### 1.08 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Division 1 - Material and Equipment: Transport, handle, store, and protect products.
- B. Accept controllers on site in original packing. Inspect for damage.
- C. Store in a clean, dry space. Maintain factory wrapping or provide an additional heavy canvas or heavy plastic cover to protect units from dirt, water, construction debris, and traffic.
- D. Handle in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions. Lift only with lugs provided for the purpose. Handle carefully to avoid damage to components, enclosure, and finish.

#### 1.09 MAINTENANCE SERVICE

- A. Division 1 - Contract Closeout.
- B. Provide service and maintenance of controller for two years from Date of Substantial Completion.

### PART 2 PRODUCTS

#### 2.01 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Equipment and devices can be provided by Danfoss Graham VLT 6000 Series 414-355-8800.

- B. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing variable frequency controllers with minimum five years documented experience, and with service facilities within 50 miles of Project.

## 2.02 DESCRIPTION

- A. Enclosed variable frequency controllers suitable for operating the indicated loads, in conformance with requirements of NEMA ICS 7.
- B. Select unspecified features and options in accordance with NEMA ICS 3.1.
- C. Furnish complete variable frequency VFDs as specified herein for the pumps designated on the drawing schedules to be variable speed. All standard and optional features shall be included within the VFD enclosure, unless otherwise specified. VFD shall be housed in a metal NEMA 1 enclosure, or other NEMA type according to the installation and operating conditions at the job site. The VFD's UL listing shall allow mounting in plenum or other air handling compartments. If a NEMA 12 enclosure is required for the plenum rating, the manufacturer must supply a NEMA 12 rated VFD. VFD's used out doors must be in a NEMA 4x rated enclosure.
- D. The VFD shall convert incoming fixed frequency three-phase AC power into a variable frequency and voltage for controlling the speed of three-phase AC motors. The motor current shall closely approximate a sine wave. Motor voltage shall be varied with frequency to maintain desired motor magnetization current suitable for centrifugal pump and fan control and to eliminate the need for motor derating.
- E. With the motor's rated voltage applied to the VFD input, the VFD shall allow the motor to produce full rated power at rated amps, RMS fundamental volts, and speed without using the motor's service factor. VFDs utilizing sine weighted/coded modulation (with or without 3<sup>rd</sup> harmonic injection) must provide data verifying that the motors will not draw more than full load current during full load and full speed operation.
- F. The VFD shall include an input full-wave bridge rectifier and maintain a fundamental power factor near unity regardless of speed or load.
- G. The VFD and options shall be tested to ANSI/UL Standard 508. The complete VFD, including all specified options, shall be assembled by the manufacturer, which shall be UL-508 certified for the building and assembly of option panels. Assembly of the option panels by a third-party panel shop is not acceptable. The appropriate UL stickers shall be applied to both the VFD and option panel, in the case where these are not contained in one panel. When these VFDs are to be located in Canada, CSA or C-UL certifications shall apply. Both VFD and option panel shall be manufactured in ISO 9001 certified facilities.
- H. The VFD shall have DC link reactors on both the positive and negative rails of the DC bus to minimize power line harmonics. VFDs without DC link reactors shall provide a minimum 3% impedance line reactor.
- I. The VFD's full load amp rating shall meet or exceed NEC Table 430-150. The VFD shall be able to provide full rated output current continuously, 110% of rated current for 60 seconds and 160% of rated current for up to 0.5 second while starting.

- J. The VFD shall be able to provide full torque at any selected frequency from 28 Hz to base speed to allow driving direct drive fans without derating.
- K. An automatic energy optimization selection feature shall be provided standard in the VFD. This feature shall automatically and continually monitor the motor's speed and load and adjust the applied voltage to maximize energy savings and provide up to an additional 3% to 10% energy savings.
- L. Input and output power circuit switching shall be able to be accomplished without interlocks or damage to the VFD. Switching rate may be up to 1 time per minute on the input and unlimited on the output.
- M. An automatic motor adaptation test algorithm shall measure motor stator resistance and reactance to optimize performance and efficiency. It shall not be necessary to run the motor or de-couple the motor from the load to run the test.
- N. Galvanic and/or optical isolation shall be provided between the VFD's power circuitry and control circuitry to ensure operator safety and to protect connected electronic control equipment from damage caused by voltage spikes, current surges, and ground loop currents. VFDs not including either galvanic or optical isolation on both analog I/O and discrete I/O shall include additional isolation modules.
- O. VFD shall minimize the audible motor noise through the use of an adjustable carrier frequency. The carrier frequency shall be automatically adjusted to optimize motor and VFD efficiencies while reducing motor noise.

## 2.03 PROTECTIVE

## FEATURES

- A. A minimum of Class 20 I<sup>2</sup>t electronic motor overload protection for single motor applications and thermal-mechanical overloads for multiple motor applications shall be provided.
- B. Protection against input transients, loss of AC line phase, output short circuit, output ground fault, over voltage, under voltage, VFD over temperature and motor over temperature. The VFD shall display all faults in plain English. Codes are not acceptable.
- C. Protect VFD from sustained power or phase loss. The VFD shall provide full rated output with an input voltage as low as 90% of the nominal. The VFD will continue to operate with reduced output with an input voltage as low as 164 V AC for 208/230 volt units, and 313 V AC for 460 volt units.
- D. The VFD shall incorporate a motor preheat circuit to keep the motor warm and prevent condensation build up in the stator.
- E. VFD package shall include semi-conductor rated input fuses to protect power components.
- F. To prevent breakdown of the motor winding insulation, the VFD shall be designed to comply with IEC Part 34-17. Otherwise the VFD manufacturer must ensure that inverter rated motors are supplied.

- G. VFD shall include a “signal loss detection” circuit to sense the loss of an analog input signal such as 4 to 20 mA or 2 to 10 V DC, and shall be programmable to react as desired in such an instance.
- H. VFD shall function normally when the keypad is removed while the VFD is running and continue to follow remote commands. No warnings or alarms shall be issued as a result of removing the keypad.
- I. VFD shall catch a rotating motor operating forward or reverse up to full speed.
- J. VFD shall be rated for 100,000 amp interrupting capacity (AIC).
- K. VFD shall include current sensors on all three output phases to detect and report phase loss to the motor. The VFD will identify which of the output phases is low or lost.
- L. VFD shall continue to operate without faulting until input voltage reaches 300 V AC on 208/230 volt VFDs, and 539 V AC on 460 volt VFDs.
- M. All three pole variable frequency controllers (VFD) either integral to equipment or field supplied shall contain voltage fault protection specifically designed to protect all motors and all other 3 phase loads, and associated control circuits from failure or damage due to voltage unbalance, over/under voltage, phase loss, reversal, incorrect sequencing and rapid short cycling.” The VFD shall be arranged to monitor critical faults including phase loss or reversal, and when detected, de-energize the load. It shall monitor non-critical faults including high/low voltage, voltage unbalance and when detected, after a time delay de-energize the load.”

## 2.04 INTERFACE

## FEATURES

- A. Hand/Start, Off/Stop and Auto/Start selector switches shall be provided to start and stop the VFD and determine the speed reference.
- B. The VFD shall be able to be programmed to provide a 24 V DC output signal to indicate that the VFD is in Auto/Remote mode.
- C. The VFD shall provide digital manual speed control. Potentiometers are not acceptable.
- D. Lockable, alphanumeric backlit display keypad can be remotely mounted up to 10 feet away using standard 9-pin cable.
- E. The keypads for all sizes of VFDs shall be identical and interchangeable.
- F. To set up multiple VFDs, it shall be possible to upload all setup parameters to the VFD’s keypad, place that keypad on all other VFDs in turn and download the setup parameters to each VFD. To facilitate setting up VFDs of various sizes, it shall be possible to download from the keypad only size independent parameters.
- G. Display shall be programmable to display in 9 languages including English, Spanish and French.

- H. The display shall have four lines, with 20 characters on three lines and eight large characters on one line.
- I. A red FAULT light, a yellow WARNING light and a green POWER-ON light shall be provided. These indications shall be visible both on the keypad and on the VFD when the keypad is removed.
- J. A quick setup menu with factory preset typical HVAC parameters shall be provided on the VFD eliminating the need for macros.
- K. The VFD shall include a standard RS-485 communications port and capabilities to be connected at a future date to a Johnson Controls N2 Metasys or Siemens FLN system at no additional cost to the owner. The connection shall be software selectable by the user.
- L. As a minimum, the following points shall be controlled and/or accessible:
  - 1. VFD Start/Stop
  - 2. Speed reference
  - 3. Fault diagnostics
  - 4. Meter points
    - a. Motor power in HP
    - b. Motor power in kW
    - c. Motor kW-hr
    - d. Motor current
    - e. Motor voltage
    - f. Hours run
    - g. Feedback signal #1
    - h. Feedback signal #2
    - i. DC link voltage
    - j. Thermal load on motor
    - k. Thermal load on VFD
    - l. Heat sink temperature
  - 5. Four additional Form C 230 volt programmable relays shall be available for factory or field installation within the VFD.
- M. The communication protocol shall be native BACNET, LonWorks communication shall be available for factory or field installation within the VFD.
- N. Two set-point control interface (PID control) shall be standard in the unit. VFD shall be able to look at two feedback signals, compare with two set-points and make various process control decisions.
- O. An output signal as a start command to actuate external equipment before allowing the VFD to start.
- P. The following displays shall be accessible from the control panel in actual units: Reference Signal Value in actual units, Output Frequency in Hz or percent, Output Amps, Motor HP, Motor kW, kWhr, Output Voltage, DC Bus Voltage, VFD Temperature in degrees, and Motor Speed in engineering units per application (in GPM, CFM, etc.). VFD will read out

- the selected engineering unit either in a linear, square or cubed relationship to output frequency as appropriate to the unit chosen.
- Q. The display shall be programmed to read in inches of water column (in-wg) for an air handler application, pressure per square inch (psi) for a pump application, and temperature (°F) for a cooling tower application.
  - R. VFD shall be able to be programmed to sense the loss of load and signal a no load/broken belt warning or fault.
  - S. If the temperature of the VFD's heat sink rises to 80°C, the VFD shall automatically reduce its carrier frequency to reduce the heat sink temperature. If the temperature of the heat sink continues to rise the VFD shall automatically reduce its output frequency to the motor. As the VFD's heat sink temperature returns to normal, the VFD shall automatically increase the output frequency to the motor and return the carrier frequency to its normal switching speed.
  - T. The VFD shall have temperature controlled cooling fans for quiet operation and minimized losses.
  - U. The VFD shall store in memory the last 10 faults and related operational data.
  - V. Eight programmable digital inputs shall be provided for interfacing with the systems control and safety interlock circuitry.
  - W. Two programmable relay outputs, one Form C 240 V AC, one Form A 30 V AC, shall be provided for remote indication of VFD status.
  - X. Three programmable analog inputs shall be provided and shall accept a direct-or-reverse acting signal. Analog reference inputs accepted shall include two voltage (0 to 10 V DC, 2 to 10 V DC) and one current (0 to 20 mA, 4 to 20 mA) input.
  - Y. Two programmable 0 to 20 mA analog outputs shall be provided for indication of VFD status. These outputs shall be programmable for output speed, frequency, current and power. They shall also be programmable to provide a selected 24 V DC status indication.
  - Z. Under fire mode conditions, the VFD shall be able to be programmed to automatically default to a preset speed.

## 2.05 ADJUSTMENTS

- A. VFD shall have an adjustable carrier frequency in steps of not less than 0.1 kHz to allow tuning the VFD to the motor.
- B. Sixteen preset speeds shall be provided.
- C. Four acceleration and four deceleration ramps shall be provided. Accel and decel time shall be adjustable over the range from 0 to 3,600 seconds to base speed. The shape of these curves shall be automatically contoured to ensure no-trip acceleration and deceleration.

- D. Four current limit settings shall be provided.
- E. If the VFD trips on one of the following conditions, the VFD shall be programmable for automatic or manual reset: under voltage, over voltage, current limit and inverter overload.
- F. The number of restart attempts shall be selectable from 0 through 20 or infinitely and the time between attempts shall be adjustable from 0 through 600 seconds.
- G. An automatic “on delay” may be selected from 0 to 120 seconds.

## 2.06 BYPASS

- A. Provide a manual 3-contactor bypass consisting of a door interlocked main fused disconnect padlockable in the off position, a built-in motor starter and a four position DRIVE/OFF/BYPASS/TEST switch controlling three contactors. In the DRIVE position, the motor is operated at an adjustable speed from the VFD. In the OFF position, the motor and VFD are disconnected. In the BYPASS position, the motor is operated at full speed from the AC power line and power is disconnected from the VFD so that service can be performed. In the TEST position, the motor is operated at full speed from the AC line power while power is applied to the input of the VFD. This allows the VFD to be given an operational test while continuing to run the motor at full speed in bypass. In case of an external safety fault, a customer supplied normally closed dry contact shall be able to stop the motor whether in DRIVE or BYPASS mode.
- B. Service personnel shall be able to defeat the main power disconnect and open the bypass enclosure without disconnecting power. This shall be accomplished through the use of a specially designed tool and mechanism while meeting all local and national code requirements for safety.
- C. Bypass shall only be required for applications where equipment is stand alone. Such as an air handling unit or roof top AC unit. For application where redundant pumps, fans or other equipment and the standby equipment utilizes a VFD bypass is not required.
- D. Bypass is not required on redundant equipment ie. Pumps.

## 2.07 SERVICE CONDITIONS

- A. Ambient temperature, -10 to 40°C (14 to 104°F).
- B. 0 to 95% relative humidity, non-condensing.
- C. Elevation to 3,300 feet without derating.
- D. AC line voltage variation, -10 to +10% of nominal with full output.
- E. No side clearance shall be required for cooling of any units. All power and control wiring shall be done from the bottom.

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that surface is suitable for controller installation.

- B. Do not install controller until building environment can be maintained within the service conditions required by the manufacturer.
- C. Verify that field measurements are as indicated on shop drawings and as instructed by manufacturer.

### 3.02 INSTALLATION

- A. Section 01400 - Quality Control: Manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Install in accordance with NEMA ICS 3.1.
- C. Tighten accessible connections and mechanical fasteners after placing controller.
- D. Provide fuses in fusible switches; refer to Section 16477 for product requirements.
- E. Select and install overload heater elements in motor controllers to match installed motor characteristics.
- F. Provide engraved plastic nameplates; refer to Section 16195 for product requirements and location.
- G. Neatly type label inside each motor controller door identifying motor served, nameplate horsepower, full load amperes, code letter, service factor, and voltage/phase rating. Place in clear plastic holder.

### 3.03 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Inspect and test in accordance with NETA ATS, except Section 4.
- B. Perform inspections and tests listed in NETA ATS, Section 7.16.2.

### 3.04 MANUFACTURER'S FIELD SERVICES

- A. The manufacturer shall provide start-up commissioning of the VFD and its optional circuits by a factory certified service technician who is experienced in start-up and repair services. Sales personnel and other agents who are not factory certified shall not be acceptable as commissioning agents. Start-up services shall include checking for verification of proper operation and installation for the VFD, its options and its interface wiring to the building automation system.

### 3.05 ADJUSTING

- A. Division 1 - Contract Closeout.
- B. Make final adjustments to installed controller to assure proper operation of load system. Obtain performance requirements from installer of driven loads.

### 3.06 DEMONSTRATION AND INSTRUCTIONS

- A. Division 1 - Contract Closeout:
- B. Demonstrate operation of controllers in automatic and manual modes. Furnish 2 (1) one hour training sessions on the project site with the owner, by factory authorized personal.

END OF SECTION

## SECTION 233113 - METAL DUCTS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Single-wall rectangular ducts and fittings.
2. Single-wall round and flat-oval ducts and fittings.
3. Double-wall round and flat-oval ducts and fittings.
4. Sheet metal materials.
5. Duct liner.
6. Sealants and gaskets.
7. Hangers and supports.
8. Seismic-restraint devices.

- B. Related Sections:

1. Section 230593 "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC" for testing, adjusting, and balancing requirements for metal ducts.
2. Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories" for dampers, sound-control devices, duct-mounting access doors and panels, turning vanes, and flexible ducts.

#### 1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Duct Design: Duct construction, including sheet metal thicknesses, seam and joint construction, reinforcements, and hangers and supports, shall comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" and performance requirements and design criteria indicated in "Duct Schedule" Article.
- B. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of the following products:

1. Liners and adhesives.
2. Sealants and gaskets.

## B. Sustainable Design Submittals:

1. Product Data: For adhesives, indicating VOC content.
2. Laboratory Test Reports: For adhesives, indicating compliance with requirements for low-emitting materials.
3. Product Data: For sealants, indicating VOC content.
4. Laboratory Test Reports: For sealants, indicating compliance with requirements for low-emitting materials.
5. Laboratory Test Reports: For antimicrobial coatings, indicating compliance with requirements for low-emitting materials.

## C. Shop Drawings:

1. Fabrication, assembly, and installation, including plans, elevations, sections, components, and attachments to other work.
2. Factory- and shop-fabricated ducts and fittings.
3. Duct layout indicating sizes, configuration, liner material, and static-pressure classes.
4. Elevation of top of ducts.
5. Dimensions of main duct runs from building grid lines.
6. Fittings.
7. Reinforcement and spacing.
8. Seam and joint construction.
9. Penetrations through fire-rated and other partitions.
10. Equipment installation based on equipment being used on Project.
11. Locations for duct accessories, including dampers, turning vanes, and access doors and panels.
12. Hangers and supports, including methods for duct and building attachment.
13. Seismic restraints, where applicable
14. Vibration isolation.

## D. Delegated-Design Submittal:

1. Sheet metal thicknesses.
2. Joint and seam construction and sealing.
3. Reinforcement details and spacing.
4. Materials, fabrication, assembly, and spacing of hangers and supports.
5. Design Calculations: Calculations, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation for selecting hangers and supports and seismic restraints. For seismic bracing only

## 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

## A. Coordination Drawings: Plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:

1. Duct installation in congested spaces, indicating coordination with general construction, building components, and other building services. Indicate proposed changes to duct layout.
2. Suspended ceiling components.
3. Structural members to which duct will be attached.
4. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical tile.

5. Penetrations of smoke barriers and fire-rated construction.
6. Items penetrating finished ceiling including the following:
  - a. Luminaires.
  - b. Air outlets and inlets.
  - c. Speakers.
  - d. Sprinklers.
  - e. Access panels.
  - f. Perimeter moldings.

- B. Welding certificates.
- C. Field quality-control reports.

## 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. **Welding Qualifications:** Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:
  1. AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel," for hangers and supports.
  2. AWS D9.1M/D9.1, "Sheet Metal Welding Code," for duct joint and seam welding.
- B. ASHRAE/IES Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IES 90.1, Section 6.4.4 - "HVAC System Construction and Insulation."
- C. Construct ductwork to NFPA 90A and NFPA 90B standards. All work, materials and equipment shall comply with the latest requirements of NFPA 90A, standards and the local authorities having jurisdiction.
- D. All ductwork and fan and apparatus plenums constructed and having supported in accordance with the latest standards of the ASHRAE Guide and the Sheet Metal and Air Conditioning Contractors National Association (SMACNA).
- E. Bracing, gauges, and supports indicated in SMACNA manuals are the minimum acceptable. Additional bracing or supports shall be installed to eliminate any distortion or vibration when the systems are operating or under tests.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 General

- A. General: Non-combustible or conforming to requirements for Class 1 air duct materials, or UL 181.
- B. Galvanized Steel Ducts: ASTM A525 and ASTM A527 galvanized steel sheet, lock-forming quality, having zinc coating of 1.25 oz per sq ft for each side in conformance with ASTM A90.
- C. Dissimilar Metals: Separate connections between dissimilar metals with Dielectric Insulation. Joints between dissimilar metal duct sections to be made with Companion flanges separated by a Neoprene gasket.

- D. Fasteners: Rivets, bolts, screens, and other hardware used in the sheet metal construction to be constructed of materials identical or similar to the duct material to prevent galvanic corrosion.
- E. Sealant: Non-hardening, water resistant, fire resistive, compatible with mating materials; liquid used alone or with tape, or heavy mastic as manufactured by 3M Company EC-800.
- F. Hanger Rod: Steel, galvanized; threaded both ends, threaded one end, or continuously threaded.

## 2.2 SINGLE-WALL RECTANGULAR DUCTS AND FITTINGS

- A. General Fabrication Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" based on indicated static-pressure class unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Transverse Joints: Select joint types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-1, "Rectangular Duct/Transverse Joints," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
- C. Longitudinal Seams: Select seam types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-2, "Rectangular Duct/Longitudinal Seams," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
- D. Elbows, Transitions, Offsets, Branch Connections, and Other Duct Construction: Select types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 4, "Fittings and Other Construction," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

## 2.3 DOUBLE-WALL RECTANGULAR DUCTS AND FITTINGS

- A. Provide products from one of the following manufactures
  1. McGill Airflow LLC
  2. Zen Industries
  3. Lindab
  4. Spiral Manufacturing Co. Inc
- B. Rectangular Ducts: Fabricate ducts with indicated dimensions for the inner duct.
- C. Outer Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" based on indicated static-pressure class unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Transverse Joints: Select joint types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-1, "Rectangular Duct/Transverse Joints," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

- E. Longitudinal Seams: Select seam types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-2, "Rectangular Duct/Longitudinal Seams," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
- F. Interstitial Insulation: Fibrous-glass liner complying with ASTM C 1071, NFPA 90A, or NFPA 90B; and with NAIMA AH124, "Fibrous Glass Duct Liner Standard." **For standard applications**
  - 1. Maximum Thermal Conductivity: 0.27 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F at 75 deg F mean temperature.
  - 2. Install spacers that position the inner duct at uniform distance from outer duct without compressing insulation.
  - 3. Coat insulation with antimicrobial coating.
  - 4. Cover insulation with polyester film complying with UL 181, Class 1.
- G. Interstitial Insulation: Flexible elastomeric duct liner complying with ASTM C 534, Type II for sheet materials, and with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B. **For Humid and damp area applications including Natatoriums and Saunas.**
- H. Inner Duct: Minimum 0.028-inch perforated galvanized sheet steel having 3/32-inch-diameter perforations, with overall open area of 23 percent.
- I. Formed-on Transverse Joints (Flanges): Select joint types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-1, "Rectangular Duct/Transverse Joints," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
- J. Longitudinal Seams: Select seam types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-2, "Rectangular Duct/Longitudinal Seams," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

## 2.4 SINGLE-WALL ROUND AND FLAT-OVAL DUCTS AND FITTINGS

- A. General Fabrication Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 3, "Round, Oval, and Flexible Duct," based on indicated static-pressure class unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Provide products from one of the following manufactures
  - 1. McGill Airflow LLC
  - 2. Zen Industries
  - 3. Lindab
  - 4. Spiral Manufacturing Co. Inc
- C. Flat-Oval Ducts: Indicated dimensions are the duct width (major dimension) and diameter of the round sides connecting the flat portions of the duct (minor dimension).

- D. Transverse Joints: Select joint types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-1, "Round Duct Transverse Joints," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
  - 1. Transverse Joints in Ducts Larger Than 60 Inches in Diameter: Flanged.
- E. Longitudinal Seams: Select seam types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-2, "Round Duct Longitudinal Seams," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
  - 1. Fabricate round ducts larger than 90 inches in diameter with butt-welded longitudinal seams.
  - 2. Fabricate flat-oval ducts larger than 72 inches in width (major dimension) with butt-welded longitudinal seams.
- F. Tees and Laterals: Select types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-5, "90 Degree Tees and Laterals," and Figure 3-6, "Conical Tees," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

## 2.5 DOUBLE-WALL ROUND AND FLAT-OVAL DUCTS AND FITTINGS

- A. Provide products from one of the following manufactures
  - 1. McGill Airflow LLC
  - 2. Zen Industries
  - 3. Lindab
  - 4. Spiral Manufacturing Co. Inc
- B. Flat-Oval Ducts: Indicated dimensions are the duct width (major dimension) and diameter of the round sides connecting the flat portions of the duct (minor dimension) of the inner duct.
- C. Outer Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 3, "Round, Oval, and Flexible Duct," based on static-pressure class unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Transverse Joints: Select joint types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-1, "Round Duct Transverse Joints," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
    - a. Transverse Joints in Ducts Larger Than 60 Inches in Diameter: Flanged.
  - 2. Longitudinal Seams: Select seam types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-2, "Round Duct Longitudinal Seams," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials

involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

- a. Fabricate round ducts larger than 90 inches in diameter with butt-welded longitudinal seams.
  - b. Fabricate flat-oval ducts larger than 72 inches in width (major dimension) with butt-welded longitudinal seams.
3. Tees and Laterals: Select types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-5, "90 Degree Tees and Laterals," and Figure 3-6, "Conical Tees," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
- D. Inner Duct: Minimum 0.028-inch perforated galvanized sheet steel having 3/32-inch-diameter perforations, with overall open area of 23 percent.
- E. Interstitial Insulation: Fibrous-glass liner complying with ASTM C 1071, NFPA 90A, or NFPA 90B; and with NAIMA AH124, "Fibrous Glass Duct Liner Standard." **For standard applications.**
1. Maximum Thermal Conductivity: 0.27 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F at 75 deg F mean temperature.
  2. Install spacers that position the inner duct at uniform distance from outer duct without compressing insulation.
  3. Coat insulation with antimicrobial coating.
  4. Cover insulation with polyester film complying with UL 181, Class 1.
- A. Interstitial Insulation: Flexible elastomeric duct liner complying with ASTM C 534, Type II for sheet materials, and with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B. **For application in damp or humid environments including natatoriums and Saunas.**

## 2.6 SHEET METAL MATERIALS

- A. General Material Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for acceptable materials, material thicknesses, and duct construction methods unless otherwise indicated. Sheet metal materials shall be free of pitting, seam marks, roller marks, stains, discolorations, and other imperfections.
- B. Galvanized Sheet Steel: Comply with ASTM A 653/A 653M.
1. Galvanized Coating Designation: G90.
  2. Finishes for Surfaces Exposed to View: Mill phosphatized.
- C. PVC-Coated, Galvanized Sheet Steel: Comply with ASTM A 653/A 653M.
1. Galvanized Coating Designation: G90.
  2. Minimum Thickness for Factory-Applied PVC Coating: 4 mils thick on sheet metal surface of ducts and fittings exposed to corrosive conditions, and minimum 1 mil thick on opposite surface.

3. Coating Materials: Acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for use on ducts listed and labeled by an NRTL for compliance with UL 181, Class 1.
- D. Carbon-Steel Sheets: Comply with ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, with oiled, matte finish for exposed ducts.
- E. Stainless-Steel Sheets: Comply with ASTM A 480/A 480M, Type 316, as indicated in the "Duct Schedule" Article; cold rolled, annealed, sheet. Exposed surface finish shall be No. 2B, No. 2D, No. 3, or No. 4 as indicated in the "Duct Schedule" Article.
- F. Aluminum Sheets: Comply with ASTM B 209 Alloy 3003, H14 temper; with mill finish for concealed ducts, and standard, one-side bright finish for duct surfaces exposed to view.
- G. Factory- or Shop-Applied Antimicrobial Coating:
  1. Apply to the surface of sheet metal that will form the interior surface of the duct. An untreated clear coating shall be applied to the exterior surface.
  2. Antimicrobial compound shall be tested for efficacy by an NRTL and registered by the EPA for use in HVAC systems.
  3. Coating containing the antimicrobial compound shall have a hardness of 2H, minimum, when tested according to ASTM D 3363.
  4. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Maximum flame-spread index of 25 and maximum smoke-developed index of 50 when tested according to UL 723; certified by an NRTL.
  5. Shop-Applied Coating Color: Black OR White.
  6. Antimicrobial coating on sheet metal is not required for duct containing liner treated with antimicrobial coating.
- H. Reinforcement Shapes and Plates: ASTM A 36/A 36M, steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.
  1. Where black- and galvanized-steel shapes and plates are used to reinforce aluminum ducts, isolate the different metals with butyl rubber, neoprene, or EPDM gasket materials.
- I. Tie Rods: Galvanized steel, 1/4-inch minimum diameter for lengths 36 inches or less; 3/8-inch minimum diameter for lengths longer than 36 inches.

## 2.7 DUCT LINER

- A. Fibrous-Glass Duct Liner: Comply with ASTM C 1071, NFPA 90A, or NFPA 90B; and with NAIMA AH124, "Fibrous Glass Duct Liner Standard."
  - a. Maximum Thermal Conductivity:
    - 1) Type I, Flexible: 0.27 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F at 75 deg F mean temperature.
    - 2) Type II, Rigid: 0.23 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F at 75 deg F mean temperature.
  2. Antimicrobial Erosion-Resistant Coating: Apply to the surface of the liner that will form the interior surface of the duct to act as a moisture repellent and erosion-resistant coating.

- Antimicrobial compound shall be tested for efficacy by an NRTL and registered by the EPA for use in HVAC systems.
3. Solvent Water-Based Liner Adhesive: Comply with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B and with ASTM C 916.
- B. Flexible Elastomeric Duct Liner: Preformed, cellular, closed-cell, sheet materials complying with ASTM C 534, Type II, Grade 1; and with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B.
1. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Maximum flame-spread index of 25 and maximum smoke-developed index of 50 when tested according to UL 723; certified by an NRTL.
- C. Liner Adhesive: As recommended by insulation manufacturer and complying with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B. **For application in damp or humid environments including natatoriums and Saunas .**
- D. Insulation Pins and Washers:
1. Cupped-Head, Capacitor-Discharge-Weld Pins: Copper- or zinc-coated steel pin, fully annealed for capacitor-discharge welding, 0.135-inch- diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated with integral 1-1/2-inch galvanized carbon-steel washer.
  2. Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch-thick galvanized steel, aluminum, or stainless steel to match ductwork; with beveled edge sized as required to hold insulation securely in place but not less than 1-1/2 inches in diameter.
- E. Shop Application of Duct Liner: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 7-11, "Flexible Duct Liner Installation."
1. Adhere a single layer of indicated thickness of duct liner with at least 90 percent adhesive coverage at liner contact surface area. Attaining indicated thickness with multiple layers of duct liner is prohibited.
  2. Apply adhesive to transverse edges of liner facing upstream that do not receive metal nosing.
  3. Butt transverse joints without gaps, and coat joint with adhesive.
  4. Fold and compress liner in corners of rectangular ducts or cut and fit to ensure butted-edge overlapping.
  5. Do not apply liner in rectangular ducts with longitudinal joints, except at corners of ducts, unless duct size and dimensions of standard liner make longitudinal joints necessary.
  6. Apply adhesive coating on longitudinal seams in ducts with air velocity of 2500 fpm.
  7. Secure liner with mechanical fasteners 4 inches from corners and at intervals not exceeding 12 inches transversely; at 3 inches from transverse joints and at intervals not exceeding 18 inches longitudinally.
  8. Secure transversely oriented liner edges facing the airstream with metal nosings that have either channel or "Z" profiles or are integrally formed from duct wall. Fabricate edge facings at the following locations:
    - a. Fan discharges.
    - b. Intervals of lined duct preceding unlined duct.
    - c. Upstream edges of transverse joints in ducts where air velocities are higher than 2500 fpm or where indicated.
  9. Terminate inner ducts with buildouts attached to fire-damper sleeves, dampers, turning vane assemblies, or other devices. Fabricated buildouts (metal hat sections) or other

buildout means are optional; when used, secure buildouts to duct walls with bolts, screws, rivets, or welds.

## 2.8 SEALANT AND GASKETS

- A. General Sealant and Gasket Requirements: Surface-burning characteristics for sealants and gaskets shall be a maximum flame-spread index of 25 and a maximum smoke-developed index of 50 when tested according to UL 723; certified by an NRTL.
- B. Two-Part Tape Sealing System:
1. Tape: Woven cotton fiber impregnated with mineral gypsum and modified acrylic/silicone activator to react exothermically with tape to form hard, durable, airtight seal.
  2. Tape Width: 4 inches.
  3. Sealant: Modified styrene acrylic.
  4. Water resistant.
  5. Mold and mildew resistant.
  6. Maximum Static-Pressure Class: 10-inch wg, positive and negative.
  7. Service: Indoor and outdoor.
  8. Service Temperature: Minus 40 to plus 200 deg F.
  9. Substrate: Compatible with galvanized sheet steel (both PVC coated and bare), stainless steel, or aluminum.
- C. Water-Based Joint and Seam Sealant:
1. Application Method: Brush on.
  2. Solids Content: Minimum 65 percent.
  3. Shore A Hardness: Minimum 20.
  4. Water resistant.
  5. Mold and mildew resistant.
  6. VOC: Maximum 75 g/L (less water).
  7. Maximum Static-Pressure Class: 10-inch wg, positive and negative.
  8. Service: Indoor or outdoor.
  9. Substrate: Compatible with galvanized sheet steel (both PVC coated and bare), stainless steel, or aluminum sheets.
- D. Solvent-Based Joint and Seam Sealant:
1. Application Method: Brush on.
  2. Base: Synthetic rubber resin.
  3. Solvent: Toluene and heptane.
  4. Solids Content: Minimum 60 percent.
  5. Shore A Hardness: Minimum 60.
  6. Water resistant.
  7. Mold and mildew resistant.
  8. Maximum Static-Pressure Class: 10-inch wg, positive or negative.
  9. Service: Indoor or outdoor.
  10. Substrate: Compatible with galvanized sheet steel (both PVC coated and bare), stainless steel, or aluminum sheets.

- E. Flanged Joint Sealant: Comply with ASTM C 920.
  - 1. General: Single-component, acid-curing, silicone, elastomeric.
  - 2. Type: S.
  - 3. Grade: NS.
  - 4. Class: 25.
  - 5. Use: O.
- F. Flange Gaskets: Butyl rubber, neoprene, or EPDM polymer with polyisobutylene plasticizer.
- G. Round Duct Joint O-Ring Seals:
  - 1. Seal shall provide maximum leakage class of 3 cfm/100 sq. ft. at 1-inch wg and shall be rated for 10-inch wg static-pressure class, positive or negative.
  - 2. EPDM O-ring to seal in concave bead in coupling or fitting spigot.
  - 3. Double-lipped, EPDM O-ring seal, mechanically fastened to factory-fabricated couplings and fitting spigots.

## 2.9 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Hanger Rods for Noncorrosive Environments: Cadmium-plated steel rods and nuts.
- B. Hanger Rods for Corrosive Environments: Electrogalvanized, all-thread rods or galvanized rods with threads painted with zinc-chromate primer after installation.
- C. Strap and Rod Sizes: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 5-1, "Rectangular Duct Hangers Minimum Size," and Table 5-2, "Minimum Hanger Sizes for Round Duct."
- D. Steel Cables for Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized steel complying with ASTM A 603.
- E. Steel Cables for Stainless-Steel Ducts: Stainless steel complying with ASTM A 492.
- F. Steel Cable End Connections: Cadmium-plated steel assemblies with brackets, swivel, and bolts designed for duct hanger service; with an automatic-locking and clamping device.
- G. Duct Attachments: Sheet metal screws, blind rivets, or self-tapping metal screws; compatible with duct materials.
- H. Trapeze and Riser Supports:
  - 1. Supports for Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized-steel shapes and plates.
  - 2. Supports for Stainless-Steel Ducts: Stainless-steel shapes and plates.
  - 3. Supports for Aluminum Ducts: Aluminum or galvanized steel coated with zinc chromate.

## 2.10 SEISMIC-RESTRAINT DEVICES

- A. General Requirements for Restraint Components: Rated strengths, features, and applications shall be as defined in reports by an evaluation service member of the ICC Evaluation Service or an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

1. Structural Safety Factor: Allowable strength in tension, shear, and pullout force of components shall be at least four times the maximum seismic forces to which they will be subjected.
- B. Channel Support System: Shop- or field-fabricated support assembly made of slotted steel channels rated in tension, compression, and torsion forces and with accessories for attachment to braced component at one end and to building structure at the other end. Include matching components and corrosion-resistant coating.
- C. Restraint Cables: ASTM A 603, galvanized or ASTM A 492, stainless-steel cables with end connections made of cadmium-plated steel assemblies with brackets, swivel, and bolts designed for restraining cable service; and with an automatic-locking and clamping device or double-cable clips.
- D. Hanger Rod Stiffener: Steel tube or steel slotted-support-system sleeve with internally bolted connections or Reinforcing steel angle clamped to hanger rod.
- E. Mechanical Anchor Bolts: Drilled-in and stud-wedge or female-wedge type. Select anchor bolts with strength required for anchor and as tested according to ASTM E 488.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 DUCT INSTALLATION

- A. *Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of duct system. Indicated duct locations, configurations, and arrangements were used to size ducts and calculate friction loss for air-handling equipment sizing and for other design considerations. Install duct systems as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Shop Drawings and Coordination Drawings.*
- B. Install ducts according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Install ducts in maximum practical lengths and with fewest possible joints
- D. Install factory- or shop-fabricated fittings for changes in direction, size, and shape and for branch connections. *Increase duct sizes gradually, not exceeding 15 degrees divergence wherever possible; maximum 0 degrees divergence upstream of equipment and 45 degrees convergence downstream.*
- E. Unless otherwise indicated, install ducts vertically and horizontally, and parallel and perpendicular to building lines.
- F. Install ducts close to walls, overhead construction, columns, and other structural and permanent enclosure elements of building.
- G. Install ducts with a clearance of 2 inch, plus allowance for insulation thickness and with sufficient space around equipment to allow normal operating and maintenance activities. *Provide easements where ductwork conflicts with piping and structure. Where easements exceed 10 percent duct area, split into two ducts maintaining original duct area.*

- H. Provide standard 45 degree lateral wye takeoffs unless otherwise indicated where 90 degree conical tee connections may be used.
- I. Route ducts to avoid passing through transformer vaults and electrical equipment rooms and enclosures.
- J. Where ducts pass through non-fire-rated interior partitions and exterior walls and are exposed to view, cover the opening between the partition and duct or duct insulation with sheet metal flanges of same metal thickness as the duct. Overlap openings on four sides by at least 1-1/2 inches.
- K. Where ducts pass through fire-rated interior partitions and exterior walls, install fire dampers. Comply with requirements in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories" for all installations as well as fire and smoke dampers.
- L. Protect duct interiors from moisture, construction debris and dust, and other foreign materials. Comply with SMACNA's "IAQ Guidelines for Occupied Buildings Under Construction," Appendix G, "Duct Cleanliness for New Construction Guidelines."
- M. Provide openings in ductwork where required to accommodate thermometers and controllers. Provide pilot tube openings where required for testing of systems, complete with metal can with spring device or screw to ensure against air leakage. Where openings are provided in insulated ductwork, install insulation material inside a metal ring.
- N. Where hanger rods must pierce ducts, provide closure plates around rods and fasten to duct using screws, rivets or welding. Seal with sealing compound.
- O. *Construct T's, bends, and elbows with radius of not less than 1-1/2 times width of duct on centerline. Where not possible and where rectangular elbows are used, provide airfoil turning vanes. Where acoustical lining is indicated, provide turning vanes of perforated metal with glass fiber insulation.*
- P. *Where ductwork penetrates roofs or outside walls, seal the space around ductwork air tight with fire rated expanding spray foam sealer similar to 3-M Fire Block Foam. This also applies to duct roof penetrations into roof curbs.*
- Q. *All ductwork shall be inspected and pressure tested prior to enclosing in general construction or concealment above hung ceilings*

### 3.2 INSTALLATION OF EXPOSED DUCTWORK

- A. Protect ducts exposed in finished spaces from being dented, scratched, or damaged.
- B. Trim duct sealants flush with metal. Create a smooth and uniform exposed bead. Do not use two-part tape sealing system. Use clear duct sealant.
- C. Grind welds to provide smooth surface free of burrs, sharp edges, and weld splatter. When welding stainless steel with a No. 3 or 4 finish, grind the welds flush, polish the exposed welds, and treat the welds to remove discoloration caused by welding.

- D. Maintain consistency, symmetry, and uniformity in the arrangement and fabrication of fittings, hangers and supports, duct accessories, and air outlets.
- E. Repair or replace damaged sections and finished work that does not comply with these requirements.
- F. Where indicated on plans, and specifically gymnasium, stage and cafeteria, Prime ductwork and paint with one coat enamel base paint. Color as per architectural plans. All ductwork surface finish shall be treated prior to priming by "pickling" in accordance with industry standards and paint manufactures requirements.
- G. Duct sealants used on exposed ductwork of any type shall be clear.**

### 3.3 DUCT SEALING

- A. Seal ducts at a minimum to the following seal classes according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible": typical for all services;

Leakage and Seal Classification Table					
System operating pressure in wc			<2" low	2"≥med<3"	High≥3"
Seal Class			C	B	A
Sealing			Transvers e joints	Transverse joints and seams	Transverse joints and seams and all wall penetrations
Leakage class CL factor			24	12	4
In addition to the above, any variable air volume system duct of 1" and ½" wg con-struction class that is upstream of the VAV boxes shall meet Seal Class C.					

- B.

### 3.4 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 5, "Hangers and Supports."
- B. Building Attachments: Concrete inserts, powder-actuated fasteners, or structural-steel fasteners appropriate for construction materials to which hangers are being attached.
  - 1. Where practical, install concrete inserts before placing concrete.
  - 2. Install powder-actuated concrete fasteners after concrete is placed and completely cured.
  - 3. Use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for standard-weight aggregate concretes or for slabs more than 4 inches thick.
  - 4. Do not use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for lightweight-aggregate concretes or for slabs less than 4 inches thick.
  - 5. Do not use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for seismic restraints.

- C. Hanger Spacing: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 5-1, "Rectangular Duct Hangers Minimum Size," and Table 5-2, "Minimum Hanger Sizes for Round Duct," for maximum hanger spacing; install hangers and supports within 24 inches of each elbow and within 48 inches of each branch intersection.
- D. Hangers Exposed to View: Threaded rod and angle or channel supports.
- E. Support vertical ducts with steel angles or channel secured to the sides of the duct with welds, bolts, sheet metal screws, or blind rivets; support at each floor and at a maximum interval of 16 feet.
- F. Install upper attachments to structures. Select and size upper attachments with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
- G. Where hanger rods must pierce ducts, provide closure plates around rods and fasten to duct using screws, rivets or welding. Seal with sealing compound

### 3.5 SEISMIC-RESTRAINT-DEVICE INSTALLATION

- A. Install ducts with hangers and braces designed to support the duct and to restrain against seismic forces required by applicable building codes. Comply with SMACNA's "Seismic Restraint Manual: Guidelines for Mechanical Systems." ASCE/SEI 7.
  - 1. Space lateral supports a maximum of 40 feet o.c., and longitudinal supports a maximum of 80 feet o.c.
  - 2. Brace a change of direction longer than 12 feet.
- B. Select seismic-restraint devices with capacities adequate to carry present and future static and seismic loads.
- C. Install cables so they do not bend across edges of adjacent equipment or building structure.
- D. Install cable restraints on ducts that are suspended with vibration isolators.
- E. Install seismic-restraint devices using methods approved by an evaluation service member of the ICC Evaluation Service or an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- F. Attachment to Structure: If specific attachment is not indicated, anchor bracing and restraints to structure, to flanges of beams, to upper truss chords of bar joists, or to concrete members.
- G. Drilling for and Setting Anchors:
  - 1. Identify position of reinforcing steel and other embedded items prior to drilling holes for anchors. Do not damage existing reinforcement or embedded items during drilling. Notify the Architect if reinforcing steel or other embedded items are encountered during drilling. Locate and avoid prestressed tendons, electrical and telecommunications conduit, and gas lines.
  - 2. Do not drill holes in concrete or masonry until concrete, mortar, or grout has achieved full design strength.

3. Wedge Anchors: Protect threads from damage during anchor installation. Heavy-duty sleeve anchors shall be installed with sleeve fully engaged in the structural element to which anchor is to be fastened.
4. Set anchors to manufacturer's recommended torque, using a torque wrench.
5. Install zinc-coated steel anchors for interior applications and stainless-steel anchors for applications exposed to weather.

### 3.6 CONNECTIONS

- A. Make connections to equipment with flexible connectors complying with Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."
- B. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for branch, outlet and inlet, and terminal unit connections.
- C. INSULATED FLEXIBLE DUCTS
  1. UL 181, Class 0, interlocking spiral of aluminum foil; fiberglass insulation; polyethylene vapor barrier film.
  2. Pressure Rating: 8 inches WG positive or negative.
  3. Maximum Velocity: 5000 fpm
  4. Temperature Range: -20 degrees F to 250 degrees F.

### 3.7 PAINTING

- A. Paint interior of metal ducts that are visible through registers and grilles and that do not have duct liner. Apply one coat of flat, black, latex paint over a compatible galvanized-steel primer. Paint materials and application requirements are specified in Section 099113 "Exterior Painting" and Section 099123 "Interior Painting."

### 3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
- B. Leakage Tests:
  1. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Air Duct Leakage Test Manual." Submit a test report for each test.
  2. Test the following systems:
    - a. All Ducts with a Pressure Class equal to or Higher Than 2-Inch wg: Test representative duct sections totaling no less than 25 percent of total installed duct area for each system of the designated pressure class.
  3. Disassemble, reassemble, and seal segments of systems to accommodate leakage testing and for compliance with test requirements.
  4. Test for leaks before applying external insulation.
  5. Conduct tests at static pressures equal to maximum design pressure of system or section being tested. If static-pressure classes are not indicated, test system at maximum system design pressure. Do not pressurize systems above maximum design operating pressure.

6. Give seven days' advance notice for testing.
- C. Duct System Cleanliness Tests:
1. Visually inspect duct system to ensure that no visible contaminants are present.
  2. Test sections of metal duct system, chosen randomly by Owner, for cleanliness according to "Vacuum Test" in NADCA ACR, "Assessment, Cleaning and Restoration of HVAC Systems."
    - a. Acceptable Cleanliness Level: Net weight of debris collected on the filter media shall not exceed 0.75 mg/100 sq. cm.
- D. Duct system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.9 DUCT CLEANING

- A. Clean new duct system(s) before testing, adjusting, and balancing.
- B. Use service openings for entry and inspection.
1. Create new openings and install access panels appropriate for duct static-pressure class if required for cleaning access. Provide insulated panels for insulated or lined duct. Patch insulation and liner as recommended by duct liner manufacturer. Comply with Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories" for access panels and doors.
  2. Disconnect and reconnect flexible ducts as needed for cleaning and inspection.
  3. Remove and reinstall ceiling to gain access during the cleaning process.
- C. Particulate Collection and Odor Control:
1. When venting vacuuming system inside the building, use HEPA filtration with 99.97 percent collection efficiency for 0.3-micron-size (or larger) particles.
  2. When venting vacuuming system to outdoors, use filter to collect debris removed from HVAC system, and locate exhaust downwind and away from air intakes and other points of entry into building.
- D. Clean the following components by removing surface contaminants and deposits:
1. Air outlets and inlets (registers, grilles, and diffusers).
  2. Supply, return, and exhaust fans including fan housings, plenums (except ceiling supply and return plenums), scrolls, blades or vanes, shafts, baffles, dampers, and drive assemblies.
  3. Air-handling unit internal surfaces and components including mixing box, coil section, air wash systems, spray eliminators, condensate drain pans, humidifiers and dehumidifiers, filters and filter sections, and condensate collectors and drains.
  4. Coils and related components.
  5. Return-air ducts, dampers, actuators, and turning vanes except in ceiling plenums and mechanical equipment rooms.
  6. Supply-air ducts, dampers, actuators, and turning vanes.
  7. Dedicated exhaust and ventilation components and makeup air systems.

E. Mechanical Cleaning Methodology:

1. Clean metal duct systems using mechanical cleaning methods that extract contaminants from within duct systems and remove contaminants from building.
2. Use vacuum-collection devices that are operated continuously during cleaning. Connect vacuum device to downstream end of duct sections so areas being cleaned are under negative pressure.
3. Use mechanical agitation to dislodge debris adhered to interior duct surfaces without damaging integrity of metal ducts, duct liner, or duct accessories.
4. Clean fibrous-glass duct liner with HEPA vacuuming equipment; do not permit duct liner to get wet. Replace fibrous-glass duct liner that is damaged, deteriorated, or delaminated or that has friable material, mold, or fungus growth.
5. Clean coils and coil drain pans according to NADCA 1992. Keep drain pan operational. Rinse coils with clean water to remove latent residues and cleaning materials; comb and straighten fins.
6. Provide drainage and cleanup for wash-down procedures.
7. Antimicrobial Agents and Coatings: Apply EPA-registered antimicrobial agents if fungus is present. Apply antimicrobial agents according to manufacturer's written instructions after removal of surface deposits and debris.

### 3.10 SMOKE AND HEAT DETECTOR INSTALLATION

- A. Duct mounted smoke and heat detectors will be supplied under the Electrical Division. This Contractor to coordinate duct sizes and provide labor to install sensing probes into ductwork.

### 3.11 DUCTWORK PROTECTION

- A. Duct work under construction or alteration shall not be left open ended during dust producing construction. All new and existing ductwork systems in the area of alteration or under construction shall be protected during construction. Open ends ducts shall be sealed with sheet metal or as approved.
- B. For unenclosed buildings ductwork shall be kept dry and water tight. Seal open ends water tight during construction to prevent water infiltration. Keep all acoustical lining dry during construction. Lining that has become wet shall be replaced. All incomplete ductwork being used to condition spaces in phase I or phase II that will be completed under a later phase must be protect from being internally contaminated by construction dust. All returns opening must have filters placed over them to prevent dust from being returned to the unit.

### 3.12 DUCT SCHEDULE

- A. Fabricate ducts using the following material;
1. Underground Ducts: Concrete-encased, PVC-coated, stainless steel, fiberglass
  2. Natatorium ductwork – PVC coated.
  3. Kitchen exhaust – welded stainless steel or black steel 18 gage
  4. Smoke purge ductwork - welded stainless steel or black steel. 18 gage
  5. Shower room exhaust – aluminum

6. Dryer exhaust – aluminum
7. Outside air intake plenum and ductwork - Aluminum
8. All exposed ductwork in any occupied area, (does not include MER), shall be constructed of double wall round or oval spiral ductwork.

**B. Duct Pressure class;**

1. All duct systems shall be constructed to have a pressure classification based on the maximum static pressure (positive or negative) developed by the air handling apparatus connected to the ductwork system. Unless otherwise noted below, refer to the equipment schedules and equipment notes for the design operating pressure of each system. Systems with operating pressures between pressure classes shall be constructed to the next higher-pressure class.

Pressure Classification Table						
System operating pressure (OP) in wc	OP≤1"	1"≥OP<2"	2"≥OP<3"	3"≥OP<4"	4"≥OP<6"	6"≥OP<10"
SMACNA Construction classification	1"	2"	3"	4"	6"	10"

2. All ductwork shall be constructed in accordance with the leakage and seal classification. Note that the leakage and seal classification required by current code is more stringent than SMACNA requirements.
3. The following Leakage and Seal Classification Table applies to all ductwork, supply, exhaust, or return air, rectangular, round, or oval single or double wall. Every system

Leakage and Seal Classification Table					
System operating pressure in wc			<2" low	2"≥med<3"	High≥3"
Seal Class			C	B	A
Sealing			Transverse joints	Transverse joints and seams	Transverse joints and seams and all wall penetrations
Leakage class CL factor			24	12	4
In addition to the above, any variable air volume system duct of 1" and 1/2" wg construction class that is upstream of the VAV boxes shall meet Seal Class C.					

**C. Intermediate Reinforcement:**

1. Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized steel.
2. PVC-Coated Ducts:
  - a. Exposed to Airstream: Match duct material.
  - b. Not Exposed to Airstream: Match duct material.

3. Stainless-Steel Ducts:
    - a. Exposed to Airstream: Match duct material.
    - b. Not Exposed to Airstream: Match duct material.
  4. Aluminum Ducts: Aluminum or galvanized sheet steel coated with zinc chromate.
- D. Liner for sound attenuation:
1. Supply, Return and exhaust air ducts: ½" inches thick.
  2. Supply and return fan Plenums: 1" inches thick.
  3. Transfer Ducts: 1 inch thick.
  4. Ductwork down stream from VAV boxes for 15', 1" thick.
  5. At the inlet and discharge of all fans for a distance of 20'
  - 6.
- E. Double-Wall Duct Interstitial Insulation:
1. Supply, Return, Exhaust Air Ducts: 1" inches thick. (when ducts are exposed in the conditions space)
  2. Supply, Return, Exhaust Air Ducts: 1 1/2" inches thick. (when ducts are concealed in plenums or are located in unconditioned spaces)
- F. Elbow Configuration:
1. Rectangular Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-2, "Rectangular Elbows."
    - a. Velocity 1000 fpm or Lower:
      - 1) Radius Type RE 1 with minimum 0.5 radius-to-diameter ratio.
      - 2) Mitered Type RE 4 without vanes.
    - b. Velocity 1000 to 1500 fpm:
      - 1) Radius Type RE 1 with minimum 1.0 radius-to-diameter ratio.
      - 2) Radius Type RE 3 with minimum 0.5 radius-to-diameter ratio and two vanes.
      - 3) Mitered Type RE 2 with turning vanes complying with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-3, "Vanes and Vane Runners," and Figure 4-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."
    - c. Velocity 1500 fpm or Higher:
      - 1) Radius Type RE 1 with minimum 1.5 radius-to-diameter ratio.
      - 2) Radius Type RE 3 with minimum 1.0 radius-to-diameter ratio and two vanes.
      - 3) Mitered Type RE 2 with turning vanes complying with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-3, "Vanes and Vane Runners," and Figure 4-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."

2. Rectangular Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-2, "Rectangular Elbows."
  - a. Radius Type RE 1 with minimum 1.5 radius-to-diameter ratio.
  - b. Radius Type RE 3 with minimum 1.0 radius-to-diameter ratio and two vanes.
  - c. Mitered Type RE 2 with turning vanes complying with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-3, "Vanes and Vane Runners," and Figure 4-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."
3. Round Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-4, "Round Duct Elbows."
  - a. Minimum Radius-to-Diameter Ratio and Elbow Segments: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 3-1, "Mitered Elbows." Elbows with less than 90-degree change of direction have proportionately fewer segments.
    - 1) Velocity 1000 fpm or Lower: 0.5 radius-to-diameter ratio and three segments for 90-degree elbow.
    - 2) Velocity 1000 to 1500 fpm: 1.0 radius-to-diameter ratio and four segments for 90-degree elbow.
    - 3) Velocity 1500 fpm or Higher: 1.5 radius-to-diameter ratio and five segments for 90-degree elbow.
    - 4) Radius-to Diameter Ratio: 1.5.
  - b. Round Elbows, 12 Inches and Smaller in Diameter:
  - c. Round Elbows, 14 Inches and Larger in Diameter:

G. Branch Configuration:

1. Rectangular Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-6, "Branch Connection."
  - a. Rectangular Main to Rectangular Branch: 45-degree entry.
  - b. Rectangular Main to Round Branch: Spin in.
2. Round and Flat Oval: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-5, "90 Degree Tees and Laterals," and Figure 3-6, "Conical Tees." Saddle taps are permitted in existing duct.
  - a. Velocity 1000 fpm or Lower: 90-degree tap.
  - b. Velocity 1000 to 1500 fpm: Conical tap.
  - c. Velocity 1500 fpm or Higher: 45-degree lateral.

3.13 DUCTWORK PRESSURE TESTING

- A. All high-pressure ductwork design or operated at 3wc or greater shall pressure tested in accordance with specification section 23 05 93 Testing Adjusting and Balancing.
- B. The contractor review test report results and repair or replace any sections of ductwork with and air leakage rate over 4.0

END OF SECTION 233113

## SECTION 233300 - AIR DUCT ACCESSORIES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Backdraft and pressure relief dampers.
2. Barometric relief dampers.
3. Manual volume dampers.
4. Control dampers.
5. Fire dampers.
6. Ceiling radiation dampers.
7. Smoke dampers.
8. Combination fire and smoke dampers.
9. Corridor dampers.
10. Flange connectors.
11. Duct silencers.
12. Turning vanes.
13. Remote damper operators.
14. Duct-mounted access doors.
15. Flexible connectors.
16. Duct accessory hardware.

- B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 233113 Metal Ducts
2. Section 233346 "Flexible Ducts" for insulated and non-insulated flexible ducts.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. For duct silencers, include pressure drop and dynamic insertion loss data. Include breakout noise calculations for high transmission loss casings.

- B. Sustainable Design Submittals:

1. Product data showing compliance with ASHRAE 62.1.

- C. Shop Drawings: For duct accessories. Include plans, elevations, sections, details and attachments to other work.
  - 1. Detail duct accessories fabrication and installation in ducts and other construction. Include dimensions, weights, loads, and required clearances; and method of field assembly into duct systems and other construction. Include the following:
    - a. Special fittings.
    - b. Manual volume damper installations.
    - c. Control-damper installations.
    - d. Fire-damper, smoke-damper, combination fire- and smoke-damper, ceiling, and corridor damper installations, including sleeves; and duct-mounted access doors and remote damper operators.
    - e. Duct security bars.
    - f. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plans, drawn to scale, on which ceiling-mounted access panels and access doors required for access to duct accessories are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from Installers of the items involved.
- B. Source quality-control reports.

#### 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For air duct accessories to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

#### 1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Fusible Links: Furnish quantity equal to 10 percent of amount installed.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 ASSEMBLY DESCRIPTION

- A. Comply with NFPA 90A, "Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilating Systems," and with NFPA 90B, "Installation of Warm Air Heating and Air Conditioning Systems."
- B. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for acceptable materials, material thicknesses, and duct construction methods unless otherwise indicated. Sheet metal materials shall be free of pitting, seam marks, roller marks, stains, discolorations, and other imperfections.

## 2.2 MATERIALS

- A. Galvanized Sheet Steel: Comply with ASTM A 653/A 653M.
  - 1. Galvanized Coating Designation: G90.
  - 2. Exposed-Surface Finish: Mill phosphatized.
- B. Stainless-Steel Sheets: Comply with ASTM A 480/A 480M, Type 304, and having a No. 2 finish for concealed ducts and finish for exposed ducts.
- C. Aluminum Sheets: Comply with ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, Temper H14; with mill finish for concealed ducts and standard, 1-side bright finish for exposed ducts.
- D. Extruded Aluminum: Comply with ASTM B 221, Alloy 6063, Temper T6.
- E. Reinforcement Shapes and Plates: Galvanized-steel reinforcement where installed on galvanized sheet metal ducts; compatible materials for aluminum and stainless-steel ducts.
- F. Tie Rods: Galvanized steel, 1/4-inch minimum diameter for lengths 36 inches or less; 3/8-inch minimum diameter for lengths longer than 36 inches.

## 2.3 BACKDRAFT AND PRESSURE RELIEF DAMPERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
  - 2. Nailor Industries Inc.
  - 3. Pottorff.
  - 4. Ruskin Company.
  - 5. Buckley
- B. Description: Gravity balanced.
- C. Maximum Air Velocity: 1000 fpm.
- D. Maximum System Pressure: up to 6"wc.
- E. Frame: Hat-shaped, [**0.094-inch-thick, galvanized sheet steel**] [**0.063-inch-thick extruded aluminum**] [**0.03-inch-thick stainless steel**] [**0.05-inch-thick stainless steel**], with welded corners or mechanically attached[ **and mounting flange**].
- F. Blades: Multiple single-piece blades, center pivoted, or off-center pivoted, maximum 6-inch width, 0.025-inch-thick, roll-formed aluminum or 0.050-inch-thick aluminum sheet noncombustible, tear-resistant, neoprene-coated fiberglass with sealed edges.
- G. Blade Action: Parallel.
- H. Blade Seals: Neoprene, mechanically locked.
- I. Blade Axles:

1. Material: Galvanized, steel Stainless steel, or Aluminum.
  2. Diameter: 0.20 inch min.
- J. Tie Bars and Brackets: Aluminum or Galvanized steel.
- K. Return Spring: Adjustable tension.
- L. Bearings: Steel ball or synthetic pivot bushings.
- M. Accessories:
1. Adjustment device to permit setting for varying differential static pressure.
  2. Counterweights and spring-assist kits for vertical airflow installations.
  3. Electric actuators.
  4. Chain pulls.
  5. Screen Mounting: Front mounted in sleeve.
    - a. Sleeve Thickness: 20 gage minimum.
    - b. Sleeve Length: 6 inches minimum.
  6. Screen Mounting: Rear mounted.
  7. Screen Material: Galvanized steel or Aluminum.
  8. Screen Type: Bird. ½ x ½ max opening
  9. 90-degree stops.

## 2.4 BAROMETRIC RELIEF DAMPERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
  2. Nailor Industries Inc.
  3. Pottorff.
  4. Ruskin Company.
  5. Buckley
- B. Suitable for horizontal or vertical mounting.
- C. Maximum Air Velocity: 1000 fpm.
- D. Maximum System Pressure: upto 6-inch wg.
- E. Frame: Hat-shaped, **[0.05-inch-thick, galvanized sheet steel] [0.094-inch-thick, galvanized sheet steel] [0.063-inch-thick extruded aluminum] [0.03-inch-thick stainless steel] [0.05-inch-thick stainless steel]**, with welded corners or mechanically attached[ **and mounting flange**].
- F. Blades:
1. Multiple, 0.025-inch-thick, roll-formed aluminum or 0.050-inch-thick aluminum sheet.
  2. Maximum Width: 6 inches.

3. Action: Parallel.
4. Balance: Gravity.
5. Eccentrically pivoted or Off-center pivoted.

G. Blade Seals: Neoprene.

H. Blade Axles: Galvanized steel, aluminum, or Stainless steel.

I. Tie Bars and Brackets:

1. Material: Aluminum or Galvanized steel.
2. Rattle free with 90-degree stop.

J. Return Spring: Adjustable tension.

K. Bearings: Synthetic, Stainless steel, Bronze.

L. Accessories:

1. Flange on intake.
2. Adjustment device to permit setting for varying differential static pressures.

## 2.5 MANUAL VOLUME DAMPERS

A. Standard, Steel, Manual Volume Dampers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Flex-Tek Group.
  - b. McGill AirFlow LLC.
  - c. Nailor Industries Inc.
  - d. Pottorff.
  - e. Ruskin Company.
  - f. Vent Products Co., Inc.
  - g. Buckley
2. Standard leakage rating, with linkage outside airstream.
3. Suitable for horizontal or vertical applications.
4. Frames:
  - a. Frame: Hat-shaped, 0.094-inch-thick, galvanized sheet steel or 0.05-inch-thick stainless steel.
  - b. Mitered and welded corners.
  - c. Flanges for attaching to walls and flangeless frames for installing in ducts.
5. Blades:
  - a. Multiple or single blade.
  - b. Parallel- or opposed-blade design.

- c. Stiffen damper blades for stability.
    - d. Galvanized or Stainless-steel, 0.064 inch thick.
  - 6. Blade Axles: Galvanized steel, Stainless or steel Nonferrous metal.
  - 7. Bearings:
    - a. Oil-impregnated bronze, Molded synthetic, Oil-impregnated stainless-steel sleeve.
    - b. Dampers in ducts with pressure classes of 3-inch wg or less shall have axles full length of damper blades and bearings at both ends of operating shaft.
  - 8. Tie Bars and Brackets: Galvanized steel.
- B. Standard, Aluminum, Manual Volume Dampers:
- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. McGill AirFlow LLC.
    - b. Nailor Industries Inc.
    - c. Pottorff.
    - d. Ruskin Company.
    - e. Vent Products Co., Inc.
  - 2. Standard leakage rating, with linkage outside airstream.
  - 3. Suitable for horizontal or vertical applications.
  - 4. Frames: Hat-shaped, 0.10-inch-thick, aluminum sheet channels; frames with flanges for attaching to walls and flangeless frames for installing in ducts.
  - 5. Blades:
    - a. Multiple or single blade.
    - b. Parallel- or opposed-blade design.
    - c. Stiffen damper blades for stability.
    - d. Roll-Formed Aluminum Blades: 0.10-inch-thick aluminum sheet.
    - e. Extruded-Aluminum Blades: 0.050-inch-thick extruded aluminum.
  - 6. Blade Axles: Galvanized steel or Stainless steel.
  - 7. Bearings:
    - a. Oil-impregnated bronze, Molded synthetic, or Stainless-steel sleeve.
    - b. Dampers in ducts with pressure classes of 3-inch wg or less shall have axles full length of damper blades and bearings at both ends of operating shaft.
  - 8. Tie Bars and Brackets: Aluminum.
- C. Low-Leakage, Steel, Manual Volume Dampers:
- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. McGill AirFlow LLC.
    - b. Nailor Industries Inc.

- c. [Pottorff](#).
  - d. [Ruskin Company](#).
  - e. [Vent Products Co., Inc.](#)
2. Comply with AMCA 500-D testing for damper rating.
3. Low-leakage rating, with linkage outside airstream, and bearing AMCA's Certified Ratings Seal for both air performance and air leakage.
4. Suitable for horizontal or vertical applications.
5. Frames:
  - a. U or Angle shaped.
  - b. 0.094-inch-thick, galvanized sheet steel or 0.05-inch-thick stainless steel.
  - c. Mitered and welded corners.
  - d. Flanges for attaching to walls and flangeless frames for installing in ducts.
6. Blades:
  - a. Multiple or single blade.
  - b. Parallel- or opposed-blade design.
  - c. Stiffen damper blades for stability.
  - d. Galvanized or Stainless, roll-formed steel, 0.064 inch thick.
7. Blade Axles: Galvanized steel or Stainless steel.
8. Bearings:
  - a. Oil-impregnated bronze, Molded synthetic, Oil-impregnated stainless-steel sleeve, Stainless-steel sleeve.
  - b. Dampers in ducts with pressure classes of 3-inch wg or less shall have axles full length of damper blades and bearings at both ends of operating shaft.
9. Blade Seals: Neoprene.
10. Jamb Seals: Cambered stainless steel or aluminum.
11. Tie Bars and Brackets: Galvanized steel or Aluminum.
12. Accessories:
  - a. Include locking device to hold single-blade dampers in a fixed position without vibration.

D. Low-Leakage, Aluminum, Manual Volume Dampers:

1. [Manufacturers](#): Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. [McGill AirFlow LLC](#).
  - b. [Nailor Industries Inc.](#)
  - c. [Pottorff](#).
  - d. [Ruskin Company](#).
  - e. [Vent Products Co., Inc.](#)
2. Comply with AMCA 500-D testing for damper rating.
3. Low-leakage rating, with linkage outside airstream, and bearing AMCA's Certified Ratings Seal for both air performance and air leakage.

4. Suitable for horizontal or vertical applications.
5. Frames: U or Angle-shaped, 0.10-inch-thick, aluminum sheet channels; frames with flanges for attaching to walls and flangeless frames for installing in ducts.
6. Blades:
  - a. Multiple or single blade.
  - b. Parallel- or opposed-blade design.
  - c. Roll-Formed Aluminum Blades: 0.10-inch-thick aluminum sheet.
  - d. Extruded-Aluminum Blades: 0.050-inch-thick extruded aluminum.
7. Blade Axles: Galvanized steel, Stainless steel.
8. Bearings:
  - a. Oil-impregnated bronze, Molded synthetic, Oil-impregnated stainless-steel sleeve, Stainless-steel sleeve.
  - b. Dampers in ducts with pressure classes of 3-inch wg or less shall have axles full length of damper blades and bearings at both ends of operating shaft.
9. Blade Seals: Neoprene.
10. Jamb Seals: Cambered stainless steel, aluminum.
11. Tie Bars and Brackets: Galvanized steel, Aluminum.
12. Accessories:
  - a. Include locking device to hold single-blade dampers in a fixed position without vibration.

E. Jackshaft:

1. Size: 0.5-inch diameter min.
2. Material: Galvanized-steel pipe rotating within pipe-bearing assembly mounted on supports at each mullion and at each end of multiple-damper assemblies.
3. Length and Number of Mountings: As required to connect linkage of each damper in multiple-damper assembly.

F. Damper Hardware:

1. Zinc-plated, die-cast core with dial and handle made of 3/32-inch-thick zinc-plated steel, and a 3/4-inch hexagon locking nut.
2. Include center hole to suit damper operating-rod size.
3. Include elevated platform for insulated duct mounting.

## 2.6 CONTROL DAMPERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Arrow United Industries.
  2. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
  3. McGill AirFlow LLC.
  4. Nailor Industries Inc.
  5. Pottorff.

6. [Ruskin Company](#).
- B. Low-leakage rating, with linkage outside airstream, and bearing AMCA's Certified Ratings Seal for both air performance and air leakage.
- C. Frames:
  1. U or Angle shaped.
  2. 0.094-inch-thick, galvanized sheet steel or 0.05-inch-thick stainless steel.
  3. Mitered and welded corners.
- D. Blades:
  1. Multiple blade with maximum blade width of 6 inches.
  2. Parallel blade for non modulating application
  3. Opposed-blade design for all modulating applications
  4. Galvanized-steel, Stainless steel, Aluminum.
  5. 0.064 inch thick single skin or 0.0747-inch-thick dual skin.
  6. Blade Edging: Closed-cell neoprene.
  7. Blade Edging: Inflatable seal blade edging, or replaceable rubber seals.
- E. Blade Axles: 1/2-inch-diameter; galvanized steel, or stainless steel; blade-linkage hardware of zinc-plated steel and brass; ends sealed against blade bearings.
  1. Operating Temperature Range: From minus 40 to plus 200 deg F.
- F. Bearings:
  1. Oil-impregnated bronze, Molded synthetic, Oil-impregnated, stainless-steel sleeve, or Stainless-steel sleeve.
  2. Dampers in ducts with pressure classes of 3-inch wg or less shall have axles full length of damper blades and bearings at both ends of operating shaft.
  3. Thrust bearings at each end of every blade.

## 2.7 FIRE DAMPERS

- A. [Manufacturers](#): Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  1. [Arrow United Industries](#).
  2. [Greenheck Fan Corporation](#).
  3. [Nailor Industries Inc.](#)
  4. [Pottorff](#).
  5. [Ruskin Company](#).
  6. [Ward Industries; a brand of Hart & Cooley, Inc.](#)
- B. Type: Dynamic; rated and labeled according to UL 555 by an NRTL.
- C. Closing rating in ducts up to 4-inch wg static pressure class and minimum 2000-fpm velocity.
- D. Fire Rating: 1-1/2 and 3 hours.

- E. Frame: Curtain type with blades inside airstream for application in duct over 24" in height. Curtain type with blades outside airstream for ducts 24" or less in height. Multiple-blade type; fabricated with roll-formed, 0.034-inch-thick galvanized steel; with mitered and interlocking corners.
- F. Mounting Sleeve: Factory- or field-installed, galvanized sheet steel.
  - 1. Minimum Thickness: 0.138 inch upto 4 SF 0.39 over 4 SF inch thick, as indicated, and of length to suit application.
  - 2. Exception: Omit sleeve where damper-frame width permits direct attachment of perimeter mounting angles on each side of wall or floor; thickness of damper frame must comply with sleeve requirements.
- G. Mounting Orientation: Vertical or horizontal as indicated.
- H. Blades: Roll-formed, interlocking, 0.034-inch- thick, galvanized sheet steel. In place of interlocking blades, use full-length, 0.034-inch-thick, galvanized-steel blade connectors.
- I. Horizontal Dampers: Include blade lock and stainless-steel closure spring.
- J. Heat-Responsive Device: Replaceable, 165 deg F rated, fusible links.

## 2.8 CEILING RADIATION DAMPERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. [Aire Technologies.](#)
  - 2. [Nailor Industries Inc.](#)
  - 3. [Pottorff.](#)
  - 4. [Prefco.](#)
  - 5. [Ruskin Company.](#)
- B. General Requirements:
  - 1. Labeled according to UL 555C by an NRTL.
  - 2. Comply with construction details for tested floor- and roof-ceiling assemblies as indicated in UL's "Fire Resistance Directory."
- C. Frame: Galvanized sheet steel, round or rectangular, style to suit ceiling construction.
- D. Blades: Galvanized sheet steel with refractory insulation.
- E. Heat-Responsive Device: Replaceable, 165 deg F rated, fusible links.
- F. Fire Rating: 1hr for applications in assemblies up to 1 ½ hr rating. 2hr for application in assemblies of up to 3hr

## 2.9 SMOKE DAMPERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
  2. Nailor Industries Inc.
  3. Pottorff.
  4. Ruskin Company.
- B. General Requirements: Label according to UL 555S by an NRTL.
- C. Smoke Detector: Integral, factory wired for single-point connection. Except for NYC smoke detector shall be provided by the fire alarm contractor.
- D. Frame: Hat-shaped, 0.094-inch-thick, galvanized sheet steel, with welded or mechanically attached corners and mounting flange.
- E. Blades: Roll-formed, horizontal, overlapping, 0.063-inch- thick, galvanized sheet steel.
- F. Leakage: Class I.
- G. Rated pressure and velocity to exceed design airflow conditions.
- H. Mounting Sleeve: Factory-installed, 0.05-inch- thick, galvanized sheet steel; length to suit wall or floor application with factory-furnished silicone caulking.
- I. Damper Motors: Modulating or two-position action.
- J. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
1. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.
  2. Controllers, Electrical Devices, and Wiring: Comply with requirements for electrical devices and connections specified in Section 230923 "Direct Digital Control (DDC) System for HVAC."
  3. Permanent-Split-Capacitor or Shaded-Pole Motors: With oil-immersed and sealed gear trains.
  4. Spring-Return Motors: Equip with an integral spiral-spring mechanism where indicated. Enclose entire spring mechanism in a removable housing designed for service or adjustments. Size for running torque rating of 150 in. x lbf and breakaway torque rating of 150 in. x lbf.
  5. Outdoor Motors and Motors in Outdoor-Air Intakes: Equip with O-ring gaskets designed to make motors weatherproof. Equip motors with internal heaters to permit normal operation at minus 40 deg F.
  6. Nonspring-Return Motors: For dampers larger than 25 sq. ft., size motor for running torque rating of 150 in. x lbf and breakaway torque rating of 300 in. x lbf.
  7. Electrical Connection: **[115 V, single phase, 60 Hz]**.
- K. Accessories:

1. Auxiliary switches for signaling, fan control and position indication.
2. Test and reset switches, damper or remote mounted.
3. Manual damper testing by physically depressing the low temperature thermal disc from the inside of the damper sleeve and resetting the sensor from the exterior side of the damper sleeve.
4. Dual position blade indicator switch package shall connect directly to the blade axel for positive annunciation (interconnecting arms, wire-forms, or brackets shall not be accepted) and provide full open and full closed blade indication to a remote location.
5. Dual Position Indicator Switch Package: Shall connect directly to the blade axel for positive annunciation (interconnecting arms, wire-forms, or brackets shall not be accepted) and provide full open and full closed blade indication to a remote location.
6. Duct Smoke Detector: Factory mounted in the damper sleeve with interconnecting wiring from the damper actuator to the smoke detector enabling a single power connection point for easy field wiring.

## 2.10 COMBINATION FIRE AND SMOKE DAMPERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
  2. Pottorff.
  3. Ruskin Company.
- B. Type: Dynamic; rated and labeled according to UL 555 and UL 555S by an NRTL.
- C. Closing rating in ducts up to 4-inch wg static pressure class and minimum 2000-fpm velocity.
- D. Fire Rating: 1-1/2 for assemblies upto 2 hour and 3 hr rating for assemblies over 1 1/2hours.
- E. Frame: Hat-shaped, 0.094-inch-thick, galvanized sheet steel, with welded corners and mounting flange.
- F. Primary heat responsive device set at 285 deg F, resettable.
- G. Secondary heat closure device, set at 350 deg F, resettable.
- H. Smoke Detector: Integral, factory wired for single-point connection.
- I. Blades: Roll-formed, horizontal, interlocking, 0.063-inch- thick, galvanized sheet steel.
- J. Leakage: Class I.
- K. Rated pressure and velocity to exceed design airflow conditions.
- L. Mounting Sleeve: Factory-installed, 0.039-inch- thick, galvanized sheet steel; length to suit wall or floor application with factory-furnished silicone caulking.
- M. Master control panel for use in dynamic smoke-management systems.
- N. Damper Motors: Modulating or two-position action.

- O. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
1. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.
  2. Controllers, Electrical Devices, and Wiring: Comply with requirements for electrical devices and connections specified in Section 230923 "Direct Digital Control (DDC) System for HVAC."
  3. Permanent-Split-Capacitor or Shaded-Pole Motors: With oil-immersed and sealed gear trains.
  4. Spring-Return Motors: Equip with an integral spiral-spring mechanism where indicated. Enclose entire spring mechanism in a removable housing designed for service or adjustments. Size for running torque rating of 150 in. x lbf and breakaway torque rating of 150 in. x lbf.
  5. Outdoor Motors and Motors in Outdoor-Air Intakes: Equip with O-ring gaskets designed to make motors weatherproof. Equip motors with internal heaters to permit normal operation at minus 40 deg F.
  6. Nonspring-Return Motors: For dampers larger than 25 sq. ft., size motor for running torque rating of 150 in. x lbf and breakaway torque rating of 300 in. x lbf.
  7. **Electrical Connection: 115 V, single phase, 60 Hz.**
- P. Accessories:
- A. DRS-30 Two-Temperature Fire Closure Device:
1. UL classified two-temperature device permits the damper to be re-opened after initial temperature closure allowing the damper to remain operable for smoke management purposes until the high temperature limit is reached.
  2. Manual damper testing is permitted by physically depressing the low temperature thermal disc from the inside of the damper sleeve and resetting the sensor from the exterior side of the damper sleeve.
  3. Dual position blade indicator switch package shall connect directly to the blade axel for positive annunciation (interconnecting arms, wire-forms, or brackets shall not be accepted) and provide full open and full closed blade indication to a remote location.
- B. PI-50 Dual Position Indicator Switch Package: Shall connect directly to the blade axel for positive annunciation (interconnecting arms, wire-forms, or brackets shall not be accepted) and provide full open and full closed blade indication to a remote location.
- C. Duct Smoke Detector: Factory mounted in the damper sleeve with interconnecting wiring from the damper actuator to the smoke detector enabling a single power connection point for easy field wiring.

## 2.11 FLANGE CONNECTORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. CL WARD & Family Inc.

2. [Ductmate Industries, Inc.](#)
3. [Hardcast, Inc.](#)
4. [Ward Industries; a brand of Hart & Cooley, Inc.](#)

- B. Description: Add-on or roll-formed, factory-fabricated, slide-on transverse flange connectors, gaskets, and components.
- C. Material: Galvanized steel.
- D. Gage and Shape: Match connecting ductwork.

## 2.12 DUCT SILENCERS

- A. [Manufacturers:](#) Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. [Industrial Noise Control, Inc.](#)
  2. [McGill AirFlow LLC.](#)
  3. [Ruskin Company.](#)
  4. [Vibro-Acoustics.](#)
  5. Industrial Acoustics
- B. General Requirements:
1. Factory fabricated.
  2. Fire-Performance Characteristics: Adhesives, sealants, packing materials, and accessory materials shall have flame-spread index not exceeding 25 and smoke-developed index not exceeding 50 when tested according to ASTM E 84.
  3. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.
- C. Shape:
1. Rectangular straight with splitters or baffles.
  2. Round straight with center bodies or pods.
  3. Rectangular elbow with splitters or baffles.
  4. Round elbow with center bodies or pods.
  5. Rectangular transitional with splitters or baffles.
- D. Rectangular Silencer Outer Casing: ASTM A 653/A 653M, G90 , galvanized sheet steel, 0.040 inch thick.
- E. Round Silencer Outer Casing: ASTM A 653/A 653M, G90, galvanized sheet steel.
1. Sheet Metal Thickness for Units up to 24 Inches in Diameter: 0.034 inch thick.
  2. Sheet Metal Thickness for Units 26 through 40 Inches in Diameter: 0.040 inch thick.
  3. Sheet Metal Thickness for Units 42 through 52 Inches in Diameter: 0.05 inch thick.
  4. Sheet Metal Thickness for Units 54 through 60 Inches in Diameter: 0.064 inch thick.
- F. Inner Casing and Baffles: ASTM A 653/A 653M, G60 galvanized sheet metal, 0.034 inch thick, and with 1/8-inch-diameter perforations.

## G. Special Construction:

1. Suitable for outdoor use.
2. High transmission loss to achieve STC 45.

## H. Connection Sizes: Match connecting ductwork unless otherwise indicated.

## I. Principal Sound-Absorbing Mechanism:

1. Controlled impedance membranes and broadly tuned resonators without absorptive media.
2. Dissipative or Film-lined type with fill material.
  - a. Fill Material: Inert and vermin-proof fibrous material, packed under not less than 15 percent compression and Moisture-proof nonfibrous material.
  - b. Erosion Barrier: Polymer bag enclosing fill, and heat sealed before assembly.
3. Lining: Fiberglas cloth.

## J. Fabricate silencers to form rigid units that will not pulsate, vibrate, rattle, or otherwise react to system pressure variations. Do not use mechanical fasteners for unit assemblies.

1. Joints: Lock formed and sealed or continuously welded or flanged connections.
2. Suspended Units: Factory-installed suspension hooks or lugs attached to frame in quantities and spaced to prevent deflection or distortion.
3. Reinforcement: Cross or trapeze angles for rigid suspension.

## K. Accessories:

1. Integral 1-1/2 3-hour fire damper with access door. Access door to be high transmission loss to match silencer.
2. Factory-installed end caps to prevent contamination during shipping.
3. Removable splitters.
4. Airflow measuring devices.

## L. Source Quality Control: Test according to ASTM E 477.

1. Testing to be witnessed by Engineer.
2. Record acoustic ratings, including dynamic insertion loss and generated-noise power levels with an airflow of at least 2000-fpm face velocity.
3. Leak Test: Test units for airtightness at 200 percent of associated fan static pressure or 6-inch wg static pressure, whichever is greater.

## M. Capacities and Characteristics:

1. Configuration: Straight or 90-degree elbow as indicated on plan
2. Shape: Rectangular or Round as indicated on plan
3. Attenuation Mechanism: Acoustical glass fiber with protective film liner.
4. Maximum Pressure Drop: 0.25-inch wg.
5. Casing:
  - a. Attenuation: Standard.

- b. Outer Material: Galvanized steel.
  - c. Inner Material: Galvanized steel.
- 6. Velocity Range: 500 fpm max.
- 7. End Connection: 1-inch slip joint or Flange.
- 8. Length: as per plan
- 9. Face Dimension:
  - a. Width: as per plan
  - b. Height: as per plan
- 10. Face Velocity: as per plan
- 11. Dynamic Insertion Loss: as per plan
- 12. Generated Noise: as per plan
- 13. Accessories:
  - a. Access door.
  - b. Birdscreen.

## 2.13 TURNING VANES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Aero-Dyne Sound Control Co.
  - 2. CL WARD & Family Inc.
  - 3. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
  - 4. Duro Dyne Inc.
  - 5. METALAIRE, Inc.
  - 6. Ward Industries; a brand of Hart & Cooley, Inc.
- B. Manufactured Turning Vanes for Metal Ducts: Curved blades of galvanized sheet steel; support with bars perpendicular to blades set; set into vane runners suitable for duct mounting.
  - 1. Acoustic Turning Vanes: Fabricate airfoil-shaped aluminum extrusions with perforated faces and fibrous-glass fill.
- C. Manufactured Turning Vanes for Nonmetal Ducts: Fabricate curved blades of resin-bonded fiberglass with acrylic polymer coating; support with bars perpendicular to blades set; set into vane runners suitable for duct mounting.
- D. General Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible"; Figures 4-3, "Vanes and Vane Runners," and 4-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."
- E. Vane Construction: Single wall for ducts up to 48 inches wide and double wall for larger dimensions.

## 2.14 REMOTE DAMPER OPERATORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Pottorff.
  2. Ventfabrics, Inc.
  3. Young Regulator Company.
- B. Description: Cable system designed for remote manual damper adjustment.
- C. Tubing: Copper or Aluminum.
- D. Cable: Steel.
- E. Wall-Box Mounting: Recessed.
- F. Wall-Box Cover-Plate Material: Stainless steel.

## 2.15 DUCT-MOUNTED ACCESS DOORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. CL WARD & Family Inc.
  2. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
  3. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
  4. McGill AirFlow LLC.
  5. Nailor Industries Inc.
  6. Pottorff.
- B. Duct-Mounted Access Doors: Fabricate access panels according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible"; Figures 7-2, "Duct Access Doors and Panels," and 7-3, "Access Doors - Round Duct."
1. Door:
    - a. Double wall, rectangular.
    - b. Galvanized sheet metal with insulation fill and thickness as indicated for duct pressure class.
    - c. Vision panel.
    - d. Hinges and Latches: 1-by-1-inch butt or piano hinge and cam latches.
    - e. Fabricate doors airtight and suitable for duct pressure class.
  2. Frame: Galvanized sheet steel, with bend-over tabs and foam gaskets.
  3. Number of Hinges and Locks:
    - a. Access Doors Less Than 12 Inches Square: No hinges and two sash locks.
    - b. Access Doors up to 18 Inches Square: Two hinges and two sash locks.
    - c. Access Doors up to 24 by 48 Inches: Three hinges and two compression latches with outside and inside handles for plenum applications.

- d. Access Doors Larger Than 24 by 48 Inches: Four hinges or Continuous and two compression latches with outside and inside handles.

C. Pressure Relief Access Door:

1. Door and Frame Material: Galvanized sheet steel.
2. Door: Double wall with insulation fill with metal thickness applicable for duct pressure class.
3. Operation: Open outward for positive-pressure ducts and inward for negative-pressure ducts.
4. Factory set at 3.0- to 8.0-inch wg.
5. Doors close when pressures are within set-point range.
6. Hinge: Continuous piano.
7. Latches: Cam.
8. Seal: Neoprene or foam rubber.
9. Insulation Fill: 1-inch-thick, fibrous-glass or polystyrene-foam board.

## 2.16 DUCT ACCESS PANEL ASSEMBLIES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  1. 3M.
  2. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
  3. Flame Gard, Inc.
- B. Labeled according to UL 1978 by an NRTL.
- C. Panel and Frame: Minimum thickness 0.0528-inch carbon steel.
- D. Fasteners: Carbon steel. Panel fasteners shall not penetrate duct wall.
- E. Gasket: Comply with NFPA 96; grease-tight, high-temperature ceramic fiber, rated for minimum 2000 deg F.
- F. Minimum Pressure Rating: 10-inch wg, positive or negative.

## 2.17 FLEXIBLE CONNECTORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  1. CL WARD & Family Inc.
  2. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
  3. Duro Dyne Inc.
  4. Elgen Manufacturing.
- B. Materials: Flame-retardant or noncombustible fabrics.
- C. Coatings and Adhesives: Comply with UL 181, Class 1.

- D. Metal-Edged Connectors: Factory fabricated with a fabric strip 3-1/2 inches or 5-3/4 inches wide attached to two strips of 2-3/4-inch-wide, 0.028-inch-thick, galvanized sheet steel or 0.032-inch-thick aluminum sheets. Provide metal compatible with connected ducts.
- E. Indoor System, Flexible Connector Fabric: Glass fabric double coated with neoprene.
  - 1. Minimum Weight: 26 oz./sq. yd..
  - 2. Tensile Strength: 480 lbf/inch in the warp and 360 lbf/inch in the filling.
  - 3. Service Temperature: Minus 40 to plus 200 deg F.
- F. Outdoor System, Flexible Connector Fabric: Glass fabric double coated with weatherproof, synthetic rubber resistant to UV rays and ozone.
  - 1. Minimum Weight: 24 oz./sq. yd..
  - 2. Tensile Strength: 530 lbf/inch in the warp and 440 lbf/inch in the filling.
  - 3. Service Temperature: Minus 50 to plus 250 deg F.
- G. High-Temperature System, Flexible Connectors: Glass fabric coated with silicone rubber.
  - 1. Minimum Weight: 16 oz./sq. yd..
  - 2. Tensile Strength: 285 lbf/inch in the warp and 185 lbf/inch in the filling.
  - 3. Service Temperature: Minus 67 to plus 500 deg F.
- H. High-Corrosive-Environment System, Flexible Connectors: Glass fabric with chemical-resistant coating.
  - 1. Minimum Weight: 14 oz./sq. yd..
  - 2. Tensile Strength: 450 lbf/inch in the warp and 340 lbf/inch in the filling.
  - 3. Service Temperature: Minus 67 to plus 500 deg F.
- I. Thrust Limits: Combination coil spring and elastomeric insert with spring and insert in compression, and with a load stop. Include rod and angle-iron brackets for attaching to fan discharge and duct.
  - 1. Frame: Steel, fabricated for connection to threaded rods and to allow for a maximum of 30 degrees of angular rod misalignment without binding or reducing isolation efficiency.
  - 2. Outdoor Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
  - 3. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
  - 4. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
  - 5. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.
  - 6. Elastomeric Element: Molded, oil-resistant rubber or neoprene.
  - 7. Coil Spring: Factory set and field adjustable for a maximum of 1/4-inch movement at start and stop.

## 2.18 DUCT ACCESSORY HARDWARE

- A. Instrument Test Holes: Cast iron or cast aluminum to suit duct material, including screw cap and gasket. Size to allow insertion of pitot tube and other testing instruments and of length to suit duct-insulation thickness.

- B. Adhesives: High strength, quick setting, neoprene based, waterproof, and resistant to gasoline and grease.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install duct accessories according to applicable details in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for metal ducts and in NAIMA AH116, "Fibrous Glass Duct Construction Standards," for fibrous-glass ducts.
- B. Install duct accessories of materials suited to duct materials; use galvanized-steel accessories in galvanized-steel and fibrous-glass ducts, stainless-steel accessories in stainless-steel ducts, and aluminum accessories in aluminum ducts.
- C. Compliance with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1-2004 includes Section 6.4.3.3.3 - "Shutoff Damper Controls," restricts the use of backdraft dampers, and requires control dampers for certain applications. Install backdraft dampers at inlet of exhaust fans or exhaust ducts as close as possible to exhaust fan unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Install volume dampers at points on supply, return, and exhaust systems where branches extend from larger ducts. Where dampers are installed in ducts having duct liner, install dampers with hat channels of same depth as liner, and terminate liner with nosing at hat channel.
  - 1. Install steel volume dampers in steel ducts.
  - 2. Install aluminum volume dampers in aluminum ducts.
  - 3. Install stainless steel volume dampers in stainless steel ducts.
- E. Set dampers to fully open position before testing, adjusting, and balancing.
- F. Install test holes at fan inlets and outlets and elsewhere as indicated.
- G. Install fire and smoke dampers according to UL listing.
- H. Connect ducts to duct silencers rigidly.
- I. Install duct access doors on sides of ducts to allow for inspecting, adjusting, and maintaining accessories and equipment at the following locations:
  - 1. On both sides of duct coils.
  - 2. Upstream from duct filters.
  - 3. At outdoor-air intakes and mixed-air plenums.
  - 4. At drain pans and seals.
  - 5. Downstream from manual volume dampers, control dampers, backdraft dampers, and equipment.
  - 6. Adjacent to and close enough to fire or smoke dampers, to reset or reinstall fusible links. Access doors for access to fire or smoke dampers having fusible links shall be pressure relief access doors and shall be outward operation for access doors installed upstream from dampers and inward operation for access doors installed downstream from dampers.

7. At each change in direction and at maximum 50-foot spacing and the bottom of all riser in Laundry exhaust ducts.
  8. Upstream from turning vanes.
  9. Upstream or downstream from duct silencers.
  10. Control devices requiring inspection.
  11. Elsewhere as indicated.
- J. Install access doors with swing against duct static pressure.
- K. Access Door Sizes:
1. One-Hand or Inspection Access: 8 by 5 inches.
  2. Two-Hand Access: 12 by 6 inches.
  3. Head and Hand Access: 18 by 10 inches.
  4. Head and Shoulders Access: 21 by 14 inches.
  5. Body Access: 25 by 14 inches.
  6. Body plus Ladder Access: 25 by 17 inches.
- L. Label access doors according to Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment" to indicate the purpose of access door.
- M. Install flexible connectors to connect ducts to equipment.
- N. For fans developing static pressures of 5-inch wg and more, cover flexible connectors with loaded vinyl sheet held in place with metal straps.
- O. Connect terminal units to supply ducts with maximum 12-inch lengths of flexible duct. Do not use flexible ducts to change directions.
- P. Connect diffusers or light troffer boots to ducts with maximum 30-inch lengths of flexible duct clamped or strapped in place.
- Q. Connect flexible ducts to metal ducts with draw bands.
- R. Install duct test holes where required for testing and balancing purposes.
- S. Install thrust limits at centerline of thrust, symmetrical on both sides of equipment. Attach thrust limits at centerline of thrust and adjust to a maximum of 1/4-inch movement during start and stop of fans.
- T. Install remote volume damper operators for all volume dampers that are concealed and not accessible after finished construction is complete.

### 3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Tests and Inspections:
1. Operate dampers to verify full range of movement.
  2. Inspect locations of access doors and verify that purpose of access door can be performed.

3. Operate fire, smoke, and combination fire and smoke dampers to verify full range of movement and verify that proper heat-response device is installed.
4. Inspect turning vanes for proper and secure installation.
5. Operate remote damper operators to verify full range of movement of operator and damper.

END OF SECTION 233300

## SECTION 233600 - AIR TERMINAL UNITS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- B. Sequence of operation – section 230993
- C. Direct digital controls – section 230901

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Shutoff, single-duct air terminal units.
  - 2. Casing liner.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of air terminal unit.
  - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for air terminal units.
  - 2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
- B. Sustainable Design Submittals:
  - 1. [Product Data](#): For adhesives, indicating VOC content.
  - 2. Laboratory Test Reports: For adhesives, indicating compliance with requirements for low-emitting materials.
  - 3. [Product data showing compliance with](#) ASHRAE 62.1.
- C. Shop Drawings: For air terminal units.
  - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting details.
  - 2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
  - 3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
  - 4. Hangers and supports, including methods for duct and building attachment and vibration isolation.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
  - 1. Ceiling suspension assembly members.
  - 2. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustic tile.
  - 3. Ceiling-mounted items including lighting fixtures, diffusers, grilles, speakers, sprinklers, access panels, and special moldings.
- B. Field quality-control reports.

#### 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For air terminal units to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
  - 1. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
    - a. Instructions for resetting minimum and maximum air volumes.
    - b. Instructions for adjusting software set points.

#### 1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IES 90.1, "Section 6 - Heating, Ventilating, and Air Conditioning."

#### 2.2 SHUTOFF, SINGLE-DUCT AIR TERMINAL UNITS

- A. Manufactures;
  - 1. Titus
  - 2. Carrier
  - 3. Anomastat
  - 4. Carnes
  - 5. Greenheck

- B. Configuration: Volume-damper assembly inside unit casing with control components inside a protective metal shroud.
- C. Casing: 0.040-inch- thick galvanized steel, single wall.
  - 1. Casing Liner: Comply with requirements in "Casing Liner" Article for flexible elastomeric duct liner.
  - 2. Air Inlet: Round stub connection or S-slip and drive connections for duct attachment.
  - 3. Air Outlet: S-slip and drive connections.
  - 4. Access: Removable panels for access to parts requiring service, adjustment, or maintenance; with airtight gasket.
  - 5. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.
- D. Regulator Assembly: System-air-powered bellows section incorporating polypropylene bellows for volume regulation and thermostatic control. Bellows shall operate at temperatures from zero to 140 deg F, shall be impervious to moisture and fungus, shall be suitable for 10-inch wg static pressure, and shall be factory tested for leaks.
- E. Volume Damper: Galvanized steel with peripheral gasket and self-lubricating bearings.
  - 1. Maximum Damper Leakage: AHRI 880 rated, 2 percent of nominal airflow at 6-inch wg inlet static pressure.
  - 2. Damper Position: Normally open.
- F. Attenuator Section: 0.034-inch steel sheet.
  - 1. Attenuator Section Liner: Comply with requirements in "Casing Liner" Article for flexible elastomeric duct liner.
  - 2. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.
- G. Hydronic Heating Coils: Copper tube, with mechanically bonded aluminum fins spaced no closer than 0.1 inch, and rated for a minimum working pressure of 200 psig and a maximum entering-water temperature of 220 deg F. Include manual air vent and drain valve.
- H. Control devices shall be compatible with temperature controls system specified in Section 230923 "Direct Digital Control (DDC) System for HVAC."
  - 1. Electronic Damper Actuator: 24 V, powered open, spring return.
  - 2. Digital Thermostat: Wall-mounted digital type with temperature set-point display in Fahrenheit refer to DDC controls specifications. Furnished and installed by temperature controls contractor.
  - 3. Electronic Velocity Controller: Factory calibrated and field adjustable to minimum and maximum air volumes; shall maintain constant airflow dictated by thermostat within 5 percent of set point while compensating for inlet static-pressure variations up to 4-inch wg; and shall have a multipoint velocity sensor at air inlet.
  - 4. Terminal Unit Controller: Pressure-independent, variable-air-volume (VAV) controller with electronic airflow transducer with multipoint velocity sensor at air inlet, factory calibrated to minimum and maximum air volumes, and having the following features:

- a. Occupied and unoccupied operating mode.
  - b. Remote reset of airflow or temperature set points.
  - c. Adjusting and monitoring with portable terminal.
  - d. Communication with temperature-control system specified in Section 230923 "Direct Digital Control (DDC) System for HVAC."
  - e. Controller shall be by the temperature controls contractor.
5. Room Sensor: Wall mounted with temperature set-point adjustment and access for connection of portable operator terminal.

I. Controls:

1. Suitable for operation with duct pressures between 0.25- and 3.0-inch wg inlet static pressure.
2. System-powered, wall-mounted thermostat.

## 2.3 CASING LINER

- A. Casing Liner: Flexible elastomeric duct liner fabricated of preformed, cellular, closed-cell, sheet materials complying with ASTM C534, Type II, Grade 1; and with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B.
1. Minimum Thickness: 1/2 inch.
  2. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Maximum flame-spread index of 25 and maximum smoke-developed index of 50 when tested according to UL 723; certified by an NRTL.
  3. Liner Adhesive: As recommended by insulation manufacturer and complying with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B.

## 2.4 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Factory Tests: Test assembled air terminal units according to AHRI 880.
1. Label each air terminal unit with plan number, nominal airflow, maximum and minimum factory-set airflows, coil type, and AHRI certification seal.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Ch. 5, "Hangers and Supports" and with Section 230529 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
- B. Building Attachments: Concrete inserts, powder-actuated fasteners, or structural-steel fasteners appropriate for construction materials to which hangers are being attached.
1. Where practical, install concrete inserts before placing concrete.
  2. Install powder-actuated concrete fasteners after concrete is placed and completely cured.

3. Use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for standard-weight aggregate concretes and for slabs more than 4 inches thick.
4. Do not use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for lightweight-aggregate concretes and for slabs less than 4 inches thick.
5. Do not use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for seismic restraints.

C. Hangers Exposed to View: Threaded rod and angle or channel supports.

D. Install upper attachments to structures. Select and size upper attachments with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

### 3.2 TERMINAL UNIT INSTALLATION

- A. Install air terminal units according to NFPA 90A, "Standard for the Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilating Systems."
- B. Install air terminal units' level and plumb. Maintain sufficient clearance for normal service and maintenance controls and coil connections
- C. Install wall-mounted thermostats.

### 3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Where installing piping adjacent to air terminal unit, allow space for service and maintenance.
- B. Hot-Water Piping: Comply with requirements in Section 232113 "Hydronic Piping" and Section 232116 Hydronic Piping Specialties," and connect heating coils to supply with shutoff valve, strainer, control valve, and union or flange; and to return with balancing valve and union or flange.
- C. Comply with requirements in Section 233113 "Metal Ducts" for connecting ducts to air terminal units.
- D. Make connections to air terminal units with flexible connectors complying with requirements in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."

### 3.4 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Label each air terminal unit with plan number, nominal airflow, and maximum and minimum factory-set airflows. Comply with requirements in Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment" for equipment labels and warning signs and labels.

### 3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.

- B. Perform the following tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative:
  - 1. After installing air terminal units and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test for compliance with requirements.
  - 2. Leak Test: After installation, fill water coils and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
  - 3. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
  - 4. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- C. Air terminal unit will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.6 STARTUP SERVICE

- A. Perform startup service.
  - 1. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 2. Verify that inlet duct connections are as recommended by air terminal unit manufacturer to achieve proper performance.
  - 3. Verify that controls and control enclosure are accessible.
  - 4. Verify that control connections are complete.
  - 5. Verify that nameplate and identification tag are visible.
  - 6. Verify that controls respond to inputs as specified.

### 3.7 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain air terminal units.

END OF SECTION 233600

## SECTION 236200 - PACKAGED COMPRESSOR AND CONDENSER UNITS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes packaged, refrigerant compressor and condenser units.

#### 1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Seismic Performance: Compressor and condenser units shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7
  - 1. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified."

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each compressor and condenser unit. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories. Include equipment dimensions, weights and structural loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
- B. Sustainable Design Submittals:
  - 1. Product Data: For energy performance.
  - 2. Product Data for EA Prerequisite "Fundamental Refrigerant Management": For refrigerants, indicating compliance with refrigerant management practices.
- C. Shop Drawings: For compressor and condenser units. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
  - 1. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.
- D. Delegated-Design Submittal: For compressor and condenser units indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
  - 1. Vibration Isolation Base Details: Detail fabrication including anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment. Include adjustable motor bases, rails, and frames for equipment mounting.

2. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for selecting vibration isolators and for designing vibration isolation bases.

## 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, based on input from installers of the items involved:
  1. Structural members to which compressor and condenser units will be attached.
  2. Liquid and vapor pipe sizes.
  3. Refrigerant specialties.
  4. Piping including connections, oil traps, and double risers.
  5. Compressors.
  6. Evaporators.
- B. Seismic Qualification Certification: For compressor and condenser units, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.
  1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
  2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
  3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
- C. Field quality-control reports.
- D. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.

## 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For compressor and condenser units to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

## 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Fabricate and label refrigeration system according to ASHRAE 15, "Safety Standard for Refrigeration Systems."
- C. ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1 Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1, Section 6, "Heating, Ventilating, and Air-Conditioning."
- D. ASME Compliance: Fabricate and label water-cooled compressor and condenser units to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1.

## 1.8 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified in Section 033000 "Cast-In-Place Concrete" and Section 033053 "Miscellaneous Cast-In-Place Concrete."
- B. Coordinate installation of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations. These items are specified in Section 077200 "Roof Accessories."
- C. Coordinate location of piping and electrical rough-ins.

## 1.9 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of compressor and condenser units that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Compressor failure.
    - b. Condenser coil leak.
  - 2. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion all parts.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 COMPRESSOR AND CONDENSER UNITS, AIR COOLED, 1 TO 5 TONS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Carrier Corporation; a unit of United Technologies Corp.
  - 2. Johnsons Controls
  - 3. Daikin
  - 4. Aaon
- B. Description: Factory assembled and tested; consisting of compressor, condenser coil, fan, motors, refrigerant reservoir, and operating controls.
- C. Compressor: Scroll, hermetically sealed, with rubber vibration isolators.
  - 1. Motor: Two speed, and includes thermal- and current-sensitive overload devices, start capacitor, relay, and contactor.
  - 2. Two-Speed Compressor: Include manual-reset, high-pressure switch and automatic-reset, low-pressure switch.
  - 3. Accumulator: Suction tube.
- D. Refrigerant: R-410A.

- E. Condenser Coil: Seamless copper-tube, aluminum-fin coil; circuited for integral liquid subcooler, with removable drain pan and brass service valves with service ports.
- F. Condenser Fan: Direct-drive, aluminum propeller fan; with permanently lubricated, totally enclosed fan motor with thermal-overload protection.
- G. Accessories:
  - 1. Cycle Protector: Automatic-reset timer to prevent rapid compressor cycling.
  - 2. Evaporator Freeze Thermostat: Temperature-actuated switch that stops unit when evaporator reaches freezing temperature.
  - 3. Filter-dryer.
  - 4. High-Pressure Switch: Automatic-reset switch cycles compressor off on high refrigerant pressure.
  - 5. Liquid-line solenoid.
  - 6. Low-Ambient Controller: Cycles condenser fan to permit operation down to 0 deg F. (supplemental units only)
  - 7. Low-Pressure Switch: Automatic-reset switch cycles compressor off on low refrigerant pressure.
  - 8. PE mounting base.
  - 9. Precharged and insulated suction and liquid tubing.
  - 10. Sound Hood: Wraps around sound attenuation cover for compressor. (AC-1 AND AC-2)
  - 11. Thermostatic expansion valve.
  - 12. Reversing valve.
- H. Unit Casing: Galvanized steel, finished with baked enamel; with removable panels for access to controls, weep holes for water drainage, and mounting holes in base. Mount service valves, fittings, and gage ports on exterior of casing.
- I. Capacities and Characteristics:
  - 1. Refer to schedules:

## 2.2 COMPRESSOR AND CONDENSER UNITS, AIR COOLED, 6 TO 120 TONS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Carrier Corporation; a unit of United Technologies Corp.
  - 2. Johnsons Controls
  - 3. Daikin
  - 4. Aaon
  - 5. ADDISON
- B. Description: Factory assembled and tested, air cooled; consisting of casing, compressors, condenser coils, condenser fans and motors, and unit controls.
- C. Compressor: Hermetic scroll compressor designed for service with crankcase sight glass, crankcase heater, and back-seating service access valves on suction and discharge ports.
  - 1. Capacity Control: Hot-gas bypass.

- D. Compressor: Hermetic or semi-hermetic rotary screw compressor designed for service with crankcase sight glass, crankcase heater, and back-seating service access valves on suction and discharge ports.
  - 1. Capacity Control: Variable-frequency controller or Hot-gas bypass.
- E. Refrigerant: R-410A.
- F. Condenser Coil: Seamless copper-tube, aluminum-fin coil, including subcooling circuit and back-seating liquid-line service access valve. Factory pressure test coils, then dehydrate by drawing a vacuum and fill with a holding charge of nitrogen or refrigerant.
- G. Condenser Fans: Propeller-type vertical discharge; either directly or belt driven. Include the following:
  - 1. Permanently lubricated, ball-bearing totally enclosed motors.
  - 2. Separate motor for each fan.
  - 3. Dynamically and statically balanced fan assemblies.
- H. Operating and safety controls include the following:
  - 1. Manual-reset, high-pressure cutout switches.
  - 2. Automatic-reset, low-pressure cutout switches.
  - 3. Low-oil-pressure cutout switch.
  - 4. Compressor-winding thermostat cutout switch.
  - 5. Three-leg, compressor-overload protection.
  - 6. Control transformer.
  - 7. Magnetic contactors for compressor and condenser fan motors.
  - 8. Timer to prevent excessive compressor cycling.
- I. Accessories:
  - 1. Gage Panel: Package with refrigerant circuit suction and discharge gages.
  - 2. Hot-gas bypass kit.
  - 3. Part-winding-start timing relay, circuit breakers, and contactors.
- J. Unit Casings: Designed for outdoor installation with weather protection for components and controls and with removable panels for required access to compressors, controls, condenser fans, motors, and drives. Additional features include the following:
  - 1. Steel, galvanized or zinc coated, for exposed casing surfaces; treated and finished with manufacturer's standard paint coating.
  - 2. Perimeter base rail with forklift slots and lifting holes to facilitate rigging.
  - 3. Gasketed control panel door.
  - 4. Nonfused disconnect switch, factory mounted and wired, for single external electrical power connection.
  - 5. Condenser coil grille.
- K. Capacities and Characteristics: Refer to Schedule

## 2.3 MOTORS

- A. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
  - 1. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.

## 2.4 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Verification of Performance: Rate compressor and condenser units according to ARI 206/110 ARI 306/110.
- B. Energy Efficiency: Equal to or greater than prescribed by ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1, "Energy Efficient Design of New Buildings except Low-Rise Residential Buildings," Section 6, "Heating, Ventilating, and Air-Conditioning."
- C. Test and inspect shell and tube condensers according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1.
- D. Testing Requirements: Factory test sound-power-level ratings according to ARI 270.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of compressor and condenser units.
- B. Examine roughing-in for refrigerant piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before equipment installation.
- C. Examine walls, floors, and roofs for suitable conditions where compressor and condenser units will be installed.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install units level and plumb, firmly anchored in locations indicated.
- B. Install roof-mounting units on equipment supports specified in Section 077200 "Roof Accessories."
- C. Equipment Mounting:

1. Condensing units installed on grade shall be installed on a concrete housekeeping pad 3 ½" thick and 6" longer and wider than unit mounts. Set pad level, slope soil away from pad. Comply with requirements for equipment bases and foundations specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
  2. Condensing units installed on steel dunnage or roof curbs shall be installed on neoprene pads between the unit frame and the dunnage. Fasten condensing unit to dunnage of curb galvanized steel fasteners. Set units level with shims. Vibration isolators shall be mason industries model MBSW or super WSW.
- D. Maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances for service and maintenance.
- E. Loose Components: Install electrical components, devices, and accessories that are not factory mounted.

### 3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Where installing piping adjacent to equipment, allow space for service and maintenance of equipment.
- B. Connect pre-charged refrigerant tubing to unit's quick-connect fittings. Install tubing so it does not interfere with access to unit. Install furnished accessories.
- C. Connect refrigerant piping to air-cooled compressor and condenser units; maintain required access to unit. Install furnished field-mounted accessories. Refrigerant piping and specialties are specified in Section 232300 "Refrigerant Piping."

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
1. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test. Certify compliance with test parameters.
  2. Leak Test: After installation, charge system with refrigerant and oil and test for leaks. Repair leaks, replace lost refrigerant and oil, and retest until no leaks exist.
  3. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor operation and unit operation, product capability, and compliance with requirements.
  4. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
  5. Verify proper airflow over coils.

- C. Verify that vibration isolation and flexible connections properly dampen vibration transmission to structure.
- D. Compressor and condenser units will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.5 STARTUP SERVICE

- 1. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions and perform the following:
  - a. Inspect for physical damage to unit casing.
  - b. Verify that access doors move freely and are weathertight.
  - c. Clean units and inspect for construction debris.
  - d. Verify that all bolts and screws are tight.
  - e. Adjust vibration isolation and flexible connections.
  - f. Verify that controls are connected and operational.
- B. Lubricate bearings on fan motors.
- C. Verify that fan wheel is rotating in the correct direction and is not vibrating or binding.
- D. Start unit according to manufacturer's written instructions and complete manufacturer's startup checklist.
- E. Measure and record airflow and air temperature rise over coils.
- F. Verify proper operation of condenser capacity control device.
- G. Verify that vibration isolation and flexible connections properly dampen vibration transmission to structure.
- H. After startup and performance test, lubricate bearings.

### 3.6 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain compressor and condenser units.

END OF SECTION 236200

## SECTION 237313.16 – INDOOR, CUSTOM AIR-HANDLING UNITS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes insulated, double-wall-casing, indoor, semi-custom air-handling units that are factory assembled using multiple section components.

## 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each air-handling unit.

1. Unit dimensions and weight.
2. Cabinet material, metal thickness, finishes, insulation, and accessories.
3. Fans:
  - a. Certified fan-performance curves with system operating conditions indicated.
  - b. Certified fan-sound power ratings.
  - c. Fan construction and accessories.
  - d. Motor ratings, electrical characteristics, and motor accessories.
4. Vibration isolation product data with performance ratings. Uniquely identify and include information for each different isolator type and indicate for each air-handling unit where each isolator type is being used.
5. Include certified coil-performance ratings with system operating conditions indicated. Product data to include dimensions, dry and operating weight, volume of fluid contained, materials of construction, and performance ratings with system operating conditions indicated.
6. Casing insulation product data and performance ratings.
7. Access door and access panel product data and performance ratings.
8. Paint product data and performance ratings.
9. Electrical product data and performance ratings.
10. Metal grating product data and performance ratings.
11. Dampers product data, including housings, linkages, and operators with performance ratings.
12. Filters product data with performance characteristics.
13. Heat wheels product data with performance ratings.
14. Duct silencers product data with performance ratings.

- B. Sustainable Design Submittals:

1. Product data showing compliance with ASHRAE 62.1.
2. Product data showing compliance with ASHRAE 90.1.
3. Product Data: For air filtration performance.
4. Product Data: For adhesives, mastics, and sealants, indicating VOC content.
5. Laboratory Test Reports: For adhesives, mastics, and sealants, indicating compliance with requirements for low-emitting materials.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Floor plans and other details, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
  1. Mechanical-room layout and relationships between components and adjacent structural and mechanical elements.
  2. Support location, type, and weight.
  3. Field measurements.
- B. Source quality-control reports:
- C. Field quality-control reports.

#### 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For air-handling units to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

#### 1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  1. Filters: One set(s) for each air-handling unit.
  2. Gaskets: One set(s) for each access door.
  3. Fan Belts: One set(s) for each air-handling unit fan.

#### 1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided.
- B. Coordinate sizes and locations of structural-steel support members, if any, with actual equipment provided.

#### 1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, HANDLING

- A. Deliver air-handling units with factory-installed shipping skids and lifting lugs; pack small components in factory-fabricated protective containers. Cover units with heat-shrinkable plastic sheeting suitable for shipping from point of manufacture to Project.
- B. Handle air-handling units carefully to avoid damage to components, casing, and finish. Do not install damaged components; replace and return damaged components to air-handling unit manufacturer.
- C. Store air-handling units in a clean dry place and protect them from weather and construction activities.
- D. Keep air-handling units fully covered and protected during construction. Remove dirt and debris and clean units to a factory-cleaned condition.
- E. Comply with manufacturer's written rigging and installation instructions for unloading air-handling units and moving them to their final locations.

## 1.9 WARRANTY

- A. Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of air-handling units that fails in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Warranty Period: 1 year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Extended warranties include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Complete Air-Handling Unit: Two years from date of Substantial Completion for entire air-handling unit and longer where indicated for individual components.
  - 2. Air-Handling Unit Casing: 25 years from date of Substantial Completion.
  - 3. Motors: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.
  - 4. Heat Wheels: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. NFPA Compliance: Comply with NFPA 90A for design, fabrication, and installation of air-handling units and components.
- C. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment" and Section 7 - "Construction and Startup."
- D. ASHRAE/IES 90.1 Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IES 90.1, Section 6 - "Heating, Ventilating, and Air-Conditioning."

- E. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design vibration isolation, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
- F. Structural Performance: Casing panels shall be self-supporting and capable of withstanding positive/negative 8-inch wg of internal static pressure, without exceeding a midpoint deflection of 0.0042 inch/inch of panel span.
- G. Casing Leakage Performance: ASHRAE 111, Class 6 leakage or better at plus or minus 8 inch wg.

## 2.2 CAPACITIES AND CHARACTERISTICS

- A. Refer to plans and schedules

## 2.3 INDOOR/OUTDOOR, SEMI-CUSTOM AIR-HANDLING UNIT MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Buffalo Air Handling.
  - 2. Carrier Corporation; a unit of United Technologies Corp.
  - 3. Daikin Applied.
  - 4. Dunham-Bush, Inc.
  - 5. YORK; a Johnson Controls company.

## 2.4 UNIT CASINGS

- A. Frame: Modular and providing overall structural integrity without reliance on casing panels for structural support.
- B. Base Rail: The air-handling unit shall be provided with a full perimeter base rail channel.
  - 1. The base rail channel shall be formed of 16-gage minimum galvanized steel
  - 2. Height: 6 inches.
- C. Casing Joints: Hermetically sealed at each corner and around entire perimeter.
- D. Outside Casing Wall: shall be one of the following:
  - 1. Material: G90 Galvanized steel, minimum 16 gauge thick.
  - 2. Material: Aluminum, minimum 14 gauge thick.
  - 3. Material: Stainless steel, minimum 16 gauge thick.
  - 4. Factory Finish: prime coat and acrylic polyurethane shall be applied.
  - 5. Outdoor units - The finished unit shall exceed 500-hour salt spray solution (5%) without any sign of red rust when tested in accordance with ASTM B-117.
- E. Inside Casing Wall: shall be one of the following three:

1. Material: G 90 Galvanized steel, solid, minimum 16 gauge thick. solid
  2. Material: Aluminum, solid, minimum 14 gauge thick. perforated
  3. Material: Stainless steel, solid, minimum 16 gauge thick. Solid
  4. Antimicrobial Coating: Applied during the manufacturing process. EPA approved and NSF approved.
- F. Floor Plate:
1. Floor panels shall be double wall construction, designed to provide at most L/240 deflection based on 300 lb. concentrated load at mid-span. The interior liner of the floor panels shall be a solid lining of minimum 20 gage galvanized or 304 stainless steel.
  2. Material: G90 Galvanized steel, minimum 16 gauge thick.
  3. Material: Stainless steel, minimum 16 gauge thick.
  4. Antimicrobial Coating: Applied during the manufacturing process. EPA approved NSF approved.
  5. Where units are large enough to walk inside, provide an additional 0.125" aluminum diamond tread plate liner shall be provided as a walk-on surface in unit access areas.
- G. Static-Pressure Classifications:
1. For Unit Sections Upstream of Fans: Minus 3-inch wg.
  2. For Unit Sections Downstream and Including Fans: 3-inch wg.
- H. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.
- I. Casing Insulation:
1. Materials: Glass-fiber insulation layered over injected foam in perforated interior casing sections to meet specified acoustic requirements.
  2. Casing Panel R-Value: Minimum R-12.5(Hr-Ft<sup>2</sup>-°F/BTU).
  3. Insulation Thickness: 2 inches.
  4. Thermal Break: Provide continuity of insulation with no through-casing metal in casing walls, floors, or roofs of air-handling unit.
  5. Insulation application shall conform to NFPA 90A requirements.
  6. Panels with perforated panel liner shall utilize a triple-wall construction, joining a matte-faced fiberglass insulated panel with a foam insulated panel
- J. Panels, Doors, and Windows:
1. Doors:
    - a. Provide access doors on both sides, in all sections, of the air-handling unit.
    - b. Fabrication: Formed and reinforced, double-wall and insulated panels of same materials and thicknesses as casing.
    - c. Hinges: A minimum of two ball-bearing hinges or stainless-steel piano hinge and two wedge-lever latches, operable from inside and outside. Arrange doors to be opened against airflow. Provide safety latch retainers on doors so that doors do not open uncontrollably.
    - d. Gasket: Neoprene, applied around entire perimeters of panel frames.

- e. Size: Large enough to allow for unobstructed access for inspection and maintenance of air-handling unit's internal components. At least 24 inches wide by full height of unit casing up to a maximum height of 60 inches.
- 2. Panels;
  - a. Provide removable access panels, on both side of the air handling, whenever access doors are not available ,will not fit or there is insufficient space for door swing.
  - b. Fabrication: Formed and reinforced, double-wall and insulated panels of same materials and thicknesses as casing.
  - c. Fasteners: Two or more camlock type for panel lift-out operation. Arrangement shall allow panels to be opened against airflow
  - d. Gasket: Neoprene, applied around entire perimeters of panel frames.
  - e. Size: Large enough to allow unobstructed access for inspection and maintenance of air-handling unit's internal components. Full width by full height of unit casing section.
- 3. Windows: (not required)
- 4. Service Lights: 75 watt LED, when available vaporproof luminaire with individual switched junction box located outside, adjacent to each access door and panel.
  - a. Locations: all sections with motors and drives.
- 5. Convenience Outlets: One 20-A duplex GFCI receptacle per location with junction box located on outside casing wall.
  - a. Locations: exterior of unit. One per unit when located out doors.
- K. Condensate Drain Pans:
  - 1. Provide auxiliary drain pans in segments as required.
    - a. The auxiliary pans shall be double sloped, positive draining with galvanized steel liner and double wall construction with drain connection of like material, draining to one side of the unit.
    - b. Coat auxiliary drain pans with a anti- microbial coating.
    - c. Drain connection shall be welded to the drain pan. If threaded screw-type joint is used, all joints must be easily accessible for inspection and service.
  - 2. Construction:
    - a. Drain pan design and application shall comply fully with the stated intent of ASHRAE 62-2001.
    - b. Single-wall, 20 gage galvanized-steel or noncorrosive polymer OR stainless-steel sheet.
  - 3. Drain Connection:
    - a. Located at lowest point of pan and sized to prevent overflow. Terminate with threaded nipple on both ends of pan.
    - b. Minimum Connection Size: NPS 1 ¼".

4. Slope: Minimum 0.125-in./ft. slope, to comply with ASHRAE 62.1, in at least two planes to collect condensate from cooling coils (including coil piping connections, coil headers, and return bends) and from humidifiers and to direct water toward drain connection.
5. Length: Extend drain pan downstream from leaving face for distance to comply with ASHRAE 62.1 but no less than 6".
6. Width: Entire width of water producing device.
7. Depth: A minimum of 2 inches deep.
8. Formed sections.
9. Pan-Top Surface Coating for Galvanized-Steel Drain Pans: Asphaltic waterproofing compound.
10. Units with stacked coils shall have an intermediate drain pan to collect condensate from top coil.

## 2.5 FAN, DRIVE, AND MOTOR SECTION

- A. Fan and Drive Assemblies: Statically and dynamically balanced and designed for continuous operation at maximum-rated fan speed and motor horsepower.
  1. Shafts: With field-adjustable alignment.
    - a. Turned, ground, and polished hot-rolled steel with keyway. Ship with a protective coating of lubricating oil.
    - b. Designed to operate at no more than 70 percent of first critical speed at top of fan's speed range.
- B. Centrifugal Fan Housings: Formed- and reinforced-steel panels to form curved scroll housings with shaped cutoff and spun-metal inlet bell.
  1. Bracing: Steel angle or channel supports for mounting and supporting fan scroll, wheel, motor, and accessories.
  2. Horizontal-Flanged, Split Housing: Bolted construction.
  3. Housing for Supply Fan: Attach housing to fan-section casing with metal-edged flexible duct connector.
  4. Flexible Connector: Factory fabricated with a fabric strip 3-1/2 inches wide attached to two strips of 2-3/4 inches wide 0.028-inch-thick, galvanized-steel sheet.
    - a. Flexible Connector Fabric: Glass fabric, double coated with neoprene. Fabrics, coatings, and adhesives shall comply with UL 181, Class 1.
      - 1) Fabric Minimum Weight: 26 oz./sq. yd..
      - 2) Fabric Minimum Tensile Strength: 480 lbf/inch in the warp and 360 lbf/inch in the filling.
      - 3) Fabric Minimum Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 200 deg F.
- C. Plenum Fan Housings: Steel frame and panel; fabricated without fan scroll and volute housing. Provide inlet screens for Type SWSI fans.
- D. Backward-Inclined, Centrifugal Fan Wheels: Construction with curved inlet flange, backplate, backward-inclined blades welded or riveted to flange and backplate; steel hub riveted to backplate and fastened to shaft with setscrews.

- E. Forward-Curved, Centrifugal Fan Wheels: Inlet flange, backplate, and shallow blades with inlet and tip curved forward in direction of airflow and mechanically fastened to flange and backplate; steel hub swaged to backplate and fastened to shaft with setscrews.
- F. Airfoil, Centrifugal Fan Wheels: Smooth-curved inlet flange, backplate, and hollow die-formed airfoil-shaped blades continuously welded at tip flange and backplate; steel hub riveted to backplate and fastened to shaft with setscrews.
- G. Fan Shaft Bearings:
  - 1. Prelubricated and Sealed, Ball Bearings: Self-aligning, pillow-block type with an L-50 rated life of 200,000 hours according to ABMA 9.
  - 2. Grease-Lubricated, Tapered-Roller Bearings: Self-aligning, pillow-block type with double-locking collars and two-piece, cast-iron housing with grease lines extended to outside unit and an L-50 rated life of 200,000 hours according to ABMA 11.
  - 3. Grease-Lubricated Bearings: Self-aligning, pillow-block-type, ball or roller bearings with adapter mount and two-piece, cast-iron housing with grease lines extended to outside unit and an L-50 rated life of 200,000.
- H. Belt Drives: Factory mounted, with adjustable alignment and belt tensioning, and with 1.5 service factor based on fan motor.
  - 1. Pulleys: Cast iron or cast steel with split, tapered bushing; dynamically balanced at factory.
  - 2. Motor Pulleys: Adjustable pitch for use with [5]-hp motors and smaller and constant volume units; fixed pitch for use with motors larger than 5 hp. Select pulley size so pitch adjustment is at the middle of adjustment range at fan design conditions.
  - 3. Belts: Oil resistant, nonsparking, and nonstatic; in matched sets for multiple-belt drives.
  - 4. Belt Guards: Comply with requirements specified by OSHA and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards"; 0.146 inch- thick, 3/4-inch diamond-mesh wire screen, welded to steel angle frame; prime coated.
- I. Discharge Dampers: Heavy-duty steel assembly with channel frame and sealed ball bearings, and opposed or parallel blades constructed of two plates formed around and welded to shaft, with blades linked out of airstream to single control lever.
- J. Internal Vibration Isolation: Fans shall be factory mounted with manufacturer's standard vibration isolation mounting devices having a minimum static deflection of 1 inch for units mounted on grade level and 2 inches mounted above grade on any floor or on the roof.
- K. Motor: Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
  - 1. Enclosure Type: Totally enclosed, fan cooled.
  - 2. NEMA Premium Efficient motors as defined in NEMA MG 1.
  - 3. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.15.
  - 4. Controllers, Electrical Devices, and Wiring: Comply with requirements for electrical devices and connections specified in electrical Sections.
  - 5. All fan motors shall be premium efficiency.

6. Motors shall be suitable for use in variable frequency application, per NEMA MG-1 Part 30 and inverter duty rated complying with NEMA STD MG1 PART 31.4.4.2 for fans with variable speed drive
  7. Mount unit-mounted disconnect switches on exterior of unit.
- L. All fan motors 5 hp or greater or all fan motors used in variable air volume units shall utilize variable frequency controllers
- M. Variable-Frequency Motor Controller: Comply with Section 262923 "Variable-Frequency Motor Controllers."

## 2.6 MOTOR STARTERS AND DISCONNECTS

- A. The air-handling unit shall be power wired for a single point connection. All power loads to be wired to one point of power source entrance.
- B. Provide unit mounted disconnect switches for all motors including supply fan, exhaust fan, return fan, and energy recovery wheels. Disconnects shall be unit mounted and shall have NEMA enclosure ratings in accordance with the environment for which that are installed. All air handlers located outdoors shall disconnects in NEMA 3R enclosures. All Starters not mounted within a weather proof compartment of the unit shall have a NEMA 3x rating. All Starters shall be mounted on the primary access side of the fan section
- C. Variable-air-volume units shall be equipped with factory mounted and wired variable frequency drives serving supply and return/exhaust for fan unloading control. Wiring to motor shall be provided in flexible conduit
- D. Each unit mounted drive shall be mounted in a dedicated, NEMA 1 compartment located on the side of its associated fan section. Outdoor units shall encase controls in a weatherproof control enclosure.
- E. Variable-Frequency Motor Controller: Comply with Section 232913 "Variable-Frequency Motor Controllers."
- F. Constant volume units shall be equipped with factory mounted and wired motor starter panel(s) serving supply and return/exhaust] fan motor(s). Wiring to motor shall be provided in flexible conduit.
1. Motor starter panels will include:
  2. Main power block
  3. Motor contactor(s)
  4. Individual short circuit and overload protection
  5. 120 volt control power transformer with primary and secondary protection
  6. 5 point terminal strip for field connections
  7. Main power disconnect
  8. Hand-Off-Auto switch
- G. Starters and disconnects shall comply with Section 23 05 13 "Common motor requirements for HVAC"

## 2.7 COIL SECTION

### A. General Requirements for Coil Section:

1. Comply with AHRI 410.
2. Fabricate coil section to allow removal and replacement of coil for maintenance and to allow in-place access for service and maintenance of coil(s). coil shall be mounted on tracks. Coils shall be supported by galvanized coil support members, constructed of channeled members
3. For multizone units, provide air deflectors and air baffles to balance airflow across coils.
4. Coils shall not act as structural component of unit.
5. Coil grommets shall be provided on all coils to completely seal the area between the coil connection and the unit casing.
6. Coil casing shall be constructed of min 16-gauge galvanized steel [**stainless steel**]. Tube sheets on each end shall have drawn collars to support tubes. A single intermediate coil support shall be provided on coils with a finned length of more than 62 inches, two (2) intermediate supports above 100 inches in length, and three (3) intermediate supports on coils with a finned length of more than 141 inches.
7. Coils with finned height greater than 48 inches shall have an intermediate drain pan extending the entire finned length of the coil.

### B. All steam coils shall be non-freeze type.

### C. General Operating Parameters;

1. Steam coils and heating hydronic coils shall sized for a maximum air velocity of 650 ft/min.
2. All DX and chilled water-cooling coils shall be sized for a maximum air velocity of 550 ft/min.
3. All hydronic coils shall have a maximum fluid pressure drop of 10' WC.
4. All coils shall have an air side pressure drop not greater than 1.0" of wc or as scheduled

## 2.8 HYDRONIC COILS

### A. Performance Ratings: Tested and rated according to AHRI 410 and ASHRAE 33.

### B. Minimum Working-Pressure/Temperature Ratings: 250 psig, 325 deg F.

### C. Source Quality Control: Factory tested to 300 psig.

### D. Tubes: ASTM B 743 copper, minimum thickness;

1. ½" OD tubes - .025" thick
2. 5/8" OD tubes - .035" thick
3. 7/8" OD tubes - .049" thick

### E. Fins: Aluminum, minimum thickness;

1. Plate fins – 0.0065" thick
2. Spiral fins – 0.010" thick

### F. Frames: Galvanized-steel channel frame, minimum thickness; for flanged mounting.

1. ½" OD and smaller, up to 4 rows and not longer than 48" finned length – 18 gage galvanized steel.
2. 5/8" OD and larger, longer than 48" and less than 72" finned length – 16 gage galvanized steel.
3. 5/8" OD and larger, longer than 72" finned length – 14 gage galvanized steel

G. Mounting; Slip in frame for retrofits, Flange frame for new construction.

H. Connections;

1. Coordinate left hand, right hand connections or supply return on opposite sides in the field.

## 2.9 REFRIGERANT AIR COILS

A. Performance Ratings: Tested and rated according to AHRI 410 and ASHRAE 33.

B. Direct expansion coils shall be designed to conform to the ANSI B9.1 when operating with a refrigerant pressure not exceeding 250 psig and shall be tested with 325 psig compressed air under water

C. Minimum Working-Pressure Rating: 300 psig.

D. Source Quality Control: Factory tested to 450 psig.

E. Tubes: ASTM B 743 copper, minimum thickness;

1. 3/8" OD tubes - .020" thick
2. ½" OD tubes - .025" thick
3. 5/8" OD tubes - .035" thick
4. 7/8" OD tubes - .049" thick

F. Fins: Aluminum, minimum thickness;

1. Plate fins – 0.0065" thick
2. Spiral fins – 0.010" thick

G. Suction and Distributor Piping: ASTM B 88, Type L copper tube with brazed joints.

H. Frames: Galvanized-steel channel frame, 16 gage minimum thickness; for flanged mounting.

1. ½" OD and smaller, up to 4 rows and not longer than 48" finned length – 18 gage galvanized steel.
2. 5/8" OD and larger, longer than 48" and less than 72" finned length – 16 gage galvanized steel.
3. 5/8" OD and larger, longer than 72" finned length – 14 gage galvanized steel

I. Mounting; Slip in frame for retrofits, Flange frame for new construction

## 2.10 AIR FILTRATION SECTION

A. Particulate air filtration is specified in Section 234100 "Particulate Air Filtration."

- B. High-efficiency particulate air (HEPA) filtration is specified in Section 234133 "High-Efficiency Particulate Air Filtration."
- C. Panel Filters:
1. Description: Pleated factory-fabricated, self-supported, disposable air filters with holding frames.
  2. Filter Unit Class: UL 900.
  3. Media: Interlaced glass, synthetic or cotton fibers coated with nonflammable adhesive.
  4. Filter-Media Frame: Beverage board with perforated metal retainer, or metal grid, on outlet side.
  5. Prefilter media shall be throwaway or permanent cleanable or 30% MERV 8 efficient. Spare sets of media shall be provided as scheduled
- D. Bag Filters:
1. Description: Factory-fabricated, dry, extended-surface, self-supporting filters with holding frames in steel, basket-type retainers.
  2. Filter Unit Class: UL 900.
  3. Media: Fibrous material, coated with antimicrobial agent, constructed so individual pockets are maintained in tapered form by flexible internal supports under rated-airflow conditions.
  4. Filter-Media Frame: Galvanized steel.
  5. Media shall be 22" bag 80-85% efficiency-MERV 14 or as scheduled
- E. Cartridge Filters:
1. Description: Factory-fabricated, adhesive-coated disposable, packaged air filters with media perpendicular to airflow, and with holding frames.
  2. Filter Unit Class: UL 900.
  3. Media: Fibrous material, coated with antimicrobial agent, constructed so individual pleats are maintained in pleated form under rated-airflow conditions by corrugated aluminum separators.
  4. Filter Media Frame: Galvanized steel.
  5. Media shall be 4" mini-pleated (80-85% efficiency-MERV 13, or as scheduled.
  6. Media shall be 12" rigid 80-85% efficiency-MERV 13 or as scheduled.
  7. HEPA filter segments (HF) shall be provided with MERV 17 (99.97% efficient
- F. Front, Back or Side Access Filter Mounting Frames:
1. Particulate Air Filter Frames: Galvanized-steel or Aluminum framing members with access for filter servicing, cut to size and prepunched for assembly into modules. Vertically support filters to prevent deflection of horizontal members without interfering with either filter installation or operation.
    - a. Prefilters: Incorporate a separate 2-inch- thick track with spring clips, with same access as primary filter.
    - b. Sealing: Full periphery foam gaskets.
  2. HEPA Filter Frames: Aluminum or Stainless-steel framing members, cut to size and prepunched for assembly into modules. Vertically support filters to prevent deflection of

horizontal members without interfering with either filter installation operation. Bolted filter-sealing mechanism shall mount and continuously seal each individual filter.

- a. Prefilters: Incorporate a separate 2-inch- or 4-inch- as per schedule, thick track with spring clips with same access as primary filter.
- b. Sealing: Gasketed, hand-crank locking mechanism to provide positive-sealing for each filter to ensure seal between filter elements to prevent bypass of unfiltered air.

## 2.11 DAMPERS

- A. General Requirements for Dampers: Leakage rate, according to AMCA 500, "Laboratory Methods for Testing Dampers for Rating," 4 cfm/sq. ft. at 1-inch wg and 8 cfm/sq. ft. at 4-inch wg. complying fully with the requirements of ASHRAE 90.1.
- B. Damper Operators: Comply with requirements in Section 230923.12 "Control Dampers."
- C. Electronic Damper Operators:
  1. Direct-coupled type designed for minimum 60,000 full-stroke cycles at rated torque.
  2. Electronic damper position indicator shall have visual scale indicating percent of travel and 2- to 10-V dc, feedback signal.
  3. Operator Motors:
    - a. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
    - b. Size to operate with sufficient reserve power to provide smooth modulating action or two-position action.
    - c. Permanent Split-Capacitor or Shaded-Pole Type: Gear trains completely oil immersed and sealed. Equip spring-return motors with integral spiral-spring mechanism in housings designed for easy removal for service or adjustment of limit switches, auxiliary switches, or feedback potentiometer.
  4. Nonspring-Return Motors for Dampers Larger Than 25 Sq. Ft.: Size for running torque of 150 in. x lbf and breakaway torque of 300 in. x lbf.
  5. Spring-Return Motors for Dampers Larger Than 25 Sq. Ft.: Size for running and breakaway torque of 150 in. x lbf.
  6. Size dampers for running torque calculated as follows:
    - a. Parallel-Blade Damper with Edge Seals: 7 inch-lb/sq. ft. of damper.
    - b. Opposed-Blade Damper with Edge Seals: 5 inch-lb/sq. ft. of damper.
    - c. Parallel-Blade Damper without Edge Seals: 4 inch-lb/sq. ft. of damper.
    - d. Opposed-Blade Damper without Edge Seals: 3 inch-lb/sq. ft. of damper.
    - e. Dampers with 2- to 3-Inch wg of Pressure Drop or Face Velocities of 1000 to 2500 fpm: Increase running torque by 1.5.
    - f. Dampers with 3- to 4-Inch wg of Pressure Drop or Face Velocities of 2500 to 3000 fpm: Increase running torque by 2.0.
  7. Coupling: V-bolt and V-shaped, toothed cradle.
  8. Overload Protection: Electronic overload or digital rotation-sensing circuitry.

9. Fail-Safe Operation: Mechanical, spring-return mechanism with external, manual gear release on nonspring-return actuators.
  10. Power Requirements (Two-Position Spring Return): 24 V dc.
  11. Power Requirements (Modulating): Maximum 10 VA at 24 V ac or 8 W at 24 V dc.
  12. Proportional Signal: 2- to 10-V dc or 4 to 20 mA, and 2- to 10-V dc position feedback signal.
  13. Temperature Rating: Minus 22 to plus 122 deg F.
  14. Run Time: 12 seconds open, 5 seconds closed.
- D. Outdoor- and Return-Air Dampers: Low-leakage, double-skin, airfoil-blade, galvanized-steel, aluminum, extruded-aluminum dampers with compressible jamb seals and extruded-vinyl blade edge seals in opposed-blade arrangement with zinc-plated steel operating rods rotating in stainless-steel sleeve or sintered bronze or nylon bearings mounted in a single galvanized-steel, aluminum, extruded-aluminum frame, and with operating rods connected with a common linkage. Leakage rate shall not exceed 4 cfm/sq. ft. at 1-inch wg and 8 cfm/sq. ft. at 4-inch wg.
- E. Mixing Section: Multiple-blade, air-mixer assembly located immediately downstream of mixing section.
- F. Combination Filter and Mixing Section:
1. Cabinet support members shall hold 2-inch- thick, pleated, flat, permanent or throwaway filters.
  2. Multiple-blade, air-mixer assembly shall mix air to prevent stratification, located immediately downstream of mixing box.

## 2.12 SOUND ATTENUATORS

- A. General Requirements:
1. Factory fabricated.
  2. Fire Performance Characteristics: Adhesives, sealants, packing materials, and accessory materials with flame-spread index not exceeding 25 and smoke-developed index not exceeding 50, ASTM E 84.
  3. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with ASHRAE 62.1.
- B. Shape: Rectangular, or straight Rectangular, elbow.
- C. Rectangular Silencer Outer Casing: Galvanized steel.
- D. Round Silencer Outer Casing: Galvanized steel.
- E. Inner Casing and Baffles: Galvanized steel.
- F. Principal Sound-Absorbing Mechanism:
1. Packless Type: Controlled impedance membranes and broadly tuned resonators without adsorptive media.
  2. Dissipative Type: Polymer film-lined absorptive fill material.

- a. Fill Material: Inert and vermin-proof fibrous material.
- 3. Joints: Lock formed and sealed, continuously welded or flanged.
  - a. Variable-frequency controller, factory mounted and wired, with exhaust-air sensor to vary rotor speed and maintain exhaust temperature above freezing.

## 2.13 AIR BLENDER

- A. Description: Static air mixer device to provide mixing of two airstreams to within plus/minus 6 deg F.
- B. Material: Galvanized or steel Aluminum.
- C. Coating: Corrosion-resistant coating.

## 2.14 DIFFUSER

- A. Description: Velocity profile equalizer device for providing equalized airflow profile downstream of Type DWDI fans.
- B. Material: Galvanized or steel Aluminum.

## 2.15 FILTER/MIXING BOX

- A. Section shall be designed to accommodate 2" angled filter media. The filter media shall be side-loading.
- B. A magnahelic differential pressure gauge shall be factory installed and flush mounted to measure the pressure drop across the filter bank.
- C. The return air inlet shall have standard control damper, constructed of aluminum, galvanized steel with opposed blades. Damper configuration shall be full faced..
- D. The outside air inlet have Airflow Monitoring Station have standard control damper, constructed of aluminum, or galvanized steel with opposed blades. Damper configuration shall be full faced.
- E. The airflow monitoring station must be tested for pressure drop in accordance with AMCA Standard 611-95 in an AMCA registered laboratory. The airflow monitoring station must bear the AMCA Certified Ratings Seal for Airflow Measurement Performance.

## 2.16 AIR FLOW MONITORING (25-OAF, 75/100 OAF)

- A. Optional airflow monitoring stations will be provided on air inlets, as shown in performance specifications.
- B. Airflow monitoring stations will bear the AMCA Certified Ratings Seal for Airflow Measurement Performance.

- C. Airflow monitoring station dampers will comply with leakage rates per ASHRAE 90.1.
- D. Airflow monitoring stations will be accurate within 5% of actual airflow between 350 FPM and 4000 FPM free area velocity.
- E. Outdoor air intake openings with air flow monitoring stations will have rain louver.
- F. Louver will be a wind-driven rain penetration class A louver.
- G. Louver effectiveness ratio will be 100% at the following conditions:
- H. Wind velocity, 29 mph into louver.
- I. Rain fall rate, 3 in./hr.
- J. Free area air velocity, 1500 FPM.
- K. All VAV units shall be equipped with an outside air volume measurement system similar to Tek-Air. The system shall continuously measure outside air and adjust the outside air damper to maintain the minimum air volume as indicated in the unit schedule.

## 2.17 OPTIONAL EQUIPMENT

- A. Provide the following optional equipment and or controls
  - 1. OAT sensor
  - 2. differential pressure switch
  - 3. Duct-mount Humidity/Temperature Sensor
  - 4. Differential Pressure Switch
  - 5. Static Pressure Transducer
  - 6. Freeze stat/Low Limit Temperature Cutout Control
  - 7. High Temperature Manual Reset Control (HTC)
  - 8. IAQ Sensor - for demand control ventilation
  - 9. Duct Humidity Limit (Auto Reset)
  - 10. Current Operated Switch for fan status
  - 11. Zone Temperature & Zone Humidity Sensor

## 2.18 MATERIALS

- A. Steel:
  - 1. ASTM A 36/A 36M for carbon structural steel.
  - 2. ASTM A 568/A 568M for steel sheet.
- B. Stainless Steel:
  - 1. Manufacturer's standard grade for casing.
  - 2. Manufacturer's standard type, ASTM A 240/A 240M for bare steel exposed to airstream or moisture.
- C. Galvanized Steel: ASTM A 653/A 653M.

- D. Aluminum: ASTM B 209.
- E. Corrosion-Resistant Coating: Coat with a corrosion-resistant coating capable of withstanding a 3000-hour salt-spray test according to ASTM B 117.
  - 1. Standards:
    - a. ASTM B 117 for salt spray.
    - b. ASTM D 2794 for minimum impact resistance of 100 in-lb.
    - c. ASTM B 3359 for cross hatch adhesion of 5B.
  - 2. Application: Immersion.
  - 3. Thickness: 1 mil.
  - 4. Gloss: Minimum gloss of 60 on a 60-degree meter.

## 2.19 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. AHRI 430 Certification: Air-handling units and their components shall be factory tested according to AHRI 430 and shall be listed and labeled by AHRI.
- B. AHRI 1060 Certification: Air-handling units that include air-to-air energy recovery devices shall be factory tested according to AHRI 1060 and shall be listed and labeled by AHRI.
- C. AMCA 301 or AHRI 260: Air-handling unit fan sound ratings shall comply with AMCA 301, "Methods for Calculating Fan Sound Ratings from Laboratory Test Data," or AHRI 260, "Sound Rating of Ducted Air Moving and Conditioning Equipment."
- D. Fan Sound-Power Level Ratings: Comply with AMCA 301, "Methods for Calculating Fan Sound Ratings from Laboratory Test Data." Test fans according to AMCA 300, "Reverberant Room Method for Sound Testing of Fans." Fans shall bear AMCA-certified sound ratings seal.
- E. Fan Performance Rating: Factory test fan performance for airflow, pressure, power, air density, rotation speed, and efficiency. Rate performance according to AMCA 210, "Laboratory Methods of Testing Fans for Aerodynamic Performance Rating."
- F. Water Coils: Factory tested to 300 psig according to AHRI 410 and ASHRAE 33.
- G. Steam Coils: Factory tested to 300 and 200 psig underwater according to AHRI 410 and ASHRAE 33.
- H. Refrigerant Coils: Factory tested to minimum 450-psig internal pressure and to minimum 300-psig internal pressure while underwater, according to AHRI 410 and ASHRAE 33.
- I. Witnessed Casing Leakage Tests:
  - 1. Pay for all expenses, for one representative designated by Owner, to travel to the factory to witness cabinet air-leakage testing on the specific assembled unit(s) prior to release for delivery to Project site.
  - 2. If the unit(s) does not meet specified leakage requirements, perform factory modifications and retest. Do not release unit for shipment until tested leakage is measured to be within

specified leakage and leakage testing report has been accepted by Owner's designated representative.

## 2.20 VIBRATION ISOLATION EXTERNAL TO THE UNIT.

- A. Floor mounted air handling units shall be mounted on free standing Spring isolators and laterally stable without any housing and complete with a molded neoprene cup or 1/4" neoprene acoustical friction pad between the baseplate and the support. All mountings shall have leveling bolts that must be rigidly bolted to the equipment and housekeeping pad. Installed and operating heights shall be equal. The ratio of the spring diameter divided by the compressed spring height shall be no less than 0.8. Springs shall have a minimum additional travel to solid equal to 50% of the rated deflection. Submittals shall include spring diameters, deflection, compressed spring height and solid spring height. Mountings shall be type SLR, as manufactured by Mason Industries, Inc
- B. All suspended air handling units shall use hanger consisting of rigid steel frames containing minimum 1-1/4" thick neoprene elements at the top and a steel spring seated in a steel washer reinforced neoprene cup on the bottom. The neoprene element and the cup shall have neoprene bushings projecting through the steel box. In order to maintain stability, the boxes shall not be articulated as clevis hangers nor the neoprene element stacked on top of the spring. Spring diameters and hanger box lower hole sizes shall be large enough to permit the hanger rod to swing through a 30° arc from side to side before contacting the cup bushing and short circuiting the spring. Submittals shall include a hanger drawing showing the 30° capability. Hangers shall be type PC30N as manufactured by Mason Industries, Inc.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine casing insulation materials and filter media before air-handling unit installation. Reject insulation materials and filter media that are wet, moisture damaged, or mold damaged.
- C. Examine roughing-in for steam, hydronic, and condensate drainage piping systems and electrical services to verify actual locations of connections before installation.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Equipment Mounting:
  - 1. Install base-mounted air handling units on cast-in-place concrete housekeeping pads. Comply with requirements for equipment bases and foundations specified in

Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete." and Section 033053 "Miscellaneous Cast-in-Place Concrete." Concrete housekeeping pads shall be 3 ½" high and extend 6" longer on all sides than the mountings, and shall have 45° chamfered edges.

- a. Air handling units shall be mounted on spring isolation in accordance with section 2.21
  2. Suspended Units: Suspend and brace units from structural-steel support frame using threaded steel rods and spring hangers. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation devices specified in section 2.26
- B. Arrange installation of units to provide access space around air-handling units for service and maintenance.
  - C. Do not operate fan system until filters (temporary or permanent) are in place. Replace temporary filters used during construction and testing, with new, clean filters.
  - D. Install filter-gauge, static-pressure taps upstream and downstream of filters. Mount filter gauges on outside of filter housing or filter plenum in accessible position. Provide filter gauges on filter banks, installed with separate static-pressure taps upstream and downstream of filters.
  - E. Connect duct to air-handling units with flexible connections. Comply with requirements in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."

### 3.3 PIPING CONNECTIONS

- A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Where installing piping adjacent to air-handling unit, allow for service and maintenance.
- C. Connect piping to air-handling units mounted on vibration isolators with flexible connectors.
- D. Connect condensate drain pans using NPS 1-1/4, ASTM B 88, Type M copper tubing. Extend to nearest equipment or floor drain. Construct deep trap at connection to drain pan and install cleanouts at changes in direction.
- E. Hot water Piping: Comply with applicable requirements in Section 232113 "Hydronic Piping" and Section 232116 "Hydronic Piping Specialties." Install shutoff valve and union or flange at each coil supply connection. Install balancing valve and union or flange at each coil return connection.
- F. Refrigerant Piping: Comply with applicable requirements in Section 232300 "Refrigerant Piping." Install shutoff valve and union or flange at each supply and return connection.

### 3.4 ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect wiring according to Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

- B. Ground equipment according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- C. Install electrical devices furnished by manufacturer, but not factory mounted, according to NFPA 70 and NECA 1.
- D. Install nameplate for each electrical connection, indicating electrical equipment designation and circuit number feeding connection.
  - 1. Nameplate shall be laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs with a black background and engraved white letters at least 1/2 inch high.

### 3.5 CONTROL CONNECTIONS

- A. Install control and electrical power wiring to field-mounted control devices.
- B. Connect control wiring according to Section 260523 "Control-Voltage Electrical Power Cables."

### 3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- C. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- D. Perform the following tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative:
  - 1. Leak Test: After installation, fill water and steam coils with water, and test coils and connections for leaks.
  - 2. Charge refrigerant coils with refrigerant and test for leaks.
  - 3. Fan Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
  - 4. HEPA Filters: Pressurize housing to a minimum of 3-inch wg or to designed operating pressure, whichever is higher; test housing joints, door seals, and sealing edges of filter with soapy water to check for air leaks.
- E. Air-handling unit or components will be considered defective if unit or components do not pass tests and inspections.
- F. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.7 STARTUP SERVICE

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform startup service.
  - 1. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.

2. Verify that shipping, blocking, and bracing are removed.
3. Verify that unit is secure on mountings and supporting devices and that connections to piping, ducts, and electrical systems are complete. Verify that proper thermal-overload protection is installed in motors, controllers, and switches.
4. Verify proper motor rotation direction, free fan wheel rotation, and smooth bearing operations. Reconnect fan drive system, align belts, and install belt guards.
5. Verify that bearings, pulleys, belts, and other moving parts are lubricated with factory-recommended lubricants.
6. Verify that zone dampers fully open and close for each zone.
7. Verify that face-and-bypass dampers provide full face flow.
8. Verify that outdoor- and return-air mixing dampers open and close, and maintain minimum outdoor-air setting.
9. Comb coil fins for parallel orientation.
10. Verify that proper thermal-overload protection is installed for electric coils.
11. Install new, clean filters.
12. Verify that manual and automatic volume control and fire and smoke dampers in connected duct systems are in fully open position.

B. Starting procedures for air-handling units include the following:

1. Energize motor; verify proper operation of motor, drive system, and fan wheel. Adjust fan to indicated rpm. Replace fan and motor pulleys as required to achieve design conditions.
2. Measure and record motor electrical values for voltage and amperage.
3. Manually operate dampers from fully closed to fully open position and record fan performance.

### 3.8 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust damper linkages for proper damper operation.
- B. Comply with requirements in Section 230593 "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC" for air-handling system testing, adjusting, and balancing.

### 3.9 CLEANING

- A. After completing system installation and testing, adjusting, and balancing air-handling unit and air-distribution systems and after completing startup service, clean air-handling units internally to remove foreign material and construction dirt and dust. Clean fan wheels, cabinets, dampers, coils, and filter housings, and install new, clean filters.

### 3.10 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain air-handling units.

END OF SECTION 237313.16

## SECTION 238239.13 - CABINET UNIT HEATERS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes cabinet unit heaters with centrifugal fans and hot-water coils.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. CWP: Cold working pressure.
- B. DDC: Direct digital control.
- C. PTFE: Polytetrafluoroethylene plastic.
- D. TFE: Tetrafluoroethylene plastic.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, furnished specialties, and accessories.
- B. Sustainable Design Submittals:
  - 1. [Product data showing compliance with](#) ASHRAE 62.1.
- C. Shop Drawings:
  - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and details.
  - 2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
  - 3. Include location and size of each field connection.
  - 4. Include details of anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment.
  - 5. Include equipment schedules to indicate rated capacities, operating characteristics, furnished specialties, and accessories.
  - 6. Indicate location and arrangement of piping valves and specialties.
  - 7. Indicate location and arrangement of integral controls.
  - 8. Wiring Diagrams: Power, signal, and control wiring.

- D. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified.
- E. Samples for Initial Selection: Finish colors for units with factory-applied color finishes.

## 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Floor plans, reflected ceiling plans, and other details, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
  - 1. Suspended ceiling components.
  - 2. Structural members to which cabinet unit heaters will be attached.
  - 3. Method of attaching hangers to building structure.
  - 4. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical tile.
  - 5. Items penetrating finished ceiling, including the following:
    - a. Lighting fixtures.
    - b. Air outlets and inlets.
    - c. Speakers.
    - d. Sprinklers.
    - e. Access panels.
  - 6. Perimeter moldings for exposed or partially exposed cabinets.
- B. Field quality-control reports.

## 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For cabinet unit heaters to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

## 1.7 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials described below that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Cabinet Unit-Heater Filters: Furnish **one** spare filter(s) for each filter installed.

# PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Provide products from one of the following
  - 1. Daikin
  - 2. Modine
  - 3. Rittling
  - 4. Vulcan

## 5. Sterling

## 2.2 DESCRIPTION

- A. Factory-assembled and -tested unit complying with AHRI 440.
- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- C. Electric cabinet unit heaters shall comply with UL 2021.

## 2.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment" and Section 7 - "Construction and Startup."

## 2.4 COIL SECTION INSULATION

- A. Insulation Materials: ASTM C 1071; surfaces exposed to airstream shall have aluminum-foil facing to prevent erosion of glass fibers.
  - 1. Thickness: 1 inch.
  - 2. Thermal Conductivity (k-Value): 0.26 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. at 75 deg F mean temperature.
  - 3. Fire-Hazard Classification: Maximum flame-spread index of 25 and smoke-developed index of 50 when tested according to ASTM E 84.
  - 4. Adhesive: Comply with ASTM C 916 and with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B.
  - 5. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.

## 2.5 CABINETS

- A. Material: Steel with baked-enamel finish with manufacturer's standard paint, in color selected by Architect or baked-enamel finish with manufacturer's custom paint, in color selected by Architect. Refer to schedule submit color chart for review and approval.
  - 1. **Vertical Unit**; Exposed Front Panels: Minimum 0.0528-inch- thick galvanized sheet steel, removable panels with channel-formed edges secured with tamperproof cam fasteners.
  - 2. Horizontal Unit, Exposed Bottom Panels: Minimum 0.0528-inch- thick galvanized sheet steel, removable panels secured with tamperproof cam fasteners and safety chain.
  - 3. **Recessed Unit**; Flanges: Steel, finished to match cabinet.
  - 4. Control Access Door: Key operated.
  - 5. **Vertical, wall-mounted units**; Base, minimum 0.0528-inch-thick steel, finished to match cabinet, 4 inches or 6 inches high with leveling bolts.
  - 6. Extended Piping Compartment: 8-inch- wide piping end pocket.
  - 7. **Vertical Unit Accessories**;
    - a. False Back: Minimum 0.0428-inch-thick steel, finished to match cabinet.

- b. Outdoor-Air Wall Box: Minimum 0.1265-inch-thick, aluminum, rain-resistant louver and box with integral eliminators and bird screen; aluminum louver with anodized finish in color selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard or custom colors.
- 8. **Outdoor-Air Damper:** where indicated on plan shall be galvanized-steel blades with edge and end seals and nylon bearings; with electronic, two-position actuators. Review plans and schedules for the outdoor air dampers.

## 2.6 FILTERS

- A. Minimum Arrestance: And a minimum efficiency reporting value (MERV) according to ASHRAE 52.2.
  - 1. Pleated: 90 percent arrestance and MERV 7.

## 2.7 COILS

- A. Hot-Water Coil: Copper tube, with mechanically bonded aluminum fins spaced no closer than 0.1 inch and rated for a minimum working pressure of 200 psig and a maximum entering-water temperature of 220 deg F. Include manual air vent and drain.

## 2.8 CONTROLS

- A. Fan and Motor Board: Removable.
  - 1. Fan: Forward curved, double width, centrifugal, directly connected to motor; thermoplastic or painted-steel wheels and aluminum, painted-steel, or galvanized-steel fan scrolls.
  - 2. Motor: Permanently lubricated, multispeed; resiliently mounted on motor board. Comply with requirements in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
  - 3. Wiring Terminations: Connect motor to chassis wiring with plug connection.
- B. Factory, Hot-Water Piping Package: ASTM B 88, Type L, copper tube with wrought-copper fittings and brazed joints. Label piping to indicate service, inlet, and outlet.
  - 1. Three-way, modulating control valve
  - 2. Hose Kits: steel braided flexible connection, minimum 200-psig working pressure, and operating temperatures from 33 to 211 deg F tag hose kits to equipment designations.
    - a. Length: 6"
    - b. Minimum Diameter: Equal to cabinet unit-heater connection size.
  - 3. Two-Piece, Ball Valves: Bronze body with full-port, chrome-plated bronze ball; PTFE or TFE seats; and 600-psig minimum CWP rating and blowout-proof stem.
  - 4. Calibrated-Orifice Balancing Valves: Bronze body, ball type, 125-psig working pressure, 250 deg F maximum operating temperature; with calibrated orifice or venturi, connection

- for portable differential pressure meter with integral seals, threaded ends, and equipped with a memory stop to retain set position.
5. Y-Pattern, Hot-Water Strainers: Cast-iron body (ASTM A 126, Class B); 125-psig minimum working pressure; with threaded connections, bolted cover, perforated stainless-steel basket, and bottom drain connection. Include minimum NPS 1/2 threaded pipe and full-port ball valve in strainer drain connection.
  6. Wrought-Copper Unions: ASME B16.22.
- C. Control devices and operational sequences are specified in Section 230923 "Direct Digital Control (DDC) System for HVAC" and Section 230993.11 "Sequence of Operations for HVAC DDC."
- D. DDC Terminal Controller:
1. Scheduled Operation: Occupied and unoccupied periods on seven-day clock with a minimum of four programmable periods per day.
  2. Unoccupied Period Override: Two hours.
  3. Unit Supply-Air Fan Operations:
    - a. Occupied Periods: Fan runs continuously.
    - b. Unoccupied Periods: Fan cycles to maintain setback room temperature.
  4. Heating-Coil Operations:
    - a. Occupied Periods: Open control valve to provide heating if room temperature falls below thermostat set point.
    - b. Unoccupied Periods: Start fan and open control valve if room temperature falls below setback temperature.
  5. Optional Outdoor-Air Damper Operation: (not used)
    - a. Occupied Periods: Open dampers. Delay damper opening if room temperature is more than three degrees below set point.
    - b. Unoccupied Periods: Close damper.
  6. Controller shall have volatile-memory backup.
- E. Interface with DDC System for HVAC Requirements:
1. Terminal unit controller shall be by building DDC system manufacture. It can be field or factory installed and shall be capable of at a minimum the following operation. Refer to the sequence of operation for full unit sequence and further requirements.
  2. Interface shall be BAC-net compatible for central DDC system for HVAC workstation and include the following functions:
    - a. Adjust set points.
    - b. Cabinet unit-heater start, stop, and operating status.
    - c. Data inquiry, including supply-air and room-air temperature.
    - d. Occupied and unoccupied schedules.
- F. Electrical Connection: Factory-wired motors and controls for a single field connection.

## 2.9 CAPACITIES AND CHARACTERISTICS.

- A. Capacities are as scheduled on plan

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas to receive cabinet unit heaters for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine roughing-in for **piping and** electrical connections to verify actual locations before unit-heater installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. vertical, wall-mounted cabinet unit heaters with wall boxes and outdoor-air intake louvers.
  - 1. Install wall boxes in finished wall assembly; seal and weatherproof. Joint-sealant materials and applications are specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."
- B. Install cabinet unit heaters to comply with NFPA 90A.
- C. Suspend cabinet unit heaters; suspend from structure with elastomeric hangers.
- D. Install wall-mounted thermostats and switch controls in electrical outlet boxes at heights to match lighting controls. Verify location of thermostats and other exposed control sensors with Drawings and room details before installation.
- E. Install new filters in each fan-coil unit within two weeks of Substantial Completion.

### 3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Piping installation requirements are specified in Section 232113 "Hydronic Piping," Section 232116 "Hydronic Piping Specialties," Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Install piping to allow service and maintenance and access to valves and specialties.
- C. Connect piping to cabinet unit heater's factory, hot-water piping package. Install the piping package if shipped loose.
- D. Connect supply and return ducts to cabinet unit heaters with flexible duct connectors specified in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories." If applicable.
- E. Hot water and steam cabinet unit heaters shall comply with safety requirements in UL 1995.

- F. For hot water cabinet unit heaters, unless otherwise indicated, install union, strainer and ball valve on supply-water connection and union and calibrated balancing valve on return-water connection of cabinet unit heater. Hydronic specialties are specified in Section 232113 "Hydronic Piping" and Section 232116 "Hydronic Piping Specialties."
- G. Ground equipment according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- H. Connect wiring according to Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections.
  - 1. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
  - 2. For electric units operate electric heating elements through each stage to verify proper operation and electrical connections.
  - 3. Test and adjust controls and safety devices. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- B. Units will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust initial temperature set points.
- B. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months of date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting system to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to two visits to Project during other-than-normal occupancy hours for this purpose.

### 3.6 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain cabinet unit heaters.

END OF SECTION 238239.13

## SECTION 230130

## HVAC AIR DUCT CLEANING

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes cleaning of the following duct systems:
  - 1. Supply system.
  - 2. Return system.
  - 3. Exhaust system.

## 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. ASCS: Air system cleaning specialist.
- B. NADCA: National Air Duct Cleaners Association.
- C. SMACNA: Sheet Metal and Air Conditioning Contractors' National Association.

## 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Manufacturer Certificates: Signed by manufacturers certifying that products comply with requirements.
- B. Qualification Data: For ASCS.
- C. Field quality-control test reports.

## 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. ASCS Qualifications: A member of a nationally recognized nonprofit industry organization dedicated to the cleaning of HVAC systems.
  - 1. Certification: Employ a staff of ASCSs certified by a nationally recognized certification program.
  - 2. Supervisor Qualifications: Certified by a nationally recognized program and organization.
  - 3. Experience: Submit records of experience in the field of HVAC systems cleaning.

4. Equipment, Materials, and Labor: Have equipment, materials, and labor required to perform specified services.
- B. Comply with current published standards of NADCA.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. In other Part 2 articles where titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply to product selection:
1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, manufacturers specified.
  2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the manufacturers specified.

### 2.2 SHEET METAL MATERIALS

- A. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for acceptable materials, material thicknesses, and duct construction methods, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: Lock-forming quality; complying with ASTM A 653/A 653M and having G60 coating designation; ducts shall have mill-phosphatized finish for surfaces exposed to view.
- C. Reinforcement Shapes and Plates: Galvanized-steel reinforcement where installed on galvanized sheet metal ducts; compatible materials for aluminum and stainless-steel ducts.
- D. Tie Rods: Galvanized steel, 1/4-inch minimum diameter for lengths 36 inches or less; 3/8-inch minimum diameter for lengths longer than 36 inches.

### 2.3 DUCT-MOUNTING ACCESS DOORS

- A. General Description: Fabricate doors airtight and suitable for duct pressure class.
- B. Rectangular Duct Door: Double wall; fabricated of galvanized sheet metal with insulation fill and thickness as indicated for duct pressure class. Include vision panel where indicated. Include 1-by-1-inch butt or piano hinge and cam latches.
1. Manufacturers:
    - a. American Warming and Ventilating.
    - b. Cesco Products.
    - c. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
    - d. Flexmaster U.S.A., Inc.
    - e. Greenheck.
    - f. McGill AirFlow Corporation.

- g. Nailor Industries Inc.
    - h. Ventfabrics, Inc.
    - i. Ward Industries, Inc.
  - 2. Frame: Galvanized-steel sheet; with bendover tabs and foam gaskets.
  - 3. Provide number of hinges and locks as follows:
    - a. Less Than 12 Inches Square: Secure with two sash locks.
    - b. Up to 18 Inches Square: Two hinges and two sash locks.
    - c. Up to 24 by 48 Inches: Three hinges and two compression latches with outside and inside handles.
- C. Round Duct Door: Double wall; fabricated of galvanized sheet metal with insulation fill and 1-inch thickness. Include cam latches.
  - 1. Manufacturers:
    - a. Flexmaster U.S.A., Inc.
  - 2. Frame: Galvanized-steel sheet; with spin-in notched frame.
- D. Seal around frame attachment to duct and door to frame with neoprene or foam rubber.
- E. Insulation: 1-inch thick fibrous-glass or polystyrene-foam board.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine systems to determine appropriate methods, tools, and equipment required for performance of work.
- B. Prepare written report listing conditions detrimental to performance of work.
- C. Proceed with work only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### 3.2 CLEANING

- A. Engage a qualified ASCS to clean the following systems:
  - 1. Supply system.
  - 2. Return system.
  - 3. Exhaust system.
- B. Perform cleaning before air balancing or mark position of dampers and air-directional mechanical devices before cleaning.
- C. Use duct-mounted access doors, as required, for physical and mechanical entry and for inspection.
  - 1. Install additional duct-mounting access doors to comply with duct cleaning standards. Comply with requirements in Division 23 Section "Air Duct Accessories" for additional duct-mounting access doors.

2. Disconnect and reconnect flexible ducts as needed for cleaning and inspection. Replace damaged and deteriorated flexible ducts. Comply with requirements in Division 23 Section "Air Duct Accessories" for flexible ducts.
  3. Disconnect and reconnect flexible connectors as needed for cleaning and inspection. Replace damaged and deteriorated flexible connectors. Comply with requirements in Division 23 Section "Air Duct Accessories" for flexible connectors.
  4. Reseal rigid-fiberglass-duct systems according to NAIMA recommended practices.
  5. Replace damaged fusible links on fire and smoke dampers. Replacement fusible links shall be same rating as those being replaced. Comply with requirements in Division 23 Section "Air Duct Accessories" for fusible links.
  6. Remove and reinstall ceiling components to gain access for duct cleaning. Clean ceiling components after they have been removed and replaced.
- D. Mark position of dampers and air-directional mechanical devices before cleaning, and restore to their marked position on completion.
- E. Particulate Collection and Odor Control:
1. Where venting vacuuming system inside building, use HEPA filtration with 99.97 percent collection efficiency for 0.3-micron size (or greater) particles.
  2. When venting vacuuming system outside building, use filtration to contain debris removed from the HVAC system and locate exhaust down wind and away from air intakes and other points of entry into building.
- F. Clean the following metal-duct system components by removing visible surface contaminants and deposits:
1. Air outlets and inlets (registers, grilles, and diffusers).
  2. Supply and return fans including fan housings, plenums (except ceiling supply and return plenums), scrolls, blades or vanes, shafts, baffles, dampers, and drive assemblies.
  3. Air-handling-unit internal surfaces and components including mixing box, coil section, air wash systems, spray eliminators, condensate drain pans, humidifiers and dehumidifiers, filters and filter sections, and condensate collectors and drains.
  4. Coils and related components.
  5. Return-air ducts, dampers, and actuators, except in ceiling plenums and mechanical room.
  6. Supply-air ducts, dampers, actuators, and turning vanes.
- G. Mechanical Cleaning Methodology:
1. Clean metal-duct systems using mechanical cleaning methods that extract contaminants from within duct systems and remove contaminants from building.
  2. Use vacuum-collection devices that are operated continuously during cleaning. Connect vacuum device to downstream end of ducts so areas being cleaned are under negative pressure.
  3. Use mechanical agitation to dislodge debris adhered to interior duct surfaces without damaging integrity of metal ducts or duct liner.
  4. Clean fibrous-glass duct liner with HEPA vacuuming equipment, and do not permit duct liner to get wet. Replace fibrous-glass duct liner that is damaged, deteriorated, or delaminated or that has friable material, mold, or fungus growth.
  5. Clean coils and coil drain pans according to NADCA 1992. Keep drain pan operational. Rinse coils with clean water to remove latent residues and cleaning materials; comb and straighten fins.
  6. Provide operative drainage system for washdown procedures.

7. Biocidal Agents and Coatings: Apply biocidal agents if fungus is present; use according to manufacturer's written instructions after removal of surface deposits and debris.

H. Cleanliness Verification:

1. Verify cleanliness after mechanical cleaning and before application of treatment, including biocidal agents and protective coatings.
2. Visually inspect metal-duct systems for contaminants.
3. Where contaminants are discovered, reclean and reinspect duct systems.

### 3.3 DUCT ACCESSORIES INSTALLATION

- A. Install duct accessories according to applicable details in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards--Metal and Flexible" for metal ducts and in NAIMA AH116, "Fibrous Glass Duct Construction Standards," for fibrous-glass ducts.
- B. Provide duct accessories of materials suited to duct materials; use galvanized-steel accessories in galvanized-steel and fibrous-glass ducts, stainless-steel accessories in stainless-steel ducts, and aluminum accessories in aluminum ducts.
- C. Install duct-mounting access doors where access doors do not currently exist to allow for the cleaning of ducts, accessories, and terminal units as follows:
  1. On both sides of duct coils.
  2. Downstream from volume dampers and equipment.
  3. Adjacent to fire or smoke dampers; reset or install new fusible links.
  4. Before and after each change in direction, at maximum 50-foot spacing.
  5. On sides of ducts where adequate clearance is available.
- D. Install the following sizes for duct-mounting, rectangular access doors:
  1. One-Hand or Inspection Access: 8 by 5 inches.
  2. Two-Hand Access: 12 by 6 inches.
  3. Head and Hand Access: 18 by 10 inches.
  4. Head and Shoulders Access: 21 by 14 inches.
  5. Body Access: 25 by 14 inches.
  6. Body Plus Ladder Access: 25 by 17 inches.
- E. Install the following sizes for duct-mounting, round access doors:
  1. One-Hand or Inspection Access: 8 inches in diameter.
  2. Two-Hand Access: 10 inches in diameter.
  3. Head and Hand Access: 12 inches in diameter.
  4. Head and Shoulders Access: 18 inches in diameter.
  5. Body Access: 24 inches in diameter.
- F. Install the following sizes for duct-mounting, pressure relief access doors:
  1. One-Hand or Inspection Access: 5 inches in diameter.
  2. Two-Hand Access: 10 inches in diameter.
  3. Head and Hand Access: 13 inches in diameter.
  4. Head and Shoulders Access: 19 inches in diameter.

### 3.4 CONNECTIONS

- A. Reconnect ducts to fans and air-handling units with existing flexible connectors after cleaning ducts and flexible connectors. Replace existing damaged and deteriorated flexible connectors.
- B. For fans developing static pressures of 5-inch wg and higher, cover replacement flexible connectors with loaded vinyl sheet held in place with metal straps.
- C. Reconnect terminal units to supply ducts with existing flexible ducts or replace damaged and deteriorated existing flexible ducts with maximum 12-inch lengths of new flexible duct.
- D. Reconnect diffusers or light troffer boots to low-pressure ducts with existing flexible ducts or replace damaged and deteriorated existing flexible ducts with maximum 60-inch lengths of flexible duct clamped or strapped in place.
- E. Reconnect existing and new flexible ducts to metal ducts with adhesive plus sheet metal screws.

### 3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Gravimetric Analysis: Sections of metal-duct system, chosen randomly by Architect, may be tested for cleanliness according to NADCA vacuum test gravimetric analysis.
  - 1. If analysis determines that levels of debris are equal to or lower than suitable levels, system shall have passed cleanliness verification.
  - 2. If analysis determines that levels of debris exceed suitable levels, system cleanliness verification will have failed and metal-duct system shall be recleaned and reverified.
- B. Verification of Coil Cleaning: Cleaning shall restore coil pressure drop to within 10 percent of pressure drop measured when coil was first installed. If original pressure drop is not known, coil will be considered clean only if it is free of foreign matter and chemical residue, based on thorough visual inspection.
- C. Report results of tests in writing.

END OF SECTION 230130

## SECTION 231113

### FACILITY FUEL-OIL PIPING

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

##### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

##### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes diesel-fuel-oil distribution systems and the following:
  - 1. Pipes, tubes, and fittings.
  - 2. Piping and tubing joining materials.
  - 3. Piping specialties.
  - 4. Valves.
  - 5. Concrete bases.

##### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. AST: Aboveground storage tank.
- B. Exposed, Interior Installations: Exposed to view indoors. Examples include finished occupied spaces and mechanical equipment rooms.
- C. Finished Spaces: Spaces other than mechanical and electrical equipment rooms, furred spaces, pipe and duct shafts, unheated spaces immediately below roof, spaces above ceilings, unexcavated spaces, crawlspace, and tunnels.

##### 1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Maximum Operating-Pressure Ratings: 3-psig fuel-oil supply pressure at oil-fired appliances.
- B. Delegated Design: Design restraint and anchors for fuel-oil piping, and equipment, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a licensed professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
- C. Seismic Performance: Factory-installed support attachments for AST shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to SEI/ASCE 7.
  - 1. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event."

## 1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include construction details, material descriptions, and dimensions of individual components and profiles. Also include, where applicable, rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
  - 1. Piping specialties.
  - 2. Fuel-oil storage tank accessories.
  - 3. Fuel-oil storage tank piping specialties.
  - 4. Fuel-oil transfer pumps.
  - 5. Fuel maintenance system.
- B. Shop Drawings: For facility fuel-oil piping layout. Include plans, piping layout and elevations, sections, and details for fabrication of pipe anchors, hangers, supports for multiple pipes, and attachments of the same to building structure. Detail location of anchors, alignment guides, and expansion joints and loops.
  - 1. Shop Drawing Scale: 1/4 inch per foot.
- C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For fuel-oil piping and equipment indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the licensed professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
  - 1. Detail fabrication and assembly of anchors and seismic restraints.
  - 2. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for selecting seismic restraints.
  - 3. Detail fabrication and assembly of pipe anchors, hangers, supports for multiple pipes, and attachments of the same to building structure.

## 1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Plans and details, drawn to scale, on which fuel-oil piping is shown and coordinated with other installations, using input from installers of the items involved.
- B. Site Survey: Plans, drawn to scale, on which fuel-oil piping and tanks are shown and coordinated with other services and utilities.
- C. Qualification Data: For licensed professional engineer.
- D. Seismic Qualification Certificates: For accessories, and components, from manufacturer.
  - 1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
  - 2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
  - 3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
- E. Brazing certificates.

- F. Welding certificates.
- G. Field quality-control reports.
- H. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.

#### 1.7 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For fuel-oil equipment and accessories to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

#### 1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Brazing: Qualify processes and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX.
- B. Steel Support Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
- C. Pipe Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.
- D. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- E. Comply with ASME B31.9, "Building Services Piping," for fuel-oil piping materials, installation, testing, and inspecting.
- F. Comply with requirements of the EPA and of state and local authorities having jurisdiction. Include recording of fuel-oil storage tanks and monitoring of tanks and piping.

#### 1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Lift and support fuel-oil storage tanks only at designated lifting or supporting points, as shown on Shop Drawings. Do not move or lift tanks unless empty.
- B. Deliver pipes and tubes with factory-applied end caps. Maintain end caps through shipping, storage, and handling to prevent pipe end damage and to prevent entrance of dirt, debris, and moisture.
- C. Comply with the requirements of the construction indoor air quality management plan and the construction waste management plan.

#### 1.10 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided.

## 1.11 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of fuel-oil storage tanks and flexible, double-containment piping and related equipment that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Flexible, Double-Containment Piping and Related Equipment:
    - a. Failures due to defective materials or workmanship for materials installed together, including piping, dispenser sumps, entry boots, and sump mounting adapters.
    - b. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PIPES, TUBES, AND FITTINGS

- A. See Part 3 piping schedule articles for where pipes, tubes, fittings, and joining materials are applied in various services.
- B. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, black steel, Schedule 40, Type E or S, Grade B.
  - 1. Malleable-Iron Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.3, Class 150, standard pattern.
  - 2. Unions: ASME B16.39, Class 150, Malleable iron with brass-to-iron seat, ground joint, and threaded ends.

### 2.2 JOINING MATERIALS

- A. Joint Compound and Tape: Suitable for fuel oil.

### 2.3 MANUAL FUEL-OIL SHUTOFF VALVES

- A. See valve schedule in Part 3 for where each valve type is applied in various services.
- B. General Requirements for Metallic Valves, NPS 2 and Smaller for Liquid Service: Comply with UL 842.
  - 1. CWP Rating: 125 psig.
  - 2. Threaded Ends: Comply with ASME B1.20.1.
  - 3. Dryseal Threads on Flare Ends: Comply with ASME B1.20.3.
  - 4. Tamperproof Feature: Locking feature for valves indicated in the valve schedule.
  - 5. Service Mark: Initials "WOG" shall be permanently marked on valve body.
- C. One-Piece, Bronze Ball Valve with Bronze Trim: MSS SP-110.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following or approved equal:
    - a. BrassCraft Manufacturing Company; a Masco company.
    - b. Conbraco Industries, Inc.; Apollo Div.

- c. Lyall, R. W. & Company, Inc.
  - d. McDonald, A. Y. Mfg. Co.
  - e. Perfection Corporation; A Subsidiary of American Meter Company.
- 2. Body: Bronze, complying with ASTM B 584.
  - 3. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
  - 4. Stem: Bronze; blowout proof.
  - 5. Seats: Reinforced TFE; blowout proof.
  - 6. Packing: Separate packnut with adjustable-stem packing threaded ends.
  - 7. Ends: Threaded, flared, or socket as indicated in the valve schedule.
  - 8. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
  - 9. Service Mark: Initials "WOG" shall be permanently marked on valve body.

D. Two-Piece, Full-Port, Bronze Ball Valves with Bronze Trim: MSS SP-110.

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following or approved equal:
  - a. BrassCraft Manufacturing Company; a Masco company.
  - b. Conbraco Industries, Inc.; Apollo Div.
  - c. Lyall, R. W. & Company, Inc.
  - d. McDonald, A. Y. Mfg. Co.
  - e. Perfection Corporation; A Subsidiary of American Meter Company.
- 2. Body: Bronze, complying with ASTM B 584.
- 3. Ball: Chrome-plated bronze.
- 4. Stem: Bronze; blowout proof.
- 5. Seats: Reinforced TFE; blowout proof.
- 6. Packing: Threaded-body packnut design with adjustable-stem packing.
- 7. Ends: Threaded, flared, or socket as indicated in the valve schedule.
- 8. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
- 9. Service Mark: Initials "WOG" shall be permanently marked on valve body.

## 2.4 SPECIALTY VALVES

A. Pressure Relief Valves: Comply with UL 842.

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following or approved equal:
  - a. Anderson Greenwood; Division of Tyco Flow Control.
  - b. Fulflo Specialties, Inc.
  - c. Webster Fuel Pumps & Valves; a division of Capital City Tool, Inc.
- 2. Listed and labeled for fuel-oil service by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- 3. Body: Brass, bronze, or cast steel.
- 4. Springs: Stainless steel, interchangeable.

5. Seat and Seal: Nitrile rubber.
6. Orifice: Stainless steel, interchangeable.
7. Factory-Applied Finish: Baked enamel.
8. Maximum Inlet Pressure: 150 psig.
9. Relief Pressure Setting: 60 psig.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine roughing-in for fuel-oil piping system to verify actual locations of piping connections before equipment installation.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Close equipment shutoff valves before turning off fuel oil to premises or piping section.
- B. Comply with NFPA 30 and NFPA 31 requirements for prevention of accidental ignition.

### 3.3 INDOOR PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Coordination Drawings.
- B. Arrange for pipe spaces, chases, slots, sleeves, and openings in building structure during progress of construction, to allow for mechanical installations.
- C. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- D. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- E. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- F. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- G. Verify final equipment locations for roughing-in.
- H. Comply with requirements for equipment specifications in plumbing and HVAC Sections for roughing-in requirements.
- I. Conceal pipe installations in walls, pipe spaces, or utility spaces; above ceilings; below grade or floors; and in floor channels unless indicated to be exposed to view.

- J. Use eccentric reducer fittings to make reductions in pipe sizes. Install fittings with level side down.
- K. Install unions in pipes NPS 2 and smaller at final connection to each piece of equipment and elsewhere as indicated. Unions are not required on flanged devices.
- L. Do not use fuel-oil piping as grounding electrode.
- M. Install Y-pattern strainer on inlet side of fuel-oil pump.
- N. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Section 230517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for HVAC Piping."
- O. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Section 230517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for HVAC Piping."
- P. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Section 230518 "Escutcheons for HVAC Piping."

### 3.4 VALVE INSTALLATION

- A. Install manual fuel-oil shutoff valves on branch connections to fuel-oil appliance.
- B. Install valves in accessible locations.
- C. Protect valves from physical damage.
- D. Install metal tag attached with metal chain indicating fuel-oil piping systems.
- E. Identify valves as specified in Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
- F. Install one-piece, bronze ball valve with hose end connection at low points in fuel-oil piping.
- G. Install manual air vents at high points in fuel-oil piping.

### 3.5 PIPING JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs.
- B. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.
- C. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
  - 1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dry seal threading is specified.

2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.
- D. Welded Joints: Construct joints according to AWS D10.12/D10.12M, using qualified processes and welding operators according to "Quality Assurance" Article.
  1. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
  2. Patch factory-applied protective coating as recommended by manufacturer at field welds and where damage to coating occurs during construction.
- E. Flanged Joints: Install gasket material, size, type, and thickness for service application. Install gasket concentrically positioned.
- F. Flared Joints: Comply with SAE J513. Tighten finger tight, then use wrench according to fitting manufacturer's written recommendations. Do not overtighten.

### 3.6 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Pipe hanger and support and equipment support materials and installation requirements are specified in Section 230529 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
- B. Install hangers for horizontal steel piping with the following maximum spacing and minimum rod sizes:
  1. NPS 1-1/4 and Smaller: Maximum span, 84 inches; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
  2. NPS 1-1/2: Maximum span, 108 inches; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.

### 3.7 CONNECTIONS

- A. Install piping adjacent to equipment to allow service and maintenance.
- B. Install unions, in piping NPS 2 and smaller, adjacent to each valve and at final connection to each piece of equipment having threaded pipe connection.
- C. Connect piping to equipment with ball valve and union. Install union between valve and equipment.
- D. Install flexible piping connectors at final connection to burners or oil-fired appliances that must be moved for maintenance access.

### 3.8 LABELING AND IDENTIFYING

- A. Nameplates, pipe identification, and signs are specified in Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
- B. Equipment Nameplates and Signs: Install engraved plastic-laminate equipment nameplates and signs on or near each service regulator, service meter, and earthquake valve.

1. Text: In addition to identifying unit, distinguish between multiple units, inform operator of operational requirements, indicate safety and emergency precautions, and warn of hazards and improper operations.

### 3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- B. Perform tests and inspections.
  1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.
- C. Tests and Inspections:
  1. Piping: Minimum hydrostatic or pneumatic test-pressures measured at highest point in system:
    - a. Fuel-Oil Piping: The piping shall be hydrostatically tested at 1 ½ times the maximum working pressure applicable to that part of the piping system but at a pressure less than the test pressure required for the storage tank. The minimum pressure for testing tanks shall be 1 ½ times the maximum working pressure applicable to the tank but in no case less than 25 psig.
  2. Inspect and test fuel-oil piping according to NFPA 31, "Tests of Piping" Paragraph; and according to requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
  3. Start fuel-oil transfer pumps to verify for proper operation of pump and check for leaks.
  4. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
  5. Bleed air from fuel-oil piping using manual air vents.
- D. Fuel-oil piping and equipment will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.10 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train City of New York's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain fuel-oil pumps.

### 3.11 INDOOR PIPING SCHEDULE

- A. Aboveground fuel-oil piping shall be the following:
  1. NPS 1/2 and Smaller: Steel pipe, steel or malleable-iron threaded fittings, and threaded joints.

2. NPS 5/8 to NPS 2: Steel pipe, steel or malleable-iron threaded fittings, and threaded joints.
3. Steel pipe with malleable-iron fittings and threaded joints.

### 3.12 ABOVEGROUND MANUAL FUEL-OIL SHUTOFF VALVE SCHEDULE

#### A. Distribution piping valves for pipe NPS 2 and smaller shall be one of the following:

1. One-piece, bronze ball valve with bronze trim.
2. Two-piece, full-port, bronze ball valves with bronze trim.

#### B. Valves in branch piping for single appliance shall be one of the following:

1. One-piece, bronze ball valve with bronze trim.
2. Two-piece, full-port, bronze ball valves with bronze trim.

END

OF

SECTION

2311



## SECTION 231213

### FACILITY FUEL-OIL PUMPS

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

##### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

##### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Duplex fuel-oil pumps.

##### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Exposed, Interior Installations: Exposed to view indoors. Examples include finished occupied spaces and mechanical equipment rooms.
- B. Exposed, Exterior Installations: Exposed to view outdoors or subject to outdoor ambient temperatures and weather conditions. Examples include rooftop locations.
- C. Finished Spaces: Spaces other than mechanical and electrical equipment rooms, furred spaces, pipe and duct shafts, unheated spaces immediately below roof, spaces above ceilings, unexcavated spaces, crawlspace, and tunnels.

##### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, and dimensions of individual components and profiles.
  - 2. Include, where applicable, rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
- B. Shop Drawings: For fuel-oil pumps.
  - 1. Include construction details and dimensions of individual components for fuel-oil pumps.
  - 2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
  - 3. Scale: 1/4 inch per foot.

- C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For fuel-oil pumps.
  - 1. Detail fabrication and assembly of anchors and seismic restraints.
  - 2. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for selecting seismic restraints.
  - 3. Detail fabrication and assembly of hangers, supports, and attachments of the same to building structure.

## 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified professional engineer.
- B. Seismic Qualification Certificates: For fuel-oil pumps from manufacturer.
  - 1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
  - 2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
  - 3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
- C. Field quality-control reports.
- D. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

## 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For fuel-oil pumps and fuel-oil maintenance systems to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

# PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Maximum Operating-Pressure Ratings: 3-psig fuel-oil supply pressure at oil-fired appliances.
- B. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design restraint and anchors for fuel-oil pumps, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
- C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- D. Listed and labeled for fuel-oil service by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

## 2.2 DUPLEX FUEL-OIL TRANSFER PUMP SETS

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
1. Alyan Pump Company.
  2. Preferred Utilities Manufacturing Corporation.
  3. Webster Fuel Pumps & Valves; a division of Capital City Tool, Inc.
- B. Description: Comply with HI 3.1-3.5.
1. Type: Positive-displacement, rotary type.
  2. Impeller: Steel gear with crescent.
  3. Housing: Cast-iron foot mounted.
  4. Bearings: Bronze, self-lubricating.
  5. Shaft: Polished steel.
  6. Seals: Mechanical.
  7. Base: Steel.
  8. Pressure Relief: Built in.
  9. Discharge Check Valve: Built in.
- C. Drive: Direct close coupled.
- D. Controls:
1. Alternate pumps to equalize run time.
  2. Alarm motor failure.
  3. Manual reset dry-run protection.
  4. Stop pumps if fuel level falls below pump suction.
  5. De-energize and sound alarm for pump, locked-rotor condition.
  6. Sound alarm for open circuit and for high and low voltage.
  7. Lights shall indicate normal power on, run, and off conditions.
  8. Interface with automatic control system. Comply with requirements in Section 230923 "Direct Digital Control (DDC) System for HVAC" to control and indicate the following:
    - a. Start/stop pump set when required by schedule, fuel-fired appliance operation, day tank level control, or weather conditions.
    - b. Operating status.
    - c. Alarm off-normal status.
- E. Piping Furnished with Pumps: Steel with ferrous fittings and threaded or welded joints.
- F. Strainers Furnished with Pumps: Duplex, basket type with corrosion-resistant-metal-screen baskets.
- G. Capacities and Characteristics: As noted on drawings.

## 2.3 MOTORS

- A. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
  - 1. Enclosure: Open, dripproof.
  - 2. Enclosure Materials: Cast iron.
  - 3. Efficiency: Premium efficient.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine roughing-in for fuel-oil pumps to verify actual locations of pump connections before equipment installation.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 EARTHWORK

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 312000 "Earth Moving" for excavating, trenching, and backfilling.

### 3.3 PREPARATION

- A. Close equipment shutoff valves before turning off fuel oil to premises or piping section.
- B. Comply with NFPA 30 and NFPA 31 requirements for prevention of accidental ignition.

### 3.4 FUEL-OIL PUMP INSTALLATION

- A. Transfer Pumps:
  - 1. Install pumps with access space for periodic maintenance including removal of motors, impellers, and accessories.
  - 2. Set pumps on and anchor to concrete base.
  - 3. Pump Mounting:
    - a. Install base-mounted pumps on cast-in-place concrete equipment bases. Comply with requirements for equipment bases and foundations specified in Section 033053 "Miscellaneous Cast-in-Place Concrete."
    - b. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation and seismic control devices specified in Section 230548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC."

- c. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation devices specified in Section 230548.13 "Vibration Controls for HVAC."
- B. Install two-piece, full-port ball valves at suction and discharge of pumps. Comply with requirements in Section 230523.12 "Ball Valves for HVAC Piping."
- C. Install mechanical leak-detector valves at pump discharge.
- D. Install basket strainer on inlet side of simplex fuel-oil pumps.
- E. Install check valve on discharge of simplex fuel-oil pumps.
- F. Install suction piping with minimum fittings and change of direction.
- G. Install vacuum and pressure gage, upstream and downstream, respectively, at each pump to measure the differential pressure across the pump. Pressure gages are specified in Section 230519 "Meters and Gages for HVAC Piping."

### 3.5 FUEL MAINTENANCE SYSTEM INSTALLATION

- A. Install suction line, with foot valve, at one end of storage tank, 1 inch from the bottom of tank.
- B. Install return line at the opposite end of storage tank from suction line.

### 3.6 LABELING AND IDENTIFYING

- A. Install nameplates and signs on each fuel-oil pump. Comply with requirements in Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

### 3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- B. Perform the following tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative:
  - 1. Start fuel-oil transfer pumps to verify for proper operation of pump, and check for leaks.
  - 2. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- C. Fuel-oil pumps will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.8 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain fuel-oil pumps.

END OF SECTION 231213

## SECTION 231323

### FACILITY ABOVEGROUND FUEL-OIL STORAGE TANKS

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

##### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

##### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Vertical, steel, fuel-oil ASTs.

##### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. AST: Aboveground storage tank.

##### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, and dimensions of individual components and profiles.
  - 2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
  - 3. Fuel-oil storage tank accessories.
- B. Shop Drawings:
  - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and ballast pads and anchors, and lifting or supporting points.
  - 2. Indicate dimensions, components, and location and size of each field connection.
  - 3. Shop Drawing Scale: 1/4 inch per foot.

##### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Site Survey: Plans, drawn to scale, on which fuel-oil storage tanks are shown and coordinated with other services and utilities.
- B. Brazing certificates.

- C. Welding certificates.
- D. Field quality-control reports.
- E. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

## 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For fuel-oil equipment and accessories to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

## 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. EPA Compliance: Comply with EPA and state and local authorities having jurisdiction. Include recording of fuel-oil storage tanks and monitoring of tanks.
- B. Steel Support Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
- C. Westchester County Department of Health Petroleum Bulk Storage Program: Comply with Westchester County requirements.

## 1.8 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of fuel-oil storage tanks that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

### 1. Storage Tanks:

- a. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following when used for storage of fuel oil at temperatures not exceeding 150 deg F:

- 1) Structural failures including cracking, breakup, and collapse.
- 2) Corrosion failure including external and internal corrosion of steel tanks.

- b. Warranty Period: 30 years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design restraint and anchors for fuel-oil ASTs, and equipment, including comprehensive engineering analysis, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.

## 2.2 VERTICAL, STEEL, FUEL-OIL AST

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
  - 1. Roth Tank.
  - 2. Highland Tank & Manufacturing Company, Inc.
  - 3. Steel Tank and Fabricating.
- B. Description: UL 142, single-wall, vertical, steel tank.
- C. Description: UL 142, double-wall, vertical, steel tank; with primary- and secondary-containment walls and interstitial space.
- D. Construction: Fabricated with welded, carbon steel suitable for operation at atmospheric pressure and for storing fuel oil with specific gravity up to 1.1 and maintained temperature up to 150 deg F.
- E. Capacities and Characteristics: As noted on drawings.

## 2.3 SHOP PAINTING OF AST

- A. Apply manufacturer's standard prime coat to exterior steel surface of AST and supports.
- B. Prepare exterior steel surface of AST and tank supports.
- C. Shop Cleaning: After fabrication, blast clean according to SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3.
- D. After cleaning, remove dust or residue from cleaned surfaces.
- E. If surface develops rust before prime coat is applied, repeat surface preparation.
- F. Apply manufacturer's standard prime coat to shop-cleaned, dry surface same day as surface preparation.
- G. Apply manufacturer's standard two-component, epoxy finish coats.

## 2.4 FUEL-OIL AST ACCESSORIES

- A. Tank Manholes: 22-inch-minimum diameter; bolted, flanged, and gasketed; centered on top of tank.
- B. Tank Manholes: 22-inch-minimum diameter; bolted, flanged, and gasketed; on top and at side of tank.
- C. Threaded pipe connection fittings on top of tank, for fill, supply, return, vent, sounding, and gaging. Include cast-iron plugs for shipping.

- D. Threaded pipe connection fittings on top or sides of tank as indicated, for fill, supply, return, vent, sounding, and gaging. Include cast-iron plugs for shipping.
- E. Striker Plates: Inside tank, on bottom below fill, vent, sounding, gage, and other tube openings.
- F. Lifting Lugs: For handling and installation.
- G. Supply Tube: Extension of supply piping fitting into tank, terminating 6 inches above tank bottom and cut at a 45-degree angle.
- H. Sounding and Gage Tubes: Extension of fitting into tank, terminating 6 inches above tank bottom and cut at a 45-degree angle.

## 2.5 LIQUID-LEVEL GAGE SYSTEM

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
  - 1. Franklin Fueling Systems.
  - 2. Pneumercator Inc.
  - 3. Preferred Utilities Manufacturing Corporation.
- B. Description: Calibrated liquid-level gage system complying with UL 180 with floats or other sensors and remote annunciator panel.
- C. Annunciator Panel: With visual and audible, high-tank-level and low-tank-level alarms; fuel indicator with registration in gallons; and overfill alarm. Include gage volume range that covers fuel-oil storage capacity.
- D. Controls: Electrical, operating on 120-V ac.

## 2.6 LEAK-DETECTION AND MONITORING SYSTEM

- A. Cable and Sensor System: Comply with UL 1238.
  - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the product indicated on drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
    - a. Franklin Fueling Systems.
    - b. Pneumercator Inc.
    - c. Veeder-Root Company (The).
  - 2. Calibrated leak-detection and monitoring system with probes and other sensors and remote alarm panel for fuel-oil storage tanks and fuel-oil piping.
  - 3. Include fittings and devices required for testing.
  - 4. Controls: Electrical, operating on **[120] <Insert voltage>-V ac.**
  - 5. Calibrated liquid-level gage complying with **[UL 180 with floats] [UL 1238 with probes]** or other sensors and remote annunciator panel.

6. Remote Annunciator Panel: With visual and audible, high-tank-level and low-tank-level alarms; fuel indicator with registration in gallons and overfill alarm. Include gage volume range that covers fuel-oil storage capacity.
7. Controls: Electrical, operating on [120] <Insert voltage>-V ac.

B. Hydrostatic System: Comply with UL 1238.

1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
2. Calibrated leak-detection and monitoring system with brine antifreeze solution, reservoir sensor, and electronic control panel to monitor leaks in inner and outer tank walls.
3. Include fittings and devices required for testing.
4. Controls: Electrical, operating on [120] <Insert voltage>-V ac.
5. Calibrated liquid-level gage complying with [UL 180 with floats] [UL 1238 with probes] or other sensors and remote annunciator panel.
6. Remote Annunciator Panel: With visual and audible, high-tank-level and low-tank-level alarms; fuel indicator with registration in gallons; and overfill alarm. Include gage volume range that covers fuel-oil storage capacity.
7. Controls: Electrical, operating on [120] <Insert voltage>-V ac.

## 2.7 FUEL OIL

- A. Diesel Fuel Oil: ASTM D 975, Grade No. 2-D, general purpose, high volatility.

## 2.8 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Pressure test and inspect fuel-oil storage tanks, after fabrication and before shipment, according to ASME and the following:
1. Vertical, Double-Wall Steel ASTs: UL 142, STI F921, and STI R931.
- B. Affix standards organization's code stamp.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine roughing-in for aboveground fuel-oil storage tanks to verify actual locations.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 FUEL-OIL AST INSTALLATION

- A. Install tank bases and supports.

- B. Connect piping and vent fittings.
- C. Install ground connections.
- D. Install tank leak-detection and monitoring devices.
- E. Install steel ASTs according to STI R912.
- F. Install insulated and concrete-vaulted, steel ASTs according to STI R942.
- G. Fill storage tanks with fuel oil.

### 3.3 LIQUID-LEVEL GAGE SYSTEM INSTALLATION

- A. Install liquid-level gage system. Install panel inside building where indicated.

### 3.4 LEAK-DETECTION AND MONITORING SYSTEM INSTALLATION

- A. Install leak-detection and monitoring system. Install alarm panel inside building where indicated.
  - 1. Double-Wall, Fuel-Oil Storage Tanks: Install probes in interstitial space.
  - 2. Install liquid-level gage.

### 3.5 LABELING AND IDENTIFYING

- A. Nameplates, pipe identification, and signs are specified in Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

### 3.6 FIELD PAINTING OF AST

- A. Prepare and touch up damaged exterior surface of AST and supports as specified in "Shop Painting of AST" Article.
- B. Prepare exterior steel surface of AST and tank supports.

### 3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- B. Perform the following tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative:

1. Tanks: Minimum hydrostatic or compressed-air test pressures for fuel-oil storage tanks that have not been factory tested and do not bear the ASME code stamp or a listing mark acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction:
  - a. Double-Wall Tanks:
    - 1) Inner Tanks: Minimum 3 psig and maximum 5 psig.
    - 2) Interstitial Space: Minimum 3 psig and maximum 5 psig, or 5.3-in. Hg vacuum.
  - b. Where vertical height of fill and vent pipes is such that the static head imposed on the bottom of the tank is greater than 10 psig, hydrostatically test the tank and fill and vent pipes to a pressure equal to the static head thus imposed.
  - c. Maintain the test pressure for one hour.
- C. ASTs will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION 231323

## SECTION 233416 - CENTRIFUGAL HVAC FANS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
  - 1. Backward-inclined centrifugal fans.
  - 2. Forward-curved centrifugal fans.

#### 1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Operating Limits: Classify according to AMCA 99.

#### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Include rated capacities, furnished specialties, and accessories for each type of product indicated and include the following:
  - 1. Certified fan performance curves with system operating conditions indicated.
  - 2. Certified fan sound-power ratings.
  - 3. Motor ratings and electrical characteristics, plus motor and electrical accessories.
  - 4. Material thickness and finishes, including color charts.
  - 5. Dampers, including housings, linkages, and operators.
- B. Shop Drawings: Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
  - 1. Wiring Diagrams: Power, signal, and control wiring.
- C. Coordination Drawings: Show fan room layout and relationships between components and adjacent structural and mechanical elements. Show support locations, type of support, and weight on each support. Indicate and certify field measurements.
- D. Field quality-control test reports.
- E. Operation and Maintenance Data: For centrifugal fans to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

## 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
- B. AMCA Compliance: Products shall comply with performance requirements and shall be licensed to use the AMCA-Certified Ratings Seal.
- C. NEMA Compliance: Motors and electrical accessories shall comply with NEMA 1.

## 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver fans as factory-assembled units, to the extent allowable by shipping limitations, with protective crating and covering.
- B. Disassemble and reassemble units, as required for moving to the final location, according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- C. Lift and support units with manufacturer's designated lifting or supporting points.

## 1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate size and location of structural-steel support members.
- B. Coordinate size and location of concrete bases. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified in Division 03.
- C. Coordinate installation of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations. These items are specified in Division 07 Section "Roof Accessories."

# PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 BACKWARD-INCLINED CENTRIFUGAL FANS

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the product indicated on Drawings or a comparable product by one of the following:
  - 1. Chicago Blower Corporation.
  - 2. Loren Cook Company.
  - 3. New York Blower Company (The).
- B. Description: Factory-fabricated, -assembled, -tested, and -finished, belt-driven centrifugal fans consisting of housing, wheel, fan shaft, bearings, motor and disconnect switch, drive assembly, and support structure.
- C. Housings: Formed panels to make curved-scroll housings with shaped cutoff; with doors or panels to allow access to internal parts and components.

1. Panel Bracing: Steel angle- or channel-iron member supports for mounting and supporting fan scroll, wheel, motor, and accessories.
  2. Horizontally split, bolted-flange housing.
  3. Spun inlet cone with flange.
  4. Outlet flange.
- D. Backward-Inclined Wheels: Single-width-single-inlet and double-width-double-inlet construction with curved inlet flange, backplate, backward-inclined blades welded or riveted to flange and backplate; cast-iron or cast-steel hub riveted to backplate and fastened to shaft with set screws.
- E. Shafts: Statically and dynamically balanced and selected for continuous operation at maximum rated fan speed and motor horsepower, with final alignment and belt adjustment made after installation.
1. Turned, ground, and polished hot-rolled steel with keyway. Ship with a protective coating of lubricating oil.
  2. Designed to operate at no more than 70 percent of first critical speed at top of fan's speed range.
- F. Grease-Lubricated Shaft Bearings: Self-aligning, pillow-block-type, tapered roller bearings with double-locking collars and two-piece, cast-iron housing.
1. Roller-Bearing Rating Life: ABMA 11, L10 at 100,000 hours.
- G. Belt Drives: Factory mounted, with final alignment and belt adjustment made after installation.
1. Service Factor Based on Fan Motor Size: 1.15.
  2. Fan Pulleys: Cast iron or cast steel with split, tapered bushing; dynamically balanced at factory.
  3. Motor Pulleys: Adjustable pitch for use with motors through 5 hp; fixed pitch for use with larger motors. Select pulley so pitch adjustment is at the middle of adjustment range at fan design conditions.
  4. Belts: Oil resistant, nonsparking, and nonstatic; matched sets for multiple belt drives.
  5. Belt Guards: Fabricate to comply with OSHA and SMACNA requirements of diamond-mesh wire screen welded to steel angle frame or equivalent, prime coated. Secure to fan or fan supports without short circuiting vibration isolation. Include provisions for adjustment of belt tension, lubrication, and use of tachometer with guard in place.
  6. Motor Mount: Adjustable for belt tensioning.
- H. Accessories:
1. Companion Flanges: Rolled flanges for duct connections of same material as housing.
  2. Inlet Screens: Grid screen of same material as housing.
  3. Shaft Seals: Airtight seals installed around shaft on drive side of single-width fans.

- I. Motors: Comply with requirements in Division 23 Section "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
- J. Capacities And Characteristics: As indicated on drawings.

## 2.2 FORWARD-CURVED CENTRIFUGAL FANS

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the product indicated on Drawings or a comparable product by one of the following:
  - 1. Chicago Blower Corporation.
  - 2. Loren Cook Company.
  - 3. New York Blower Company (The).
- B. Description:
  - 1. Factory-fabricated, -assembled, -tested, and -finished, belt-driven centrifugal fans consisting of housing, wheel, fan shaft, bearings, motor, drive assembly, and support structure.
  - 2. Deliver fans as factory-assembled units, to the extent allowable by shipping limitations.
  - 3. Factory-installed and -wired disconnect switch.
- C. Housings:
  - 1. Formed panels to make curved-scroll housings with shaped cutoff.
  - 2. Panel Bracing: Steel angle- or channel-iron member supports for mounting and supporting fan scroll, wheel, motor, and accessories.
  - 3. Spun inlet cone with flange.
  - 4. Outlet flange.
- D. Forward-Curved Wheels:
  - 1. Black-enameled or galvanized-steel construction with inlet flange, backplate, shallow blades with inlet and tip curved forward in direction of airflow.
  - 2. Mechanically secured to flange and backplate; cast-steel hub swaged to backplate and fastened to shaft with set screws.
- E. Shafts:
  - 1. Statically and dynamically balanced and selected for continuous operation at maximum rated fan speed and motor horsepower, with adjustable alignment and belt tensioning.
  - 2. Turned, ground, and polished hot-rolled steel with keyway. Ship with protective coating of lubricating oil.
  - 3. Designed to operate at no more than 70 percent of first critical speed at top of fan's speed range.
- F. Grease-Lubricated Shaft Bearings:

1. Self-aligning, pillow-block-type, tapered roller bearings with double-locking collars and two-piece, cast-iron housing.
2. Roller-Bearing Rating Life: ABMA 11, L10 at 100,000 hours.

G. Belt Drives:

1. Factory mounted, with adjustable alignment and belt tensioning.
2. Service Factor Based on Fan Motor Size: 1.15.
3. Fan Pulleys: Cast iron or cast steel with split, tapered bushing; dynamically balanced at factory.
4. Motor Pulleys: Adjustable pitch for use with motors through 5 hp; fixed pitch for use with larger motors. Select pulley so pitch adjustment is at the middle of adjustment range at fan design conditions.
5. Belts: Oil resistant, nonsparking, and nonstatic; matched sets for multiple belt drives.
6. Belt Guards: Fabricate to comply with OSHA and SMACNA requirements of diamond-mesh wire screen welded to steel angle frame or equivalent, prime coated. Secure to fan or fan supports without short circuiting vibration isolation. Include provisions for adjustment of belt tension, lubrication, and use of tachometer with guard in place.
7. Motor Mount: Adjustable for belt tensioning.

H. Accessories:

1. Companion Flanges: Rolled flanges for duct connections of same material as housing.
2. Discharge Dampers: Assembly with opposed blades constructed of two plates formed around and to shaft, channel frame, and sealed ball bearings; with blades linked outside of airstream to single control lever of same material as housing.
3. Inlet Screens: Grid screen of same material as housing.
4. Shaft Cooler: Metal disk between bearings and fan wheel, designed to dissipate heat from shaft.
5. Shaft Seals: Airtight seals installed around shaft on drive side of single-width fans.

## 2.3 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Sound-Power Level Ratings: Comply with AMCA 301, "Methods for Calculating Fan Sound Ratings from Laboratory Test Data." Factory test fans according to AMCA 300, "Reverberant Room Method for Sound Testing of Fans." Label fans with the AMCA-Certified Ratings Seal.
- B. Fan Performance Ratings: Establish flow rate, pressure, power, air density, speed of rotation, and efficiency by factory tests and ratings according to AMCA 210, "Laboratory Methods of Testing Fans for Rating."

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install centrifugal fans level and plumb.
- B. Support suspended units from structure using threaded steel rods and spring hangers with vertical-limit stops having a static deflection of 1 inch. Vibration-control devices are specified in Division 23 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
- C. Install units with clearances for service and maintenance.
- D. Label fans according to requirements specified in Division 23 Section "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

### 3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Duct installation and connection requirements are specified in other Division 23 Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of ducts and duct accessories. Make final duct connections with flexible connectors. Flexible connectors are specified in Division 23 Section "Air Duct Accessories."
- B. Install ducts adjacent to fans to allow service and maintenance.
- C. Install line-sized piping from scroll drain connection, with trap with seal equal to 1.5 times specified static pressure, to nearest floor drain.
- D. Ground equipment according to Division 26 Section "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- E. Connect wiring according to Division 26 Section "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

### 3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following field tests and inspections and prepare test reports:
  - 1. Verify that shipping, blocking, and bracing are removed.
  - 2. Verify that unit is secure on mountings and supporting devices and that connections to ducts and electrical components are complete. Verify that proper thermal-overload protection is installed in motors, starters, and disconnect switches.
  - 3. Verify that cleaning and adjusting are complete.
  - 4. Disconnect fan drive from motor, verify proper motor rotation direction, and verify fan wheel free rotation and smooth bearing operation. Reconnect fan drive system, align and adjust belts, and install belt guards.
  - 5. Adjust belt tension.
  - 6. Adjust damper linkages for proper damper operation.

7. Verify lubrication for bearings and other moving parts.
  8. Verify that manual and automatic volume control and fire and smoke dampers in connected ductwork systems are in fully open position.
  9. Refer to Division 23 Section "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC" for testing, adjusting, and balancing procedures.
  10. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.
- B. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

### 3.4 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain centrifugal fans. Refer to Division 01 Section "Demonstration and Training."

END OF SECTION 233416